If we now put $f(x) = x$ in Law 6 and use Law 8, we get another useful special limit.

9. $\lim\limits_{x \to a} x^n = a^n$ where n is a positive integer

A similar limit holds for roots as follows. (For square roots the proof is outlined in Exercise 1.7.37.)

10. $\lim\limits_{x \to a} \sqrt[n]{x} = \sqrt[n]{a}$ where n is a positive integer

(If n is even, we assume that $a > 0$.)

More generally, we have the following law, which is proved in Section 1.8 as a consequence of Law 10.

Root Law

11. $\lim\limits_{x \to a} \sqrt[n]{f(x)} = \sqrt[n]{\lim\limits_{x \to a} f(x)}$ where n is a positive integer

$\left[\text{If } n \text{ is even, we assume that } \lim\limits_{x \to a} f(x) > 0.\right]$

EXAMPLE 2 Evaluate the following limits and justify each step.

(a) $\lim\limits_{x \to 5} (2x^2 - 3x + 4)$ (b) $\lim\limits_{x \to -2} \dfrac{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1}{5 - 3x}$

SOLUTION

(a)

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x \to 5} (2x^2 - 3x + 4) &= \lim_{x \to 5} (2x^2) - \lim_{x \to 5} (3x) + \lim_{x \to 5} 4 && \text{(by Laws 2 and 1)} \\
&= 2 \lim_{x \to 5} x^2 - 3 \lim_{x \to 5} x + \lim_{x \to 5} 4 && \text{(by 3)} \\
&= 2(5^2) - 3(5) + 4 && \text{(by 9, 8, and 7)} \\
&= 39
\end{aligned}$$

(b) We start by using Law 5, but its use is fully justified only at the final stage when we see that the limits of the numerator and denominator exist and the limit of the denominator is not 0.

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x \to -2} \frac{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1}{5 - 3x} &= \frac{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} (x^3 + 2x^2 - 1)}{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} (5 - 3x)} && \text{(by Law 5)} \\
&= \frac{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} x^3 + 2 \lim\limits_{x \to -2} x^2 - \lim\limits_{x \to -2} 1}{\lim\limits_{x \to -2} 5 - 3 \lim\limits_{x \to -2} x} && \text{(by 1, 2, and 3)} \\
&= \frac{(-2)^3 + 2(-2)^2 - 1}{5 - 3(-2)} && \text{(by 9, 8, and 7)} \\
&= -\frac{1}{11}
\end{aligned}$$

■

Newton and Limits

Isaac Newton was born on Christmas Day in 1642, the year of Galileo's death. When he entered Cambridge University in 1661 Newton didn't know much mathematics, but he learned quickly by reading Euclid and Descartes and by attending the lectures of Isaac Barrow. Cambridge was closed because of the plague in 1665 and 1666, and Newton returned home to reflect on what he had learned. Those two years were amazingly productive for at that time he made four of his major discoveries: (1) his representation of functions as sums of infinite series, including the binomial theorem; (2) his work on differential and integral calculus; (3) his laws of motion and law of universal gravitation; and (4) his prism experiments on the nature of light and color. Because of a fear of controversy and criticism, he was reluctant to publish his discoveries and it wasn't until 1687, at the urging of the astronomer Halley, that Newton published *Principia Mathematica*. In this work, the greatest scientific treatise ever written, Newton set forth his version of calculus and used it to investigate mechanics, fluid dynamics, and wave motion, and to explain the motion of planets and comets.

The beginnings of calculus are found in the calculations of areas and volumes by ancient Greek scholars such as Eudoxus and Archimedes. Although aspects of the idea of a limit are implicit in their "method of exhaustion," Eudoxus and Archimedes never explicitly formulated the concept of a limit. Likewise, mathematicians such as Cavalieri, Fermat, and Barrow, the immediate precursors of Newton in the development of calculus, did not actually use limits. It was Isaac Newton who was the first to talk explicitly about limits. He explained that the main idea behind limits is that quantities "approach nearer than by any given difference." Newton stated that the limit was the basic concept in calculus, but it was left to later mathematicians like Cauchy to clarify his ideas about limits.

NOTE If we let $f(x) = 2x^2 - 3x + 4$, then $f(5) = 39$. In other words, we would have gotten the correct answer in Example 2(a) by substituting 5 for x. Similarly, direct substitution provides the correct answer in part (b). The functions in Example 2 are a polynomial and a rational function, respectively, and similar use of the Limit Laws proves that direct substitution always works for such functions (see Exercises 57 and 58). We state this fact as follows.

Direct Substitution Property If f is a polynomial or a rational function and a is in the domain of f, then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = f(a)$$

Functions with the Direct Substitution Property are called *continuous at a* and will be studied in Section 1.8. However, not all limits can be evaluated by direct substitution, as the following examples show.

EXAMPLE 3 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1}$.

SOLUTION Let $f(x) = (x^2 - 1)/(x - 1)$. We can't find the limit by substituting $x = 1$ because $f(1)$ isn't defined. Nor can we apply the Quotient Law, because the limit of the denominator is 0. Instead, we need to do some preliminary algebra. We factor the numerator as a difference of squares:

$$\frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1} = \frac{(x - 1)(x + 1)}{x - 1}$$

The numerator and denominator have a common factor of $x - 1$. When we take the limit as x approaches 1, we have $x \neq 1$ and so $x - 1 \neq 0$. Therefore we can cancel the common factor and then compute the limit by direct substitution as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1} &= \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{(x - 1)(x + 1)}{x - 1} \\
&= \lim_{x \to 1} (x + 1) \\
&= 1 + 1 = 2
\end{aligned}$$

The limit in this example arose in Example 1.4.1 when we were trying to find the tangent to the parabola $y = x^2$ at the point (1, 1). ■

NOTE 1 In Example 3 we do not have an infinite limit even though the denominator approaches 0 as $x \to 1$. When both numerator and denominator approach 0, the limit may be infinite or it may be some finite value.

NOTE 2 In Example 3 we were able to compute the limit by replacing the given function $f(x) = (x^2 - 1)/(x - 1)$ by a simpler function, $g(x) = x + 1$, with the same limit. This is valid because $f(x) = g(x)$ except when $x = 1$, and in computing a limit as x approaches 1 we don't consider what happens when x is actually *equal* to 1. In general, we have the following useful fact.

> If $f(x) = g(x)$ when $x \neq a$, then $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$, provided the limits exist.

EXAMPLE 4 Find $\lim_{x \to 1} g(x)$ where

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{if } x \neq 1 \\ \pi & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases}$$

SOLUTION Here g is defined at $x = 1$ and $g(1) = \pi$, but the value of a limit as x *approaches* 1 does not depend on the value of the function *at* 1. Since $g(x) = x + 1$ for $x \neq 1$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 1} g(x) = \lim_{x \to 1} (x + 1) = 2$$ ■

Note that the values of the functions in Examples 3 and 4 are identical except when $x = 1$ (see Figure 2) and so they have the same limit as x approaches 1.

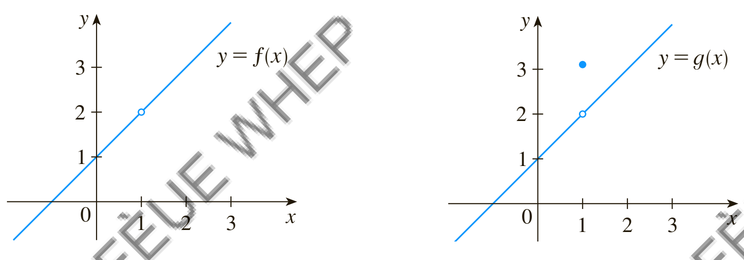


FIGURE 2
The graphs of the functions f (from Example 3) and g (from Example 4)

EXAMPLE 5 Evaluate $\lim_{h \to 0} \dfrac{(3 + h)^2 - 9}{h}$.

SOLUTION If we define

$$F(h) = \frac{(3 + h)^2 - 9}{h}$$

then, as in Example 3, we can't compute $\lim_{h \to 0} F(h)$ by letting $h = 0$ since $F(0)$ is undefined. But if we simplify $F(h)$ algebraically, we find that

$$F(h) = \frac{(9 + 6h + h^2) - 9}{h} = \frac{6h + h^2}{h} = \frac{h(6 + h)}{h} = 6 + h$$

(Recall that we consider only $h \neq 0$ when letting h approach 0.) Thus

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(3 + h)^2 - 9}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} (6 + h) = 6$$ ■

EXAMPLE 6 Find $\lim_{t \to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{t^2 + 9} - 3}{t^2}$.

SOLUTION We can't apply the Quotient Law immediately, since the limit of the denominator is 0. Here the preliminary algebra consists of rationalizing the numerator:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{t^2+9}-3}{t^2} &= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{t^2+9}-3}{t^2} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{t^2+9}+3}{\sqrt{t^2+9}+3} \\
&= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{(t^2+9)-9}{t^2\left(\sqrt{t^2+9}+3\right)} \\
&= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{t^2}{t^2\left(\sqrt{t^2+9}+3\right)} \\
&= \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{t^2+9}+3} \\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lim_{t \to 0}(t^2+9)}+3} \\
&= \frac{1}{3+3} = \frac{1}{6}
\end{aligned}$$

Here we use several properties of limits (5, 1, 10, 7, 9).

This calculation confirms the guess that we made in Example 1.5.2. ■

Some limits are best calculated by first finding the left- and right-hand limits. The following theorem is a reminder of what we discovered in Section 1.5. It says that a two-sided limit exists if and only if both of the one-sided limits exist and are equal.

1 Theorem $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ if and only if $\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L = \lim_{x \to a^+} f(x)$

When computing one-sided limits, we use the fact that the Limit Laws also hold for one-sided limits.

EXAMPLE 7 Show that $\lim_{x \to 0} |x| = 0$.

SOLUTION Recall that

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

The result of Example 7 looks plausible from Figure 3.

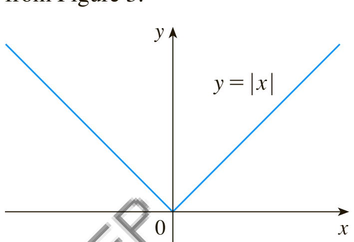


FIGURE 3

Since $|x| = x$ for $x > 0$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 0^+} |x| = \lim_{x \to 0^+} x = 0$$

For $x < 0$ we have $|x| = -x$ and so

$$\lim_{x \to 0^-} |x| = \lim_{x \to 0^-} (-x) = 0$$

Therefore, by Theorem 1,

$$\lim_{x \to 0} |x| = 0$$ ■

EXAMPLE 8 Prove that $\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{|x|}{x}$ does not exist.

SOLUTION Using the facts that $|x| = x$ when $x > 0$ and $|x| = -x$ when $x < 0$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{|x|}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^+} \frac{x}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^+} 1 = 1$$

$$\lim_{x \to 0^-} \frac{|x|}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^-} \frac{-x}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0^-} (-1) = -1$$

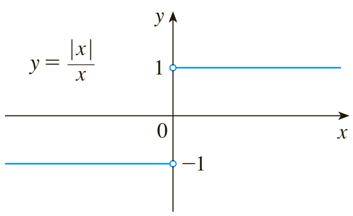


FIGURE 4

Since the right- and left-hand limits are different, it follows from Theorem 1 that $\lim_{x \to 0} |x|/x$ does not exist. The graph of the function $f(x) = |x|/x$ is shown in Figure 4 and supports the one-sided limits that we found. ■

EXAMPLE 9 If

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{x - 4} & \text{if } x > 4 \\ 8 - 2x & \text{if } x < 4 \end{cases}$$

determine whether $\lim_{x \to 4} f(x)$ exists.

It is shown in Example 1.7.3 that $\lim_{x \to 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$.

SOLUTION Since $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 4}$ for $x > 4$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 4^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 4^+} \sqrt{x - 4} = \sqrt{4 - 4} = 0$$

Since $f(x) = 8 - 2x$ for $x < 4$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 4^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 4^-} (8 - 2x) = 8 - 2 \cdot 4 = 0$$

The right- and left-hand limits are equal. Thus the limit exists and

$$\lim_{x \to 4} f(x) = 0$$

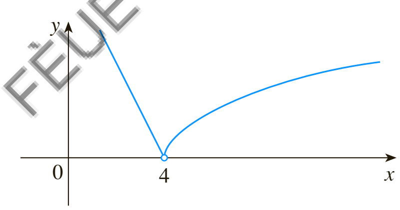


FIGURE 5

The graph of f is shown in Figure 5. ■

Other notations for $[\![x]\!]$ are $[x]$ and $\lfloor x \rfloor$. The greatest integer function is sometimes called the *floor function*.

EXAMPLE 10 The **greatest integer function** is defined by $[\![x]\!]$ = the largest integer that is less than or equal to x. (For instance, $[\![4]\!] = 4$, $[\![4.8]\!] = 4$, $[\![\pi]\!] = 3$, $[\![\sqrt{2}]\!] = 1$, $[\![-\frac{1}{2}]\!] = -1$.) Show that $\lim_{x \to 3} [\![x]\!]$ does not exist.

SOLUTION The graph of the greatest integer function is shown in Figure 6. Since $[\![x]\!] = 3$ for $3 \leqslant x < 4$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 3^+} [\![x]\!] = \lim_{x \to 3^+} 3 = 3$$

Since $[\![x]\!] = 2$ for $2 \leqslant x < 3$, we have

$$\lim_{x \to 3^-} [\![x]\!] = \lim_{x \to 3^-} 2 = 2$$

Because these one-sided limits are not equal, $\lim_{x \to 3} [\![x]\!]$ does not exist by Theorem 1. ■

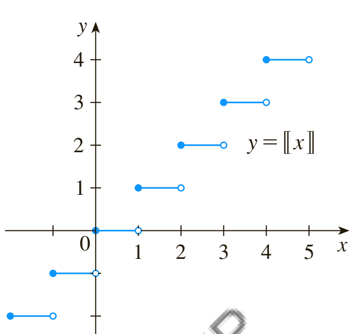


FIGURE 6
Greatest integer function

The next two theorems give two additional properties of limits. Their proofs can be found in Appendix F.

2 Theorem If $f(x) \leqslant g(x)$ when x is near a (except possibly at a) and the limits of f and g both exist as x approaches a, then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) \leqslant \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$$

3 The Squeeze Theorem If $f(x) \leqslant g(x) \leqslant h(x)$ when x is near a (except possibly at a) and

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \lim_{x \to a} h(x) = L$$

then
$$\lim_{x \to a} g(x) = L$$

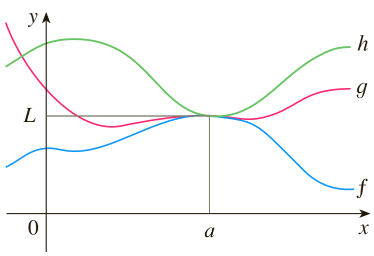


FIGURE 7

The Squeeze Theorem, which is sometimes called the Sandwich Theorem or the Pinching Theorem, is illustrated by Figure 7. It says that if $g(x)$ is squeezed between $f(x)$ and $h(x)$ near a, and if f and h have the same limit L at a, then g is forced to have the same limit L at a.

EXAMPLE 11 Show that $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x} = 0$.

SOLUTION First note that we **cannot** use

$$\lim_{x \to 0} x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x} = \lim_{x \to 0} x^2 \cdot \lim_{x \to 0} \sin \frac{1}{x}$$

because $\lim_{x \to 0} \sin(1/x)$ does not exist (see Example 1.5.4).

Instead we apply the Squeeze Theorem, and so we need to find a function f smaller than $g(x) = x^2 \sin(1/x)$ and a function h bigger than g such that both $f(x)$ and $h(x)$ approach 0. To do this we use our knowledge of the sine function. Because the sine of any number lies between -1 and 1, we can write.

4
$$-1 \leqslant \sin \frac{1}{x} \leqslant 1$$

Any inequality remains true when multiplied by a positive number. We know that $x^2 \geqslant 0$ for all x and so, multiplying each side of the inequalities in (4) by x^2, we get

$$-x^2 \leqslant x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x} \leqslant x^2$$

as illustrated by Figure 8. We know that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} x^2 = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 0} (-x^2) = 0$$

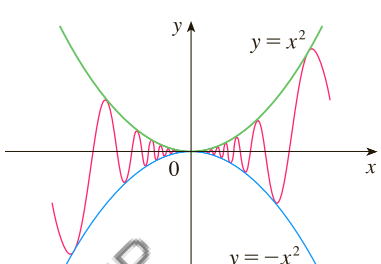


FIGURE 8
$y = x^2 \sin(1/x)$

Taking $f(x) = -x^2$, $g(x) = x^2 \sin(1/x)$, and $h(x) = x^2$ in the Squeeze Theorem, we obtain

$$\lim_{x \to 0} x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x} = 0$$ ■

1.6 EXERCISES

1. Given that

$$\lim_{x\to 2} f(x) = 4 \qquad \lim_{x\to 2} g(x) = -2 \qquad \lim_{x\to 2} h(x) = 0$$

find the limits that exist. If the limit does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 2} [f(x) + 5g(x)]$ (b) $\lim_{x\to 2} [g(x)]^3$

(c) $\lim_{x\to 2} \sqrt{f(x)}$ (d) $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{3f(x)}{g(x)}$

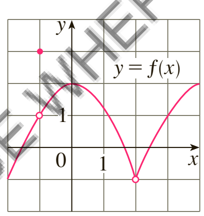
(e) $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{g(x)}{h(x)}$ (f) $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{g(x)h(x)}{f(x)}$

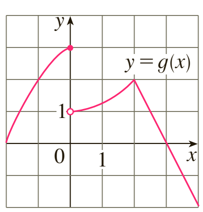
2. The graphs of f and g are given. Use them to evaluate each limit, if it exists. If the limit does not exist, explain why.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 2} [f(x) + g(x)]$ (b) $\lim_{x\to 0} [f(x) - g(x)]$

(c) $\lim_{x\to -1} [f(x)g(x)]$ (d) $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}$

(e) $\lim_{x\to 2} [x^2 f(x)]$ (f) $f(-1) + \lim_{x\to -1} g(x)$





3–9 Evaluate the limit and justify each step by indicating the appropriate Limit Law(s).

3. $\lim_{x\to 3} (5x^3 - 3x^2 + x - 6)$

4. $\lim_{x\to -1} (x^4 - 3x)(x^2 + 5x + 3)$

5. $\lim_{t\to -2} \dfrac{t^4 - 2}{2t^2 - 3t + 2}$

6. $\lim_{u\to -2} \sqrt{u^4 + 3u + 6}$

7. $\lim_{x\to 8} \left(1 + \sqrt[3]{x}\right)(2 - 6x^2 + x^3)$

8. $\lim_{t\to 2} \left(\dfrac{t^2 - 2}{t^3 - 3t + 5}\right)^2$

9. $\lim_{x\to 2} \sqrt{\dfrac{2x^2 + 1}{3x - 2}}$

10. (a) What is wrong with the following equation?

$$\frac{x^2 + x - 6}{x - 2} = x + 3$$

(b) In view of part (a), explain why the equation

$$\lim_{x\to 2} \frac{x^2 + x - 6}{x - 2} = \lim_{x\to 2} (x + 3)$$

is correct.

11–32 Evaluate the limit, if it exists.

11. $\lim_{x\to 5} \dfrac{x^2 - 6x + 5}{x - 5}$

12. $\lim_{x\to -3} \dfrac{x^2 + 3x}{x^2 - x - 12}$

13. $\lim_{x\to 5} \dfrac{x^2 - 5x + 6}{x - 5}$

14. $\lim_{x\to 4} \dfrac{x^2 + 3x}{x^2 - x - 12}$

15. $\lim_{t\to -3} \dfrac{t^2 - 9}{2t^2 + 7t + 3}$

16. $\lim_{x\to -1} \dfrac{2x^2 + 3x + 1}{x^2 - 2x - 3}$

17. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(-5 + h)^2 - 25}{h}$

18. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(2 + h)^3 - 8}{h}$

19. $\lim_{x\to -2} \dfrac{x + 2}{x^3 + 8}$

20. $\lim_{t\to 1} \dfrac{t^4 - 1}{t^3 - 1}$

21. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{9 + h} - 3}{h}$

22. $\lim_{u\to 2} \dfrac{\sqrt{4u + 1} - 3}{u - 2}$

23. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{\dfrac{1}{x} - \dfrac{1}{3}}{x - 3}$

24. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(3 + h)^{-1} - 3^{-1}}{h}$

25. $\lim_{t\to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{1 + t} - \sqrt{1 - t}}{t}$

26. $\lim_{t\to 0} \left(\dfrac{1}{t} - \dfrac{1}{t^2 + t}\right)$

27. $\lim_{x\to 16} \dfrac{4 - \sqrt{x}}{16x - x^2}$

28. $\lim_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2 - 4x + 4}{x^4 - 3x^2 - 4}$

29. $\lim_{t\to 0} \left(\dfrac{1}{t\sqrt{1 + t}} - \dfrac{1}{t}\right)$

30. $\lim_{x\to -4} \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2 + 9} - 5}{x + 4}$

31. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(x + h)^3 - x^3}{h}$

32. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{\dfrac{1}{(x + h)^2} - \dfrac{1}{x^2}}{h}$

33. (a) Estimate the value of

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 + 3x} - 1}$$

by graphing the function $f(x) = x/\left(\sqrt{1 + 3x} - 1\right)$.

(b) Make a table of values of $f(x)$ for x close to 0 and guess the value of the limit.

(c) Use the Limit Laws to prove that your guess is correct.

34. (a) Use a graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{\sqrt{3 + x} - \sqrt{3}}{x}$$

to estimate the value of $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$ to two decimal places.

(b) Use a table of values of $f(x)$ to estimate the limit to four decimal places.

(c) Use the Limit Laws to find the exact value of the limit.

35. Use the Squeeze Theorem to show that $\lim_{x\to 0}(x^2\cos 20\pi x) = 0$. Illustrate by graphing the functions $f(x) = -x^2$, $g(x) = x^2\cos 20\pi x$, and $h(x) = x^2$ on the same screen.

36. Use the Squeeze Theorem to show that

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\sqrt{x^3 + x^2}\,\sin\frac{\pi}{x} = 0$$

Illustrate by graphing the functions f, g, and h (in the notation of the Squeeze Theorem) on the same screen.

37. If $4x - 9 \leqslant f(x) \leqslant x^2 - 4x + 7$ for $x \geqslant 0$, find $\lim_{x\to 4} f(x)$.

38. If $2x \leqslant g(x) \leqslant x^4 - x^2 + 2$ for all x, evaluate $\lim_{x\to 1} g(x)$.

39. Prove that $\lim_{x\to 0} x^4\cos\dfrac{2}{x} = 0$.

40. Prove that $\lim_{x\to 0^+}\sqrt{x}\,[1 + \sin^2(2\pi/x)] = 0$.

41–46 Find the limit, if it exists. If the limit does not exist, explain why.

41. $\lim_{x\to 3}(2x + |x - 3|)$

42. $\lim_{x\to -6}\dfrac{2x + 12}{|x + 6|}$

43. $\lim_{x\to 0.5^-}\dfrac{2x - 1}{|2x^3 - x^2|}$

44. $\lim_{x\to -2}\dfrac{2 - |x|}{2 + x}$

45. $\lim_{x\to 0^-}\left(\dfrac{1}{x} - \dfrac{1}{|x|}\right)$

46. $\lim_{x\to 0^+}\left(\dfrac{1}{x} - \dfrac{1}{|x|}\right)$

47. The *signum* (or sign) *function*, denoted by sgn, is defined by

$$\operatorname{sgn} x = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$$

(a) Sketch the graph of this function.
(b) Find each of the following limits or explain why it does not exist.
(i) $\lim_{x\to 0^+}\operatorname{sgn} x$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 0^-}\operatorname{sgn} x$
(iii) $\lim_{x\to 0}\operatorname{sgn} x$ (iv) $\lim_{x\to 0}|\operatorname{sgn} x|$

48. Let $g(x) = \operatorname{sgn}(\sin x)$.
(a) Find each of the following limits or explain why it does not exist.
(i) $\lim_{x\to 0^+} g(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 0^-} g(x)$ (iii) $\lim_{x\to 0} g(x)$
(iv) $\lim_{x\to \pi^+} g(x)$ (v) $\lim_{x\to \pi^-} g(x)$ (vi) $\lim_{x\to \pi} g(x)$
(b) For which values of a does $\lim_{x\to a} g(x)$ not exist?
(c) Sketch a graph of g.

49. Let $g(x) = \dfrac{x^2 + x - 6}{|x - 2|}$.
(a) Find
(i) $\lim_{x\to 2^+} g(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 2^-} g(x)$
(b) Does $\lim_{x\to 2} g(x)$ exist?
(c) Sketch the graph of g.

50. Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 1 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ (x - 2)^2 & \text{if } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases}$$

(a) Find $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$ and $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$.
(b) Does $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$ exist?
(c) Sketch the graph of f.

51. Let

$$B(t) = \begin{cases} 4 - \frac{1}{2}t & \text{if } t < 2 \\ \sqrt{t + c} & \text{if } t \geqslant 2 \end{cases}$$

Find the value of c so that $\lim_{t\to 2} B(t)$ exists.

52. Let

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x < 1 \\ 3 & \text{if } x = 1 \\ 2 - x^2 & \text{if } 1 < x \leqslant 2 \\ x - 3 & \text{if } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

(a) Evaluate each of the following, if it exists.
(i) $\lim_{x\to 1^-} g(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 1} g(x)$ (iii) $g(1)$
(iv) $\lim_{x\to 2^-} g(x)$ (v) $\lim_{x\to 2^+} g(x)$ (vi) $\lim_{x\to 2} g(x)$
(b) Sketch the graph of g.

53. (a) If the symbol $[\![\ ]\!]$ denotes the greatest integer function defined in Example 10, evaluate
(i) $\lim_{x\to -2^+}[\![x]\!]$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to -2}[\![x]\!]$ (iii) $\lim_{x\to -2.4}[\![x]\!]$
(b) If n is an integer, evaluate
(i) $\lim_{x\to n^-}[\![x]\!]$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to n^+}[\![x]\!]$
(c) For what values of a does $\lim_{x\to a}[\![x]\!]$ exist?

54. Let $f(x) = [\![\cos x]\!]$, $-\pi \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$.
(a) Sketch the graph of f.
(b) Evaluate each limit, if it exists.
(i) $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to (\pi/2)^-} f(x)$
(iii) $\lim_{x\to (\pi/2)^+} f(x)$ (iv) $\lim_{x\to \pi/2} f(x)$
(c) For what values of a does $\lim_{x\to a} f(x)$ exist?

55. If $f(x) = [\![x]\!] + [\![-x]\!]$, show that $\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$ exists but is not equal to $f(2)$.

56. In the theory of relativity, the Lorentz contraction formula

$$L = L_0\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$$

expresses the length L of an object as a function of its velocity v with respect to an observer, where L_0 is the length of the object at rest and c is the speed of light. Find $\lim_{v\to c^-} L$ and interpret the result. Why is a left-hand limit necessary?

57. If p is a polynomial, show that $\lim_{x\to a} p(x) = p(a)$.

58. If r is a rational function, use Exercise 57 to show that $\lim_{x\to a} r(x) = r(a)$ for every number a in the domain of r.

59. If $\lim_{x \to 1} \dfrac{f(x) - 8}{x - 1} = 10$, find $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x)$.

60. If $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{f(x)}{x^2} = 5$, find the following limits.

(a) $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{f(x)}{x}$

61. If

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \\ 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \end{cases}$$

prove that $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = 0$.

62. Show by means of an example that $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)]$ may exist even though neither $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ nor $\lim_{x \to a} g(x)$ exists.

63. Show by means of an example that $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x)\,g(x)]$ may exist even though neither $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ nor $\lim_{x \to a} g(x)$ exists.

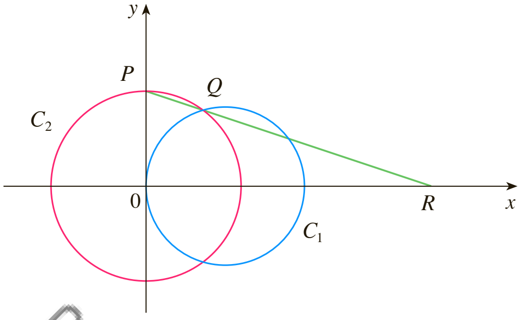
64. Evaluate $\lim_{x \to 2} \dfrac{\sqrt{6 - x} - 2}{\sqrt{3 - x} - 1}$.

65. Is there a number a such that

$$\lim_{x \to -2} \frac{3x^2 + ax + a + 3}{x^2 + x - 2}$$

exists? If so, find the value of a and the value of the limit.

66. The figure shows a fixed circle C_1 with equation $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 1$ and a shrinking circle C_2 with radius r and center the origin. P is the point $(0, r)$, Q is the upper point of intersection of the two circles, and R is the point of intersection of the line PQ and the x-axis. What happens to R as C_2 shrinks, that is, as $r \to 0^+$?



1.7 The Precise Definition of a Limit

The intuitive definition of a limit given in Section 1.5 is inadequate for some purposes because such phrases as "x is close to 2" and "$f(x)$ gets closer and closer to L" are vague. In order to be able to prove conclusively that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \left(x^3 + \frac{\cos 5x}{10{,}000} \right) = 0.0001 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$$

we must make the definition of a limit precise.

To motivate the precise definition of a limit, let's consider the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - 1 & \text{if } x \neq 3 \\ 6 & \text{if } x = 3 \end{cases}$$

Intuitively, it is clear that when x is close to 3 but $x \neq 3$, then $f(x)$ is close to 5, and so $\lim_{x \to 3} f(x) = 5$.

To obtain more detailed information about how $f(x)$ varies when x is close to 3, we ask the following question:

How close to 3 does x have to be so that $f(x)$ differs from 5 by less than 0.1?

The distance from x to 3 is $|x - 3|$ and the distance from $f(x)$ to 5 is $|f(x) - 5|$, so our problem is to find a number δ such that

It is traditional to use the Greek letter δ (delta) in this situation.

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.1 \quad \text{if} \quad |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{but } x \neq 3$$

If $|x - 3| > 0$, then $x \neq 3$, so an equivalent formulation of our problem is to find a number δ such that

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.1 \quad \text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta$$

Notice that if $0 < |x - 3| < (0.1)/2 = 0.05$, then

$$|f(x) - 5| = |(2x - 1) - 5| = |2x - 6| = 2|x - 3| < 2(0.05) = 0.1$$

that is, $$|f(x) - 5| < 0.1 \quad \text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < 0.05$$

Thus an answer to the problem is given by $\delta = 0.05$; that is, if x is within a distance of 0.05 from 3, then $f(x)$ will be within a distance of 0.1 from 5.

If we change the number 0.1 in our problem to the smaller number 0.01, then by using the same method we find that $f(x)$ will differ from 5 by less than 0.01 provided that x differs from 3 by less than $(0.01)/2 = 0.005$:

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.01 \quad \text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < 0.005$$

Similarly,

$$|f(x) - 5| < 0.001 \quad \text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < 0.0005$$

The numbers 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 that we have considered are *error tolerances* that we might allow. For 5 to be the precise limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches 3, we must not only be able to bring the difference between $f(x)$ and 5 below each of these three numbers; we must be able to bring it below *any* positive number. And, by the same reasoning, we can! If we write ε (the Greek letter epsilon) for an arbitrary positive number, then we find as before that

$$\boxed{1} \qquad |f(x) - 5| < \varepsilon \quad \text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

This is a precise way of saying that $f(x)$ is close to 5 when x is close to 3 because (1) says that we can make the values of $f(x)$ within an arbitrary distance ε from 5 by restricting the values of x to be within a distance $\varepsilon/2$ from 3 (but $x \neq 3$).

Note that (1) can be rewritten as follows:

$$\text{if} \quad 3 - \delta < x < 3 + \delta \quad (x \neq 3) \qquad \text{then} \qquad 5 - \varepsilon < f(x) < 5 + \varepsilon$$

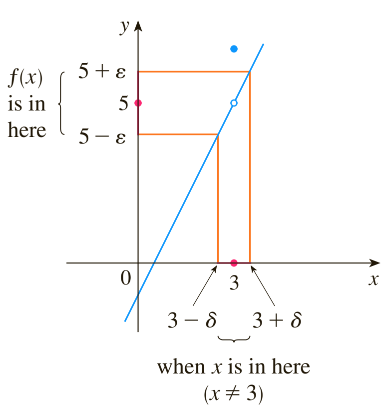


FIGURE 1

and this is illustrated in Figure 1. By taking the values of x ($\neq 3$) to lie in the interval $(3 - \delta, 3 + \delta)$ we can make the values of $f(x)$ lie in the interval $(5 - \varepsilon, 5 + \varepsilon)$.

Using (1) as a model, we give a precise definition of a limit.

$\boxed{2}$ **Precise Definition of a Limit** Let f be a function defined on some open interval that contains the number a, except possibly at a itself. Then we say that the **limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches a is L**, and we write

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$$

if for every number $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

Since $|x - a|$ is the distance from x to a and $|f(x) - L|$ is the distance from $f(x)$ to L, and since ε can be arbitrarily small, the definition of a limit can be expressed in words as follows:

> $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ means that the distance between $f(x)$ and L can be made arbitrarily small by requiring that the distance from x to a be sufficiently small (but not 0).

Alternatively,

> $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ means that the values of $f(x)$ can be made as close as we please to L by requiring x to be close enough to a (but not equal to a).

We can also reformulate Definition 2 in terms of intervals by observing that the inequality $|x - a| < \delta$ is equivalent to $-\delta < x - a < \delta$, which in turn can be written as $a - \delta < x < a + \delta$. Also $0 < |x - a|$ is true if and only if $x - a \neq 0$, that is, $x \neq a$. Similarly, the inequality $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$ is equivalent to the pair of inequalities $L - \varepsilon < f(x) < L + \varepsilon$. Therefore, in terms of intervals, Definition 2 can be stated as follows:

> $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ means that for every $\varepsilon > 0$ (no matter how small ε is) we can find $\delta > 0$ such that if x lies in the open interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ and $x \neq a$, then $f(x)$ lies in the open interval $(L - \varepsilon, L + \varepsilon)$.

We interpret this statement geometrically by representing a function by an arrow diagram as in Figure 2, where f maps a subset of $\mathbb{R}$ onto another subset of $\mathbb{R}$.

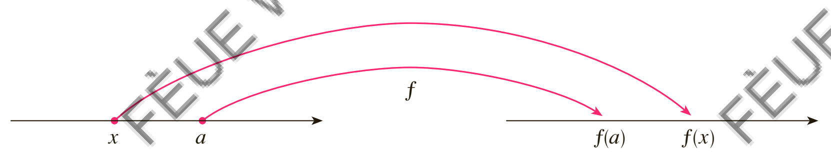


FIGURE 2

The definition of limit says that if any small interval $(L - \varepsilon, L + \varepsilon)$ is given around L, then we can find an interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ around a such that f maps all the points in $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ (except possibly a) into the interval $(L - \varepsilon, L + \varepsilon)$. (See Figure 3.)

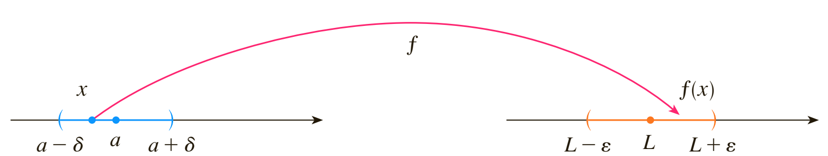


FIGURE 3

Another geometric interpretation of limits can be given in terms of the graph of a function. If $\varepsilon > 0$ is given, then we draw the horizontal lines $y = L + \varepsilon$ and $y = L - \varepsilon$ and the graph of f. (See Figure 4.) If $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$, then we can find a number $\delta > 0$ such that if we restrict x to lie in the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ and take $x \neq a$, then the curve $y = f(x)$ lies between the lines $y = L - \varepsilon$ and $y = L + \varepsilon$. (See Figure 5.) You can see that if such a δ has been found, then any smaller δ will also work.

It is important to realize that the process illustrated in Figures 4 and 5 must work for *every* positive number ε, no matter how small it is chosen. Figure 6 shows that if a smaller ε is chosen, then a smaller δ may be required.

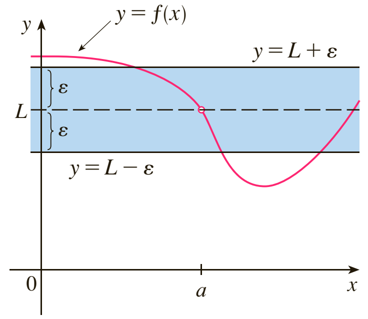


FIGURE 4

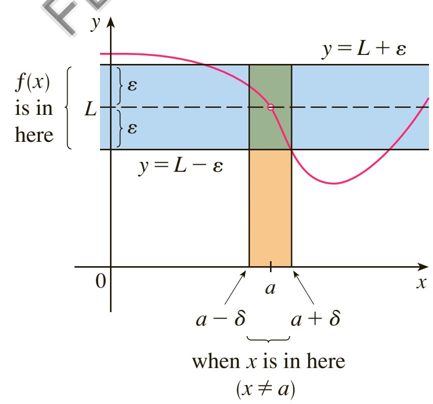


FIGURE 5

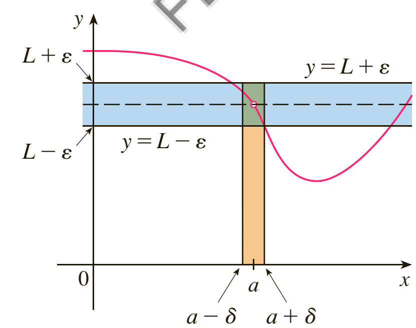


FIGURE 6

EXAMPLE 1 Since $f(x) = x^3 - 5x + 6$ is a polynomial, we know from the Direct Substitution Property that $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x) = f(1) = 1^3 - 5(1) + 6 = 2$. Use a graph to find a number δ such that if x is within δ of 1, then y is within 0.2 of 2, that is,

$$\text{if} \qquad |x - 1| < \delta \qquad \text{then} \qquad |(x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2| < 0.2$$

In other words, find a number δ that corresponds to $\varepsilon = 0.2$ in the definition of a limit for the function $f(x) = x^3 - 5x + 6$ with $a = 1$ and $L = 2$.

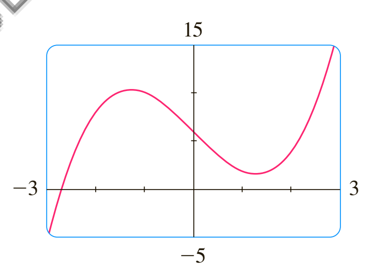


FIGURE 7

SOLUTION A graph of f is shown in Figure 7; we are interested in the region near the point (1, 2). Notice that we can rewrite the inequality

$$|(x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2| < 0.2$$

as

$$-0.2 < (x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2 < 0.2$$

or equivalently

$$1.8 < x^3 - 5x + 6 < 2.2$$

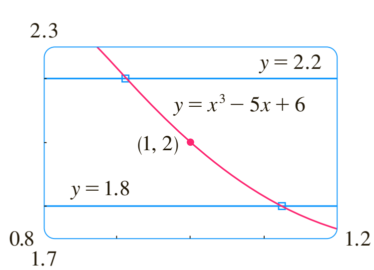


FIGURE 8

So we need to determine the values of x for which the curve $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$ lies between the horizontal lines $y = 1.8$ and $y = 2.2$. Therefore we graph the curves $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$, $y = 1.8$, and $y = 2.2$ near the point (1, 2) in Figure 8. Then we use the cursor to estimate that the x-coordinate of the point of intersection of the line $y = 2.2$ and the curve $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$ is about 0.911. Similarly, $y = x^3 - 5x + 6$ intersects the line $y = 1.8$ when $x \approx 1.124$. So, rounding toward 1 to be safe, we can say that

$$\text{if} \qquad 0.92 < x < 1.12 \qquad \text{then} \qquad 1.8 < x^3 - 5x + 6 < 2.2$$

This interval (0.92, 1.12) is not symmetric about $x = 1$. The distance from $x = 1$ to the left endpoint is $1 - 0.92 = 0.08$ and the distance to the right endpoint is 0.12. We can choose δ to be the smaller of these numbers, that is, $\delta = 0.08$. Then we can rewrite our inequalities in terms of distances as follows:

$$\text{if} \qquad |x - 1| < 0.08 \qquad \text{then} \qquad |(x^3 - 5x + 6) - 2| < 0.2$$

This just says that by keeping x within 0.08 of 1, we are able to keep $f(x)$ within 0.2 of 2.

Although we chose $\delta = 0.08$, any smaller positive value of δ would also have worked. ■

The graphical procedure in Example 1 gives an illustration of the definition for $\varepsilon = 0.2$, but it does not *prove* that the limit is equal to 2. A proof has to provide a δ for *every* ε.

In proving limit statements it may be helpful to think of the definition of limit as a challenge. First it challenges you with a number ε. Then you must be able to produce a suitable δ. You have to be able to do this for *every* $\varepsilon > 0$, not just a particular ε.

TEC In Module 1.7/3.4 you can explore the precise definition of a limit both graphically and numerically.

Imagine a contest between two people, A and B, and imagine yourself to be B. Person A stipulates that the fixed number L should be approximated by the values of $f(x)$ to within a degree of accuracy ε (say, 0.01). Person B then responds by finding a number δ such that if $0 < |x - a| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$. Then A may become more exacting and challenge B with a smaller value of ε (say, 0.0001). Again B has to respond by finding a corresponding δ. Usually the smaller the value of ε, the smaller the corresponding value of δ must be. If B always wins, no matter how small A makes ε, then $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$.

EXAMPLE 2 Prove that $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 3} (4x - 5) = 7$.

SOLUTION

1. *Preliminary analysis of the problem (guessing a value for δ).* Let ε be a given positive number. We want to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |(4x - 5) - 7| < \varepsilon$$

But $|(4x - 5) - 7| = |4x - 12| = |4(x - 3)| = 4|x - 3|$. Therefore we want δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad 4|x - 3| < \varepsilon$$

that is,
$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |x - 3| < \frac{\varepsilon}{4}$$

This suggests that we should choose $\delta = \varepsilon/4$.

2. *Proof (showing that this δ works).* Given $\varepsilon > 0$, choose $\delta = \varepsilon/4$. If $0 < |x - 3| < \delta$, then

$$|(4x - 5) - 7| = |4x - 12| = 4|x - 3| < 4\delta = 4\left(\frac{\varepsilon}{4}\right) = \varepsilon$$

Thus

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |(4x - 5) - 7| < \varepsilon$$

Therefore, by the definition of a limit,

$$\lim_{x \to 3} (4x - 5) = 7$$

Cauchy and Limits

After the invention of calculus in the 17th century, there followed a period of free development of the subject in the 18th century. Mathematicians like the Bernoulli brothers and Euler were eager to exploit the power of calculus and boldly explored the consequences of this new and wonderful mathematical theory without worrying too much about whether their proofs were completely correct.

The 19th century, by contrast, was the Age of Rigor in mathematics. There was a movement to go back to the foundations of the subject—to provide careful definitions and rigorous proofs. At the forefront of this movement was the French mathematician Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857), who started out as a military engineer before becoming a mathematics professor in Paris. Cauchy took Newton's idea of a limit, which was kept alive in the 18th century by the French mathematician Jean d'Alembert, and made it more precise. His definition of a limit reads as follows: "When the successive values attributed to a variable approach indefinitely a fixed value so as to end by differing from it by as little as one wishes, this last is called the *limit* of all the others." But when Cauchy used this definition in examples and proofs, he often employed delta-epsilon inequalities similar to the ones in this section. A typical Cauchy proof starts with: "Designate by δ and ε two very small numbers; . . ." He used ε because of the correspondence between epsilon and the French word *erreur* and δ because delta corresponds to *différence*. Later, the German mathematician Karl Weierstrass (1815–1897) stated the definition of a limit exactly as in our Definition 2.

This example is illustrated by Figure 9.

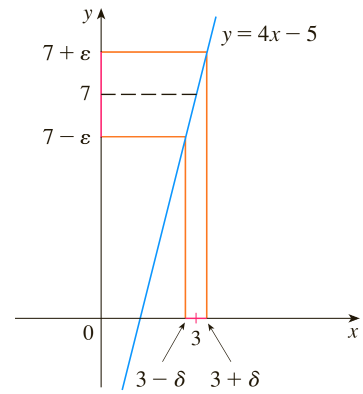


FIGURE 9

Note that in the solution of Example 2 there were two stages—guessing and proving. We made a preliminary analysis that enabled us to guess a value for δ. But then in the second stage we had to go back and prove in a careful, logical fashion that we had made a correct guess. This procedure is typical of much of mathematics. Sometimes it is necessary to first make an intelligent guess about the answer to a problem and then prove that the guess is correct.

The intuitive definitions of one-sided limits that were given in Section 1.5 can be precisely reformulated as follows.

3 Definition of Left-Hand Limit

$$\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L$$

if for every number $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad a - \delta < x < a \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

4 Definition of Right-Hand Limit

$$\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = L$$

if for every number $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad a < x < a + \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

Notice that Definition 3 is the same as Definition 2 except that x is restricted to lie in the *left* half $(a - \delta, a)$ of the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$. In Definition 4, x is restricted to lie in the *right* half $(a, a + \delta)$ of the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$.

EXAMPLE 3 Use Definition 4 to prove that $\lim_{x \to 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$.

SOLUTION

1. *Guessing a value for δ.* Let ε be a given positive number. Here $a = 0$ and $L = 0$, so we want to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < x < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |\sqrt{x} - 0| < \varepsilon$$

that is, if $0 < x < \delta$ then $\sqrt{x} < \varepsilon$

or, squaring both sides of the inequality $\sqrt{x} < \varepsilon$, we get

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < x < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad x < \varepsilon^2$$

This suggests that we should choose $\delta = \varepsilon^2$.

2. *Showing that this δ works.* Given $\varepsilon > 0$, let $\delta = \varepsilon^2$. If $0 < x < \delta$, then

$$\sqrt{x} < \sqrt{\delta} = \sqrt{\varepsilon^2} = \varepsilon$$

so
$$|\sqrt{x} - 0| < \varepsilon$$

According to Definition 4, this shows that $\lim_{x \to 0^+} \sqrt{x} = 0$. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Prove that $\lim_{x \to 3} x^2 = 9$.

SOLUTION

1. *Guessing a value for δ.* Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We have to find a number $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |x^2 - 9| < \varepsilon$$

To connect $|x^2 - 9|$ with $|x - 3|$ we write $|x^2 - 9| = |(x + 3)(x - 3)|$. Then we want

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |x + 3||x - 3| < \varepsilon$$

Notice that if we can find a positive constant C such that $|x + 3| < C$, then

$$|x + 3||x - 3| < C|x - 3|$$

and we can make $C|x - 3| < \varepsilon$ by taking $|x - 3| < \varepsilon/C$, so we could choose $\delta = \varepsilon/C$.

We can find such a number C if we restrict x to lie in some interval centered at 3. In fact, since we are interested only in values of x that are close to 3, it is reasonable to assume that x is within a distance 1 from 3, that is, $|x - 3| < 1$. Then $2 < x < 4$, so $5 < x + 3 < 7$. Thus we have $|x + 3| < 7$, and so $C = 7$ is a suitable choice for the constant.

But now there are two restrictions on $|x - 3|$, namely

$$|x - 3| < 1 \quad \text{and} \quad |x - 3| < \frac{\varepsilon}{C} = \frac{\varepsilon}{7}$$

To make sure that both of these inequalities are satisfied, we take δ to be the smaller of the two numbers 1 and $\varepsilon/7$. The notation for this is $\delta = \min\{1, \varepsilon/7\}$.

2. *Showing that this δ works.* Given $\varepsilon > 0$, let $\delta = \min\{1, \varepsilon/7\}$. If $0 < |x - 3| < \delta$, then $|x - 3| < 1 \Rightarrow 2 < x < 4 \Rightarrow |x + 3| < 7$ (as in part 1).

We also have $|x - 3| < \varepsilon/7$, so

$$|x^2 - 9| = |x + 3||x - 3| < 7 \cdot \frac{\varepsilon}{7} = \varepsilon$$

This shows that $\lim_{x \to 3} x^2 = 9$. ■

As Example 4 shows, it is not always easy to prove that limit statements are true using the ε, δ definition. In fact, if we had been given a more complicated function such as $f(x) = (6x^2 - 8x + 9)/(2x^2 - 1)$, a proof would require a great deal of ingenuity. Fortunately this is unnecessary because the Limit Laws stated in Section 1.6 can be proved using Definition 2, and then the limits of complicated functions can be found rigorously from the Limit Laws without resorting to the definition directly.

For instance, we prove the Sum Law: If $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x \to a} g(x) = M$ both exist, then

$$\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = L + M$$

The remaining laws are proved in the exercises and in Appendix F.

PROOF OF THE SUM LAW Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We must find $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| < \varepsilon$$

Triangle Inequality:

$$|a + b| \leqslant |a| + |b|$$

(See Appendix A).

Using the Triangle Inequality we can write

$$\boxed{5} \qquad \begin{aligned} |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| &= |(f(x) - L) + (g(x) - M)| \\ &\leqslant |f(x) - L| + |g(x) - M| \end{aligned}$$

We make $|f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)|$ less than ε by making each of the terms $|f(x) - L|$ and $|g(x) - M|$ less than $\varepsilon/2$.

Since $\varepsilon/2 > 0$ and $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$, there exists a number $\delta_1 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_1 \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

Similarly, since $\lim_{x \to a} g(x) = M$, there exists a number $\delta_2 > 0$ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_2 \quad \text{then} \quad |g(x) - M| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

Let $\delta = \min\{\delta_1, \delta_2\}$, the smaller of the numbers δ_1 and δ_2. Notice that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_1 \quad \text{and} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta_2$$

and so $\qquad |f(x) - L| < \dfrac{\varepsilon}{2} \quad$ and $\quad |g(x) - M| < \dfrac{\varepsilon}{2}$

Therefore, by (5),

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| &\leqslant |f(x) - L| + |g(x) - M| \\ &< \frac{\varepsilon}{2} + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} = \varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

To summarize,

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) + g(x) - (L + M)| < \varepsilon$$

Thus, by the definition of a limit,

$$\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = L + M$$

Infinite Limits

Infinite limits can also be defined in a precise way. The following is a precise version of Definition 1.5.4.

6 Precise Definition of an Infinite Limit Let f be a function defined on some open interval that contains the number a, except possibly at a itself. Then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$$

means that for every positive number M there is a positive number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad f(x) > M$$

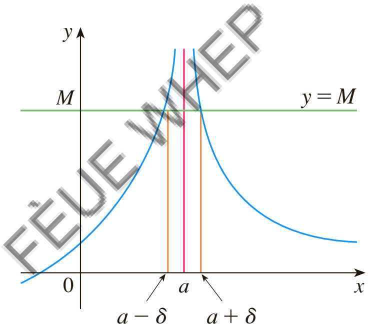


FIGURE 10

This says that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily large (larger than any given number M) by requiring x to be close enough to a (within a distance δ, where δ depends on M, but with $x \neq a$). A geometric illustration is shown in Figure 10.

Given any horizontal line $y = M$, we can find a number $\delta > 0$ such that if we restrict x to lie in the interval $(a - \delta, a + \delta)$ but $x \neq a$, then the curve $y = f(x)$ lies above the line $y = M$. You can see that if a larger M is chosen, then a smaller δ may be required.

EXAMPLE 5 Use Definition 6 to prove that $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = \infty$.

SOLUTION Let M be a given positive number. We want to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 0| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad 1/x^2 > M$$

But $\displaystyle \frac{1}{x^2} > M \iff x^2 < \frac{1}{M} \iff \sqrt{x^2} < \sqrt{\frac{1}{M}} \iff |x| < \frac{1}{\sqrt{M}}$

So if we choose $\delta = 1/\sqrt{M}$ and $0 < |x| < \delta = 1/\sqrt{M}$, then $1/x^2 > M$. This shows that $1/x^2 \to \infty$ as $x \to 0$.

Similarly, the following is a precise version of Definition 1.5.5. It is illustrated by Figure 11.

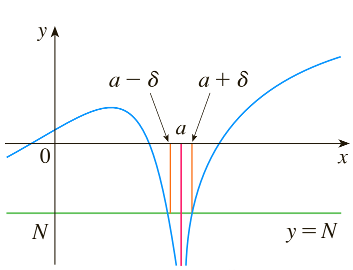


FIGURE 11

7 Definition Let f be a function defined on some open interval that contains the number a, except possibly at a itself. Then

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = -\infty$$

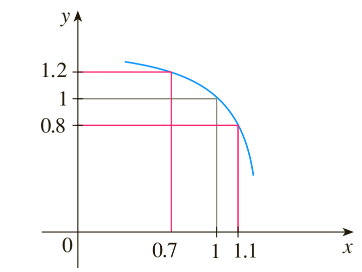
means that for every negative number N there is a positive number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - a| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad f(x) < N$$

1.7 EXERCISES

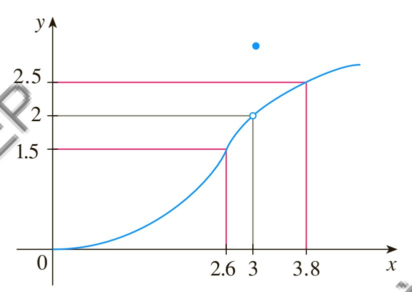
1. Use the given graph of f to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 1| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - 1| < 0.2$$



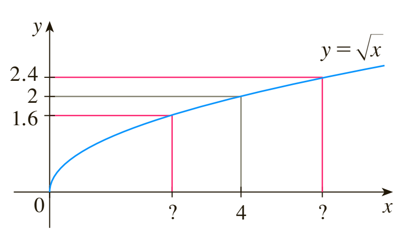
2. Use the given graph of f to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 0 < |x - 3| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - 2| < 0.5$$



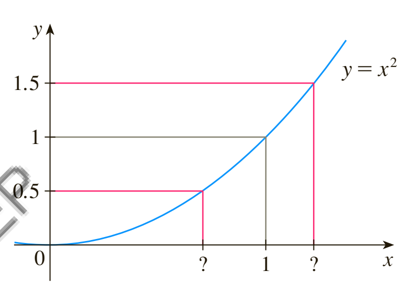
3. Use the given graph of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 4| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |\sqrt{x} - 2| < 0.4$$



4. Use the given graph of $f(x) = x^2$ to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 1| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |x^2 - 1| < \tfrac{1}{2}$$



5. Use a graph to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad \left| x - \frac{\pi}{4} \right| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad |\tan x - 1| < 0.2$$

6. Use a graph to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad |x - 1| < \delta \quad \text{then} \quad \left| \frac{2x}{x^2 + 4} - 0.4 \right| < 0.1$$

7. For the limit

$$\lim_{x \to 2} (x^3 - 3x + 4) = 6$$

illustrate Definition 2 by finding values of δ that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.2$ and $\varepsilon = 0.1$.

8. For the limit

$$\lim_{x \to 2} \frac{4x + 1}{3x - 4} = 4.5$$

illustrate Definition 2 by finding values of δ that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.5$ and $\varepsilon = 0.1$.

9. (a) Use a graph to find a number δ such that

$$\text{if} \quad 4 < x < 4 + \delta \quad \text{then} \quad \frac{x^2 + 4}{\sqrt{x - 4}} > 100$$

(b) What limit does part (a) suggest is true?

10. Given that $\lim_{x \to \pi} \csc^2 x = \infty$, illustrate Definition 6 by finding values of δ that correspond to (a) $M = 500$ and (b) $M = 1000$.

11. A machinist is required to manufacture a circular metal disk with area 1000 cm^2.
(a) What radius produces such a disk?
(b) If the machinist is allowed an error tolerance of ± 5 cm^2 in the area of the disk, how close to the ideal radius in part (a) must the machinist control the radius?
(c) In terms of the ε, δ definition of $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$, what is x? What is $f(x)$? What is a? What is L? What value of ε is given? What is the corresponding value of δ?

12. A crystal growth furnace is used in research to determine how best to manufacture crystals used in electronic components for the space shuttle. For proper growth of the crystal, the temperature must be controlled accurately by adjusting the input power. Suppose the relationship is given by

$$T(w) = 0.1w^2 + 2.155w + 20$$

where T is the temperature in degrees Celsius and w is the power input in watts.
(a) How much power is needed to maintain the temperature at 200°C?

(b) If the temperature is allowed to vary from 200°C by up to ±1°C, what range of wattage is allowed for the input power?

(c) In terms of the ε, δ definition of $\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = L$, what is x? What is $f(x)$? What is a? What is L? What value of ε is given? What is the corresponding value of δ?

13. (a) Find a number δ such that if $|x - 2| < \delta$, then $|4x - 8| < \varepsilon$, where $\varepsilon = 0.1$.
(b) Repeat part (a) with $\varepsilon = 0.01$.

14. Given that $\lim_{x\to 2}(5x - 7) = 3$, illustrate Definition 2 by finding values of δ that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.1$, $\varepsilon = 0.05$, and $\varepsilon = 0.01$.

15–18 Prove the statement using the ε, δ definition of a limit and illustrate with a diagram like Figure 9.

15. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}x\right) = 2$ **16.** $\lim\limits_{x\to 4} (2x - 5) = 3$

17. $\lim\limits_{x\to -3} (1 - 4x) = 13$ **18.** $\lim\limits_{x\to -2} (3x + 5) = -1$

19–32 Prove the statement using the ε, δ definition of a limit.

19. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} \dfrac{2 + 4x}{3} = 2$ **20.** $\lim\limits_{x\to 10} \left(3 - \frac{4}{5}x\right) = -5$

21. $\lim\limits_{x\to 4} \dfrac{x^2 - 2x - 8}{x - 4} = 6$ **22.** $\lim\limits_{x\to -1.5} \dfrac{9 - 4x^2}{3 + 2x} = 6$

23. $\lim\limits_{x\to a} x = a$ **24.** $\lim\limits_{x\to a} c = c$

25. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} x^2 = 0$ **26.** $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} x^3 = 0$

27. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} |x| = 0$ **28.** $\lim\limits_{x\to -6^+} \sqrt[8]{6 + x} = 0$

29. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} (x^2 - 4x + 5) = 1$ **30.** $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} (x^2 + 2x - 7) = 1$

31. $\lim\limits_{x\to -2} (x^2 - 1) = 3$ **32.** $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} x^3 = 8$

33. Verify that another possible choice of δ for showing that $\lim_{x\to 3} x^2 = 9$ in Example 4 is $\delta = \min\{2, \varepsilon/8\}$.

34. Verify, by a geometric argument, that the largest possible choice of δ for showing that $\lim_{x\to 3} x^2 = 9$ is $\delta = \sqrt{9 + \varepsilon} - 3$.

CAS **35.** (a) For the limit $\lim_{x\to 1}(x^3 + x + 1) = 3$, use a graph to find a value of δ that corresponds to $\varepsilon = 0.4$.
(b) By using a computer algebra system to solve the cubic equation $x^3 + x + 1 = 3 + \varepsilon$, find the largest possible value of δ that works for any given $\varepsilon > 0$.
(c) Put $\varepsilon = 0.4$ in your answer to part (b) and compare with your answer to part (a).

36. Prove that $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} \dfrac{1}{x} = \dfrac{1}{2}$.

37. Prove that $\lim\limits_{x\to a} \sqrt{x} = \sqrt{a}$ if $a > 0$.

$\left[\textit{Hint: } \text{Use } \left|\sqrt{x} - \sqrt{a}\right| = \dfrac{|x - a|}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{a}}.\right]$

38. If H is the Heaviside function defined in Example 1.5.6, prove, using Definition 2, that $\lim_{t\to 0} H(t)$ does not exist. [*Hint:* Use an indirect proof as follows. Suppose that the limit is L. Take $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2}$ in the definition of a limit and try to arrive at a contradiction.]

39. If the function f is defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \\ 1 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \end{cases}$$

prove that $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$ does not exist.

40. By comparing Definitions 2, 3, and 4, prove Theorem 1.6.1.

41. How close to -3 do we have to take x so that

$$\frac{1}{(x + 3)^4} > 10{,}000$$

42. Prove, using Definition 6, that $\lim\limits_{x\to -3} \dfrac{1}{(x + 3)^4} = \infty$.

43. Prove that $\lim\limits_{x\to -1^-} \dfrac{5}{(x + 1)^3} = -\infty$.

44. Suppose that $\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = \infty$ and $\lim_{x\to a} g(x) = c$, where c is a real number. Prove each statement.
(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = \infty$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to a} [f(x)g(x)] = \infty$ if $c > 0$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to a} [f(x)g(x)] = -\infty$ if $c < 0$

1.8 Continuity

We noticed in Section 1.6 that the limit of a function as x approaches a can often be found simply by calculating the value of the function at a. Functions with this property are called *continuous at a*. We will see that the mathematical definition of continuity corresponds closely with the meaning of the word *continuity* in everyday language. (A continuous process is one that takes place gradually, without interruption or abrupt change.)

1 Definition A function f is **continuous at a number *a*** if

$$\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = f(a)$$

As illustrated in Figure 1, if f is continuous, then the points $(x, f(x))$ on the graph of f approach the point $(a, f(a))$ on the graph. So there is no gap in the curve.

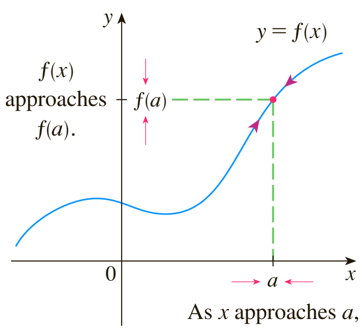


FIGURE 1

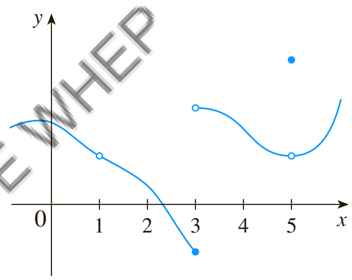


FIGURE 2

Notice that Definition 1 implicitly requires three things if f is continuous at a:

1. $f(a)$ is defined (that is, a is in the domain of f)
2. $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ exists
3. $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = f(a)$

The definition says that f is continuous at a if $f(x)$ approaches $f(a)$ as x approaches a. Thus a continuous function f has the property that a small change in x produces only a small change in $f(x)$. In fact, the change in $f(x)$ can be kept as small as we please by keeping the change in x sufficiently small.

If f is defined near a (in other words, f is defined on an open interval containing a, except perhaps at a), we say that f is **discontinuous at *a*** (or f has a **discontinuity** at a) if f is not continuous at a.

Physical phenomena are usually continuous. For instance, the displacement or velocity of a vehicle varies continuously with time, as does a person's height. But discontinuities do occur in such situations as electric currents. [See Example 1.5.6, where the Heaviside function is discontinuous at 0 because $\lim_{t \to 0} H(t)$ does not exist.]

Geometrically, you can think of a function that is continuous at every number in an interval as a function whose graph has no break in it: the graph can be drawn without removing your pen from the paper.

EXAMPLE 1 Figure 2 shows the graph of a function f. At which numbers is f discontinuous? Why?

SOLUTION It looks as if there is a discontinuity when $a = 1$ because the graph has a break there. The official reason that f is discontinuous at 1 is that $f(1)$ is not defined.

The graph also has a break when $a = 3$, but the reason for the discontinuity is different. Here, $f(3)$ is defined, but $\lim_{x \to 3} f(x)$ does not exist (because the left and right limits are different). So f is discontinuous at 3.

What about $a = 5$? Here, $f(5)$ is defined and $\lim_{x \to 5} f(x)$ exists (because the left and right limits are the same). But

$$\lim_{x \to 5} f(x) \neq f(5)$$

So f is discontinuous at 5. ■

Now let's see how to detect discontinuities when a function is defined by a formula.

EXAMPLE 2 Where are each of the following functions discontinuous?

(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2}$

(b) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{x^2} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$

(c) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2} & \text{if } x \neq 2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 2 \end{cases}$

(d) $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$

SOLUTION

(a) Notice that $f(2)$ is not defined, so f is discontinuous at 2. Later we'll see why f is continuous at all other numbers.

(b) Here $f(0) = 1$ is defined but

$$\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 0} \frac{1}{x^2}$$

does not exist. (See Example 1.5.8.) So f is discontinuous at 0.

(c) Here $f(2) = 1$ is defined and

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) = \lim_{x \to 2} \frac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2} = \lim_{x \to 2} \frac{(x-2)(x+1)}{x-2} = \lim_{x \to 2} (x + 1) = 3$$

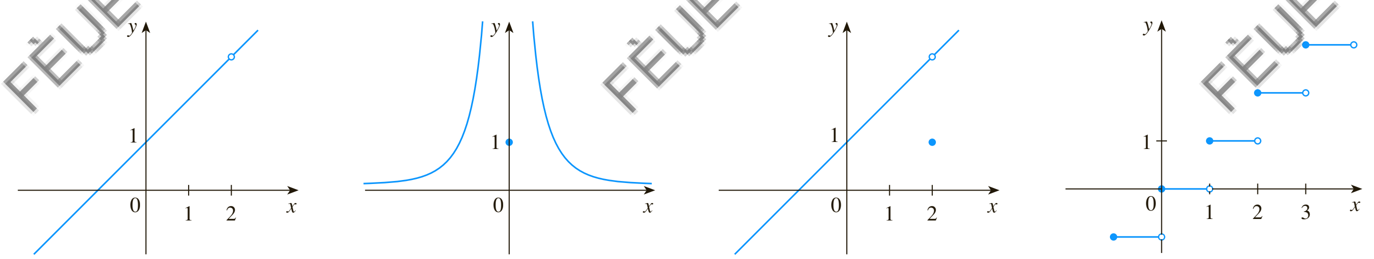
exists. But

$$\lim_{x \to 2} f(x) \neq f(2)$$

so f is not continuous at 2.

(d) The greatest integer function $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$ has discontinuities at all of the integers because $\lim_{x \to n} [\![x]\!]$ does not exist if n is an integer. (See Example 1.6.10 and Exercise 1.6.53.) ■

Figure 3 shows the graphs of the functions in Example 2. In each case the graph can't be drawn without lifting the pen from the paper because a hole or break or jump occurs in the graph. The kind of discontinuity illustrated in parts (a) and (c) is called **removable** because we could remove the discontinuity by redefining f at just the single number 2. [The function $g(x) = x + 1$ is continuous.] The discontinuity in part (b) is called an **infinite discontinuity**. The discontinuities in part (d) are called **jump discontinuities** because the function "jumps" from one value to another.



(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2}$

(b) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{x^2} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$

(c) $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2} & \text{if } x \neq 2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 2 \end{cases}$

(d) $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$

FIGURE 3
Graphs of the functions in Example 2

2 Definition A function f is **continuous from the right at a number a** if

$$\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = f(a)$$

and f is **continuous from the left at a** if

$$\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = f(a)$$

EXAMPLE 3 At each integer n, the function $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$ [see Figure 3(d)] is continuous from the right but discontinuous from the left because

$$\lim_{x \to n^+} f(x) = \lim_{x \to n^+} [\![x]\!] = n = f(n)$$

but $$\lim_{x \to n^-} f(x) = \lim_{x \to n^-} [\![x]\!] = n - 1 \neq f(n)$$ ■

3 Definition A function f is **continuous on an interval** if it is continuous at every number in the interval. (If f is defined only on one side of an endpoint of the interval, we understand *continuous* at the endpoint to mean *continuous from the right* or *continuous from the left.*)

EXAMPLE 4 Show that the function $f(x) = 1 - \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ is continuous on the interval $[-1, 1]$.

SOLUTION If $-1 < a < 1$, then using the Limit Laws, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x \to a} f(x) &= \lim_{x \to a} \left(1 - \sqrt{1 - x^2}\right) \\
&= 1 - \lim_{x \to a} \sqrt{1 - x^2} && \text{(by Laws 2 and 7)} \\
&= 1 - \sqrt{\lim_{x \to a} (1 - x^2)} && \text{(by 11)} \\
&= 1 - \sqrt{1 - a^2} && \text{(by 2, 7, and 9)} \\
&= f(a)
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, by Definition 1, f is continuous at a if $-1 < a < 1$. Similar calculations show that

$$\lim_{x \to -1^+} f(x) = 1 = f(-1) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 1^-} f(x) = 1 = f(1)$$

so f is continuous from the right at -1 and continuous from the left at 1. Therefore, according to Definition 3, f is continuous on $[-1, 1]$.

The graph of f is sketched in Figure 4. It is the lower half of the circle

$$x^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 1$$ ■

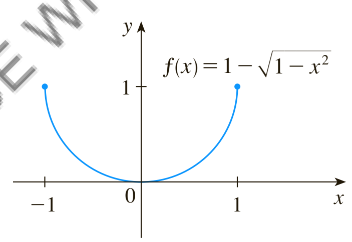


FIGURE 4

Instead of always using Definitions 1, 2, and 3 to verify the continuity of a function as we did in Example 4, it is often convenient to use the next theorem, which shows how to build up complicated continuous functions from simple ones.

4 Theorem If f and g are continuous at a and if c is a constant, then the following functions are also continuous at a:

1. $f + g$ **2.** $f - g$ **3.** cf

4. fg **5.** $\dfrac{f}{g}$ if $g(a) \neq 0$

PROOF Each of the five parts of this theorem follows from the corresponding Limit Law in Section 1.6. For instance, we give the proof of part 1. Since f and g are continuous at a, we have

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = f(a) \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to a} g(x) = g(a)$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{x \to a} (f + g)(x) = \lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)]$$

$$= \lim_{x \to a} f(x) + \lim_{x \to a} g(x) \qquad \text{(by Law 1)}$$

$$= f(a) + g(a)$$

$$= (f + g)(a)$$

This shows that $f + g$ is continuous at a. ■

It follows from Theorem 4 and Definition 3 that if f and g are continuous on an interval, then so are the functions $f + g$, $f - g$, cf, fg, and (if g is never 0) f/g. The following theorem was stated in Section 1.6 as the Direct Substitution Property.

5 Theorem

(a) Any polynomial is continuous everywhere; that is, it is continuous on $\mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$.

(b) Any rational function is continuous wherever it is defined; that is, it is continuous on its domain.

PROOF

(a) A polynomial is a function of the form

$$P(x) = c_n x^n + c_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + c_1 x + c_0$$

where $c_0, c_1, \ldots, c_n$ are constants. We know that

$$\lim_{x \to a} c_0 = c_0 \qquad \text{(by Law 7)}$$

and

$$\lim_{x \to a} x^m = a^m \qquad m = 1, 2, \ldots, n \qquad \text{(by 9)}$$

This equation is precisely the statement that the function $f(x) = x^m$ is a continuous function. Thus, by part 3 of Theorem 4, the function $g(x) = cx^m$ is continuous. Since P is a sum of functions of this form and a constant function, it follows from part 1 of Theorem 4 that P is continuous.

(b) A rational function is a function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$$

where P and Q are polynomials. The domain of f is $D = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid Q(x) \neq 0\}$. We know from part (a) that P and Q are continuous everywhere. Thus, by part 5 of Theorem 4, f is continuous at every number in D. ■

As an illustration of Theorem 5, observe that the volume of a sphere varies continuously with its radius because the formula $V(r) = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ shows that V is a polynomial function of r. Likewise, if a ball is thrown vertically into the air with a velocity of 50 ft/s, then the height of the ball in feet t seconds later is given by the formula $h = 50t - 16t^2$. Again this is a polynomial function, so the height is a continuous function of the elapsed time, as we might expect.

Knowledge of which functions are continuous enables us to evaluate some limits very quickly, as the following example shows. Compare it with Example 1.6.2(b).

EXAMPLE 5 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -2} \frac{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1}{5 - 3x}$.

SOLUTION The function

$$f(x) = \frac{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1}{5 - 3x}$$

is rational, so by Theorem 5 it is continuous on its domain, which is $\{x \mid x \neq \frac{5}{3}\}$. Therefore

$$\lim_{x\to -2} \frac{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1}{5 - 3x} = \lim_{x\to -2} f(x) = f(-2)$$

$$= \frac{(-2)^3 + 2(-2)^2 - 1}{5 - 3(-2)} = -\frac{1}{11}$$

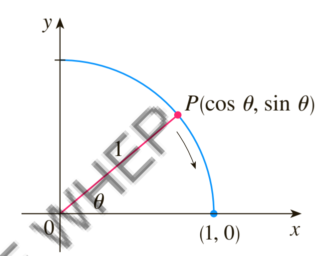


FIGURE 5

It turns out that most of the familiar functions are continuous at every number in their domains. For instance, Limit Law 10 (page 64) is exactly the statement that root functions are continuous.

From the appearance of the graphs of the sine and cosine functions (Figure 1.2.18), we would certainly guess that they are continuous. We know from the definitions of $\sin\theta$ and $\cos\theta$ that the coordinates of the point P in Figure 5 are $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$. As $\theta \to 0$, we see that P approaches the point $(1, 0)$ and so $\cos\theta \to 1$ and $\sin\theta \to 0$. Thus

6 $$\lim_{\theta\to 0} \cos\theta = 1 \qquad \lim_{\theta\to 0} \sin\theta = 0$$

Another way to establish the limits in (6) is to use the Squeeze Theorem with the inequality $\sin\theta < \theta$ (for $\theta > 0$), which is proved in Section 2.4.

Since $\cos 0 = 1$ and $\sin 0 = 0$, the equations in (6) assert that the cosine and sine functions are continuous at 0. The addition formulas for cosine and sine can then be used to deduce that these functions are continuous everywhere (see Exercises 64 and 65).

It follows from part 5 of Theorem 4 that

$$\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$$

is continuous except where $\cos x = 0$. This happens when x is an odd integer multiple of $\pi/2$, so $y = \tan x$ has infinite discontinuities when $x = \pm\pi/2, \pm 3\pi/2, \pm 5\pi/2$, and so on (see Figure 6).

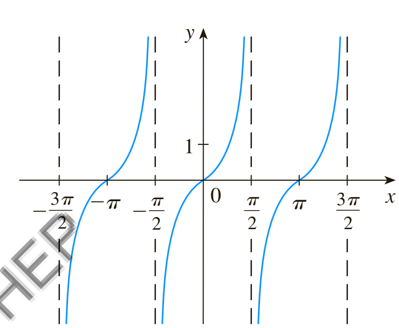


FIGURE 6
$y = \tan x$

7 Theorem The following types of functions are continuous at every number in their domains:

- polynomials
- rational functions
- root functions
- trigonometric functions

EXAMPLE 6 On what intervals is each function continuous?

(a) $f(x) = x^{100} - 2x^{37} + 75$ (b) $g(x) = \dfrac{x^2 + 2x + 17}{x^2 - 1}$

(c) $h(x) = \sqrt{x} + \dfrac{x + 1}{x - 1} - \dfrac{x + 1}{x^2 + 1}$

SOLUTION

(a) f is a polynomial, so it is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$ by Theorem 5(a).

(b) g is a rational function, so by Theorem 5(b), it is continuous on its domain, which is $D = \{x \mid x^2 - 1 \neq 0\} = \{x \mid x \neq \pm 1\}$. Thus g is continuous on the intervals $(-\infty, -1)$, $(-1, 1)$, and $(1, \infty)$.

(c) We can write $h(x) = F(x) + G(x) - H(x)$, where

$$F(x) = \sqrt{x} \qquad G(x) = \frac{x + 1}{x - 1} \qquad H(x) = \frac{x + 1}{x^2 + 1}$$

F is continuous on $[0, \infty)$ by Theorem 7. G is a rational function, so it is continuous everywhere except when $x - 1 = 0$, that is, $x = 1$. H is also a rational function, but its denominator is never 0, so H is continuous everywhere. Thus, by parts 1 and 2 of Theorem 4, h is continuous on the intervals $[0, 1)$ and $(1, \infty)$. ■

EXAMPLE 7 Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to \pi} \frac{\sin x}{2 + \cos x}$.

SOLUTION Theorem 7 tells us that $y = \sin x$ is continuous. The function in the denominator, $y = 2 + \cos x$, is the sum of two continuous functions and is therefore continuous. Notice that this function is never 0 because $\cos x \geqslant -1$ for all x and so $2 + \cos x > 0$ everywhere. Thus the ratio

$$f(x) = \frac{\sin x}{2 + \cos x}$$

is continuous everywhere. Hence, by the definition of a continuous function,

$$\lim_{x \to \pi} \frac{\sin x}{2 + \cos x} = \lim_{x \to \pi} f(x) = f(\pi) = \frac{\sin \pi}{2 + \cos \pi} = \frac{0}{2 - 1} = 0$$ ■

Another way of combining continuous functions f and g to get a new continuous function is to form the composite function $f \circ g$. This fact is a consequence of the following theorem.

This theorem says that a limit symbol can be moved through a function symbol if the function is continuous and the limit exists. In other words, the order of these two symbols can be reversed.

8 Theorem If f is continuous at b and $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to a} g(x) = b$, then $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to a} f(g(x)) = f(b)$. In other words,

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(g(x)) = f\Bigl(\lim_{x \to a} g(x)\Bigr)$$

Intuitively, Theorem 8 is reasonable because if x is close to a, then $g(x)$ is close to b, and since f is continuous at b, if $g(x)$ is close to b, then $f(g(x))$ is close to $f(b)$. A proof of Theorem 8 is given in Appendix F.

Let's now apply Theorem 8 in the special case where $f(x) = \sqrt[n]{x}$, with n being a positive integer. Then

$$f(g(x)) = \sqrt[n]{g(x)}$$

and

$$f\Big(\lim_{x \to a} g(x)\Big) = \sqrt[n]{\lim_{x \to a} g(x)}$$

If we put these expressions into Theorem 8, we get

$$\lim_{x \to a} \sqrt[n]{g(x)} = \sqrt[n]{\lim_{x \to a} g(x)}$$

and so Limit Law 11 has now been proved. (We assume that the roots exist.)

9 Theorem If g is continuous at a and f is continuous at $g(a)$, then the composite function $f \circ g$ given by $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$ is continuous at a.

This theorem is often expressed informally by saying "a continuous function of a continuous function is a continuous function."

PROOF Since g is continuous at a, we have

$$\lim_{x \to a} g(x) = g(a)$$

Since f is continuous at $b = g(a)$, we can apply Theorem 8 to obtain

$$\lim_{x \to a} f(g(x)) = f(g(a))$$

which is precisely the statement that the function $h(x) = f(g(x))$ is continuous at a; that is, $f \circ g$ is continuous at a. ■

EXAMPLE 8 Where are the following functions continuous?

(a) $h(x) = \sin(x^2)$ (b) $F(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + 7} - 4}$

SOLUTION

(a) We have $h(x) = f(g(x))$, where

$$g(x) = x^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(x) = \sin x$$

Now g is continuous on $\mathbb{R}$ since it is a polynomial, and f is also continuous everywhere. Thus $h = f \circ g$ is continuous on $\mathbb{R}$ by Theorem 9.

(b) Notice that F can be broken up as the composition of four continuous functions:

$$F = f \circ g \circ h \circ k \qquad \text{or} \qquad F(x) = f(g(h(k(x))))$$

where $\quad f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x} \qquad g(x) = x - 4 \qquad h(x) = \sqrt{x} \qquad k(x) = x^2 + 7$

We know that each of these functions is continuous on its domain (by Theorems 5 and 7), so by Theorem 9, F is continuous on its domain, which is

$$\{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid \sqrt{x^2 + 7} \neq 4\} = \{x \mid x \neq \pm 3\} = (-\infty, -3) \cup (-3, 3) \cup (3, \infty) \qquad \blacksquare$$

An important property of continuous functions is expressed by the following theorem, whose proof is found in more advanced books on calculus.

> **10 The Intermediate Value Theorem** Suppose that f is continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$ and let N be any number between $f(a)$ and $f(b)$, where $f(a) \neq f(b)$. Then there exists a number c in (a, b) such that $f(c) = N$.

The Intermediate Value Theorem states that a continuous function takes on every intermediate value between the function values $f(a)$ and $f(b)$. It is illustrated by Figure 7. Note that the value N can be taken on once [as in part (a)] or more than once [as in part (b)].

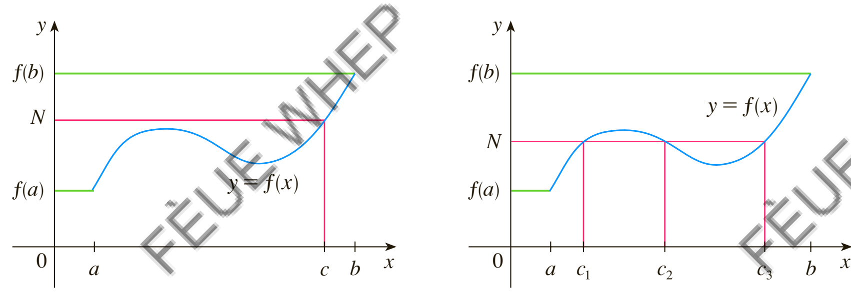


FIGURE 7

(a) (b)

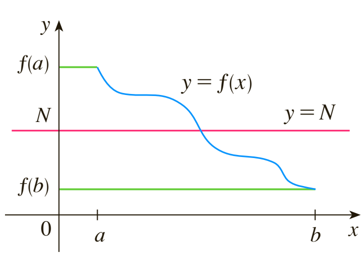


FIGURE 8

If we think of a continuous function as a function whose graph has no hole or break, then it is easy to believe that the Intermediate Value Theorem is true. In geometric terms it says that if any horizontal line $y = N$ is given between $y = f(a)$ and $y = f(b)$ as in Figure 8, then the graph of f can't jump over the line. It must intersect $y = N$ somewhere.

It is important that the function f in Theorem 10 be continuous. The Intermediate Value Theorem is not true in general for discontinuous functions (see Exercise 50).

One use of the Intermediate Value Theorem is in locating roots of equations as in the following example.

EXAMPLE 9 Show that there is a root of the equation

$$4x^3 - 6x^2 + 3x - 2 = 0$$

between 1 and 2.

SOLUTION Let $f(x) = 4x^3 - 6x^2 + 3x - 2$. We are looking for a solution of the given equation, that is, a number c between 1 and 2 such that $f(c) = 0$. Therefore we take $a = 1$, $b = 2$, and $N = 0$ in Theorem 10. We have

$$f(1) = 4 - 6 + 3 - 2 = -1 < 0$$

and
$$f(2) = 32 - 24 + 6 - 2 = 12 > 0$$

Thus $f(1) < 0 < f(2)$; that is, $N = 0$ is a number between $f(1)$ and $f(2)$. Now f is continuous since it is a polynomial, so the Intermediate Value Theorem says there is a number c between 1 and 2 such that $f(c) = 0$. In other words, the equation $4x^3 - 6x^2 + 3x - 2 = 0$ has at least one root c in the interval $(1, 2)$.

In fact, we can locate a root more precisely by using the Intermediate Value Theorem again. Since

$$f(1.2) = -0.128 < 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(1.3) = 0.548 > 0$$

a root must lie between 1.2 and 1.3. A calculator gives, by trial and error,

$$f(1.22) = -0.007008 < 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(1.23) = 0.056068 > 0$$

so a root lies in the interval $(1.22, 1.23)$. ■

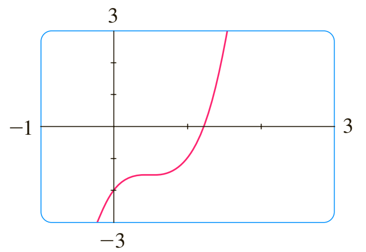


FIGURE 9

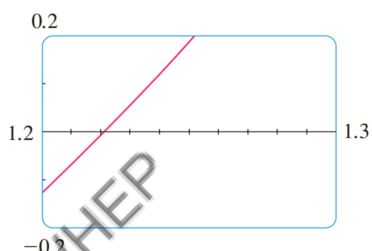


FIGURE 10

We can use a graphing calculator or computer to illustrate the use of the Intermediate Value Theorem in Example 9. Figure 9 shows the graph of f in the viewing rectangle $[-1, 3]$ by $[-3, 3]$ and you can see that the graph crosses the x-axis between 1 and 2. Figure 10 shows the result of zooming in to the viewing rectangle $[1.2, 1.3]$ by $[-0.2, 0.2]$.

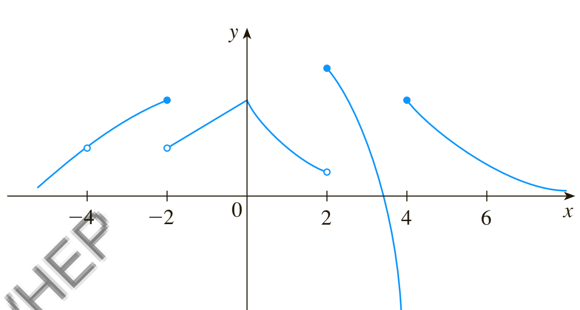
In fact, the Intermediate Value Theorem plays a role in the very way these graphing devices work. A computer calculates a finite number of points on the graph and turns on the pixels that contain these calculated points. It assumes that the function is continuous and takes on all the intermediate values between two consecutive points. The computer therefore "connects the dots" by turning on the intermediate pixels.

1.8 EXERCISES

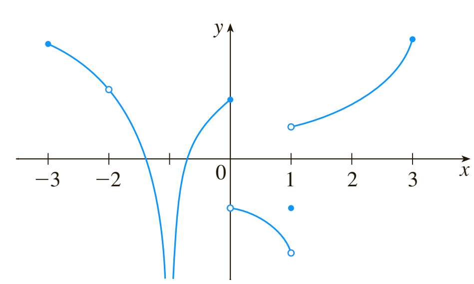
1. Write an equation that expresses the fact that a function f is continuous at the number 4.

2. If f is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$, what can you say about its graph?

3. (a) From the graph of f, state the numbers at which f is discontinuous and explain why.
(b) For each of the numbers stated in part (a), determine whether f is continuous from the right, or from the left, or neither.



4. From the graph of g, state the intervals on which g is continuous.



5–8 Sketch the graph of a function f that is continuous except for the stated discontinuity.

5. Discontinuous at 2, but continuous from the right there

6. Discontinuities at -1 and 4, but continuous from the left at -1 and from the right at 4

7. Removable discontinuity at 3, jump discontinuity at 5

8. Neither left nor right continuous at -2, continuous only from the left at 2

9. The toll T charged for driving on a certain stretch of a toll road is \$5 except during rush hours (between 7 AM and 10 AM and between 4 PM and 7 PM) when the toll is \$7.
(a) Sketch a graph of T as a function of the time t, measured in hours past midnight.
(b) Discuss the discontinuities of this function and their significance to someone who uses the road.

10. Explain why each function is continuous or discontinuous.
(a) The temperature at a specific location as a function of time
(b) The temperature at a specific time as a function of the distance due west from New York City
(c) The altitude above sea level as a function of the distance due west from New York City
(d) The cost of a taxi ride as a function of the distance traveled
(e) The current in the circuit for the lights in a room as a function of time

11–14 Use the definition of continuity and the properties of limits to show that the function is continuous at the given number a.

11. $f(x) = (x + 2x^3)^4, \quad a = -1$

12. $g(t) = \dfrac{t^2 + 5t}{2t + 1}, \quad a = 2$

13. $p(v) = 2\sqrt{3v^2 + 1}, \quad a = 1$

14. $f(x) = 3x^4 - 5x + \sqrt[3]{x^2 + 4}, \quad a = 2$

15–16 Use the definition of continuity and the properties of limits to show that the function is continuous on the given interval.

15. $f(x) = x + \sqrt{x - 4}, \quad [4, \infty)$

16. $g(x) = \dfrac{x - 1}{3x + 6}, \quad (-\infty, -2)$

17–22 Explain why the function is discontinuous at the given number a. Sketch the graph of the function.

17. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x + 2} \qquad a = -2$

18. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{x + 2} & \text{if } x \neq -2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = -2 \end{cases} \qquad a = -2$

19. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x^2 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ 1/x & \text{if } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases} \qquad a = 1$

20. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - x}{x^2 - 1} & \text{if } x \neq 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } x = 1 \end{cases} \qquad a = 1$

21. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \\ 1 - x^2 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases} \qquad a = 0$

22. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{2x^2 - 5x - 3}{x - 3} & \text{if } x \neq 3 \\ 6 & \text{if } x = 3 \end{cases} \qquad a = 3$

23–24 How would you "remove the discontinuity" of f? In other words, how would you define $f(2)$ in order to make f continuous at 2?

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x - 2}$

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3 - 8}{x^2 - 4}$

25–32 Explain, using Theorems 4, 5, 7, and 9, why the function is continuous at every number in its domain. State the domain.

25. $F(x) = \dfrac{2x^2 - x - 1}{x^2 + 1}$

26. $G(x) = \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{2x^2 - x - 1}$

27. $Q(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt[3]{x} - 2}{x^3 - 2}$

28. $h(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{x + 1}$

29. $h(x) = \cos(1 - x^2)$

30. $B(x) = \dfrac{\tan x}{\sqrt{4 - x^2}}$

31. $M(x) = \sqrt{1 + \dfrac{1}{x}}$

32. $F(x) = \sin(\cos(\sin x))$

33–34 Locate the discontinuities of the function and illustrate by graphing.

33. $y = \dfrac{1}{1 + \sin x}$

34. $y = \tan\sqrt{x}$

35–38 Use continuity to evaluate the limit.

35. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 2} x\sqrt{20 - x^2}$

36. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to \pi} \sin(x + \sin x)$

37. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to \pi/4} x^2 \tan x$

38. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 2} x^3/\sqrt{x^2 + x - 2}$

39–40 Show that f is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$.

39. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x^2 & \text{if } x \leqslant 1 \\ \sqrt{x - 1} & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$

40. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \sin x & \text{if } x < \pi/4 \\ \cos x & \text{if } x \geqslant \pi/4 \end{cases}$

41–43 Find the numbers at which f is discontinuous. At which of these numbers is f continuous from the right, from the left, or neither? Sketch the graph of f.

41. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x < -1 \\ x & \text{if } -1 \leqslant x < 1 \\ 1/x & \text{if } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases}$

42. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 1 & \text{if } x \leqslant 1 \\ 3 - x & \text{if } 1 < x \leqslant 4 \\ \sqrt{x} & \text{if } x > 4 \end{cases}$

43. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 2 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 2x^2 & \text{if } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 1 \\ 2 - x & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$

44. The gravitational force exerted by the planet Earth on a unit mass at a distance r from the center of the planet is

$$F(r) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{GMr}{R^3} & \text{if } r < R \\ \dfrac{GM}{r^2} & \text{if } r \geqslant R \end{cases}$$

where M is the mass of Earth, R is its radius, and G is the gravitational constant. Is F a continuous function of r?

45. For what value of the constant c is the function f continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$?

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} cx^2 + 2x & \text{if } x < 2 \\ x^3 - cx & \text{if } x \geqslant 2 \end{cases}$$

46. Find the values of a and b that make f continuous everywhere.

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{x^2 - 4}{x - 2} & \text{if } x < 2 \\ ax^2 - bx + 3 & \text{if } 2 \leqslant x < 3 \\ 2x - a + b & \text{if } x \geqslant 3 \end{cases}$$

47. Suppose f and g are continuous functions such that $g(2) = 6$ and $\lim_{x \to 2} [3f(x) + f(x)g(x)] = 36$. Find $f(2)$.

48. Let $f(x) = 1/x$ and $g(x) = 1/x^2$.
(a) Find $(f \circ g)(x)$.
(b) Is $f \circ g$ continuous everywhere? Explain.

49. Which of the following functions f has a removable discontinuity at a? If the discontinuity is removable, find a function g that agrees with f for $x \neq a$ and is continuous at a.

(a) $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4 - 1}{x - 1}, \quad a = 1$

(b) $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3 - x^2 - 2x}{x - 2}, \quad a = 2$

(c) $f(x) = [\![\sin x]\!], \quad a = \pi$

50. Suppose that a function f is continuous on $[0, 1]$ except at 0.25 and that $f(0) = 1$ and $f(1) = 3$. Let $N = 2$. Sketch two possible graphs of f, one showing that f might not satisfy the conclusion of the Intermediate Value Theorem and one showing that f might still satisfy the conclusion of the Intermediate Value Theorem (even though it doesn't satisfy the hypothesis).

51. If $f(x) = x^2 + 10 \sin x$, show that there is a number c such that $f(c) = 1000$.

52. Suppose f is continuous on $[1, 5]$ and the only solutions of the equation $f(x) = 6$ are $x = 1$ and $x = 4$. If $f(2) = 8$, explain why $f(3) > 6$.

53–56 Use the Intermediate Value Theorem to show that there is a root of the given equation in the specified interval.

53. $x^4 + x - 3 = 0, \quad (1, 2)$

54. $2/x = x - \sqrt{x}, \quad (2, 3)$

55. $\cos x = x, \quad (0, 1)$

56. $\sin x = x^2 - x, \quad (1, 2)$

57–58 (a) Prove that the equation has at least one real root.
(b) Use your calculator to find an interval of length 0.01 that contains a root.

57. $\cos x = x^3$

58. $x^5 - x^2 + 2x + 3 = 0$

59–60 (a) Prove that the equation has at least one real root.
(b) Use your graphing device to find the root correct to three decimal places.

59. $x^5 - x^2 - 4 = 0$

60. $\sqrt{x - 5} = \dfrac{1}{x + 3}$

61–62 Prove, without graphing, that the graph of the function has at least two x-intercepts in the specified interval.

61. $y = \sin x^3, \quad (1, 2)$

62. $y = x^2 - 3 + 1/x, \quad (0, 2)$

63. Prove that f is continuous at a if and only if

$$\lim_{h \to 0} f(a + h) = f(a)$$

64. To prove that sine is continuous, we need to show that $\lim_{x \to a} \sin x = \sin a$ for every real number a. By Exercise 63 an equivalent statement is that

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \sin(a + h) = \sin a$$

Use (6) to show that this is true.

65. Prove that cosine is a continuous function.

66. (a) Prove Theorem 4, part 3.
(b) Prove Theorem 4, part 5.

67. For what values of x is f continuous?

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \\ 1 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \end{cases}$$

68. For what values of x is g continuous?

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is rational} \\ x & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational} \end{cases}$$

69. Is there a number that is exactly 1 more than its cube?

70. If a and b are positive numbers, prove that the equation

$$\frac{a}{x^3 + 2x^2 - 1} + \frac{b}{x^3 + x - 2} = 0$$

has at least one solution in the interval $(-1, 1)$.

71. Show that the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^4 \sin(1/x) & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$$

is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$.

72. (a) Show that the absolute value function $F(x) = |x|$ is continuous everywhere.
(b) Prove that if f is a continuous function on an interval, then so is $|f|$.
(c) Is the converse of the statement in part (b) also true? In other words, if $|f|$ is continuous, does it follow that f is continuous? If so, prove it. If not, find a counterexample.

73. A Tibetan monk leaves the monastery at 7:00 AM and takes his usual path to the top of the mountain, arriving at 7:00 PM. The following morning, he starts at 7:00 AM at the top and takes the same path back, arriving at the monastery at 7:00 PM. Use the Intermediate Value Theorem to show that there is a point on the path that the monk will cross at exactly the same time of day on both days.

1 REVIEW

CONCEPT CHECK

Answers to the Concept Check can be found on the back endpapers.

1. (a) What is a function? What are its domain and range?
(b) What is the graph of a function?
(c) How can you tell whether a given curve is the graph of a function?

2. Discuss four ways of representing a function. Illustrate your discussion with examples.

3. (a) What is an even function? How can you tell if a function is even by looking at its graph? Give three examples of an even function.
(b) What is an odd function? How can you tell if a function is odd by looking at its graph? Give three examples of an odd function.

4. What is an increasing function?

5. What is a mathematical model?

6. Give an example of each type of function.
(a) Linear function
(b) Power function
(c) Exponential function
(d) Quadratic function
(e) Polynomial of degree 5
(f) Rational function

7. Sketch by hand, on the same axes, the graphs of the following functions.
(a) $f(x) = x$
(b) $g(x) = x^2$
(c) $h(x) = x^3$
(d) $j(x) = x^4$

8. Draw, by hand, a rough sketch of the graph of each function.
(a) $y = \sin x$
(b) $y = \cos x$
(c) $y = \tan x$
(d) $y = 1/x$
(e) $y = |x|$
(f) $y = \sqrt{x}$

9. Suppose that f has domain A and g has domain B.
(a) What is the domain of $f + g$?
(b) What is the domain of fg?
(c) What is the domain of f/g?

10. How is the composite function $f \circ g$ defined? What is its domain?

11. Suppose the graph of f is given. Write an equation for each of the graphs that are obtained from the graph of f as follows.
(a) Shift 2 units upward.
(b) Shift 2 units downward.
(c) Shift 2 units to the right.
(d) Shift 2 units to the left.
(e) Reflect about the x-axis.
(f) Reflect about the y-axis.
(g) Stretch vertically by a factor of 2.
(h) Shrink vertically by a factor of 2.
(i) Stretch horizontally by a factor of 2.
(j) Shrink horizontally by a factor of 2.

12. Explain what each of the following means and illustrate with a sketch.
(a) $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = L$
(b) $\lim_{x \to a^+} f(x) = L$
(c) $\lim_{x \to a^-} f(x) = L$
(d) $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = \infty$
(e) $\lim_{x \to a} f(x) = -\infty$

13. Describe several ways in which a limit can fail to exist. Illustrate with sketches.

14. What does it mean to say that the line $x = a$ is a vertical asymptote of the curve $y = f(x)$? Draw curves to illustrate the various possibilities.

15. State the following Limit Laws.
(a) Sum Law
(b) Difference Law
(c) Constant Multiple Law
(d) Product Law
(e) Quotient Law
(f) Power Law
(g) Root Law

16. What does the Squeeze Theorem say?

17. (a) What does it mean for f to be continuous at a?
(b) What does it mean for f to be continuous on the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$? What can you say about the graph of such a function?

18. (a) Give examples of functions that are continuous on $[-1, 1]$.
(b) Give an example of a function that is not continuous on $[0, 1]$.

19. What does the Intermediate Value Theorem say?

TRUE-FALSE QUIZ

Determine whether the statement is true or false. If it is true, explain why. If it is false, explain why or give an example that disproves the statement.

1. If f is a function, then $f(s + t) = f(s) + f(t)$.

2. If $f(s) = f(t)$, then $s = t$.

3. If f is a function, then $f(3x) = 3f(x)$.

4. If $x_1 < x_2$ and f is a decreasing function, then $f(x_1) > f(x_2)$.

5. A vertical line intersects the graph of a function at most once.

6. If x is any real number, then $\sqrt{x^2} = x$.

7. $\lim\limits_{x \to 4} \left(\dfrac{2x}{x-4} - \dfrac{8}{x-4} \right) = \lim\limits_{x \to 4} \dfrac{2x}{x-4} - \lim\limits_{x \to 4} \dfrac{8}{x-4}$

8. $\lim\limits_{x \to 1} \dfrac{x^2 + 6x - 7}{x^2 + 5x - 6} = \dfrac{\lim\limits_{x \to 1} (x^2 + 6x - 7)}{\lim\limits_{x \to 1} (x^2 + 5x - 6)}$

9. $\lim\limits_{x \to 1} \dfrac{x - 3}{x^2 + 2x - 4} = \dfrac{\lim\limits_{x \to 1} (x - 3)}{\lim\limits_{x \to 1} (x^2 + 2x - 4)}$

10. $\dfrac{x^2 - 9}{x - 3} = x + 3$

11. $\lim\limits_{x \to 3} \dfrac{x^2 - 9}{x - 3} = \lim\limits_{x \to 3} (x + 3)$

12. If $\lim_{x \to 5} f(x) = 2$ and $\lim_{x \to 5} g(x) = 0$, then $\lim_{x \to 5} [f(x)/g(x)]$ does not exist.

13. If $\lim_{x \to 5} f(x) = 0$ and $\lim_{x \to 5} g(x) = 0$, then $\lim_{x \to 5} [f(x)/g(x)]$ does not exist.

14. If neither $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ nor $\lim_{x \to a} g(x)$ exists, then $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)]$ does not exist.

15. If $\lim_{x \to a} f(x)$ exists but $\lim_{x \to a} g(x)$ does not exist, then $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)]$ does not exist.

16. If $\lim_{x \to 6} [f(x)\, g(x)]$ exists, then the limit must be $f(6)\, g(6)$.

17. If p is a polynomial, then $\lim_{x \to b} p(x) = p(b)$.

18. If $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = \infty$ and $\lim_{x \to 0} g(x) = \infty$, then $\lim_{x \to 0} [f(x) - g(x)] = 0$.

19. If the line $x = 1$ is a vertical asymptote of $y = f(x)$, then f is not defined at 1.

20. If $f(1) > 0$ and $f(3) < 0$, then there exists a number c between 1 and 3 such that $f(c) = 0$.

21. If f is continuous at 5 and $f(5) = 2$ and $f(4) = 3$, then $\lim_{x \to 2} f(4x^2 - 11) = 2$.

22. If f is continuous on $[-1, 1]$ and $f(-1) = 4$ and $f(1) = 3$, then there exists a number r such that $|r| < 1$ and $f(r) = \pi$.

23. Let f be a function such that $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = 6$. Then there exists a positive number δ such that if $0 < |x| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - 6| < 1$.

24. If $f(x) > 1$ for all x and $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x)$ exists, then $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) > 1$.

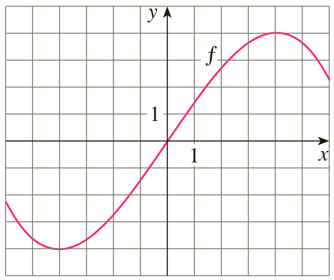
25. The equation $x^{10} - 10x^2 + 5 = 0$ has a root in the interval $(0, 2)$.

26. If f is continuous at a, so is $|f|$.

27. If $|f|$ is continuous at a, so is f.

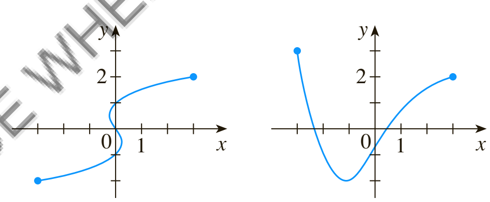
EXERCISES

1. Let f be the function whose graph is given.



(a) Estimate the value of $f(2)$.
(b) Estimate the values of x such that $f(x) = 3$.
(c) State the domain of f.
(d) State the range of f.
(e) On what interval is f increasing?
(f) Is f even, odd, or neither even nor odd? Explain.

2. Determine whether each curve is the graph of a function of x. If it is, state the domain and range of the function.



3. If $f(x) = x^2 - 2x + 3$, evaluate the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{h}$$

4. Sketch a rough graph of the yield of a crop as a function of the amount of fertilizer used.

5–8 Find the domain and range of the function. Write your answer in interval notation.

5. $f(x) = 2/(3x - 1)$

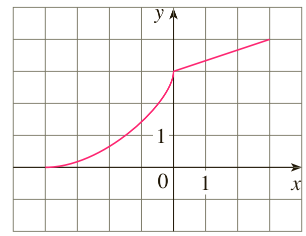
6. $g(x) = \sqrt{16 - x^4}$

7. $y = 1 + \sin x$

8. $F(t) = 3 + \cos 2t$

9. Suppose that the graph of f is given. Describe how the graphs of the following functions can be obtained from the graph of f.
(a) $y = f(x) + 8$ (b) $y = f(x + 8)$
(c) $y = 1 + 2f(x)$ (d) $y = f(x - 2) - 2$
(e) $y = -f(x)$ (f) $y = 3 - f(x)$

10. The graph of f is given. Draw the graphs of the following functions.
(a) $y = f(x - 8)$ (b) $y = -f(x)$
(c) $y = 2 - f(x)$ (d) $y = \frac{1}{2}f(x) - 1$



11–16 Use transformations to sketch the graph of the function.

11. $y = (x - 2)^3$

12. $y = 2\sqrt{x}$

13. $y = x^2 - 2x + 2$

14. $y = \dfrac{1}{x - 1}$

15. $f(x) = -\cos 2x$

16. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 1 + x^2 & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \end{cases}$

17. Determine whether f is even, odd, or neither even nor odd.
(a) $f(x) = 2x^5 - 3x^2 + 2$
(b) $f(x) = x^3 - x^7$
(c) $f(x) = \cos(x^2)$ (d) $f(x) = 1 + \sin x$

18. Find an expression for the function whose graph consists of the line segment from the point $(-2, 2)$ to the point $(-1, 0)$ together with the top half of the circle with center the origin and radius 1.

19. If $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ and $g(x) = \sin x$, find the functions (a) $f \circ g$, (b) $g \circ f$, (c) $f \circ f$, (d) $g \circ g$, and their domains.

20. Express the function $F(x) = 1/\sqrt{x + \sqrt{x}}$ as a composition of three functions.

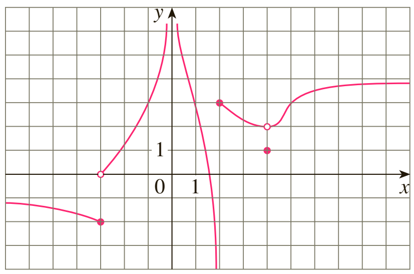
21. Life expectancy improved dramatically in the 20th century. The table gives the life expectancy at birth (in years) of males born in the United States. Use a scatter plot to choose an appropriate type of model. Use your model to predict the life span of a male born in the year 2010.

Birth year	Life expectancy	Birth year	Life expectancy
1900	48.3	1960	66.6
1910	51.1	1970	67.1
1920	55.2	1980	70.0
1930	57.4	1990	71.8
1940	62.5	2000	73.0
1950	65.6		

22. A small-appliance manufacturer finds that it costs \$9000 to produce 1000 toaster ovens a week and \$12,000 to produce 1500 toaster ovens a week.
(a) Express the cost as a function of the number of toaster ovens produced, assuming that it is linear. Then sketch the graph.

(b) What is the slope of the graph and what does it represent?
(c) What is the y-intercept of the graph and what does it represent?

23. The graph of f is given.



(a) Find each limit, or explain why it does not exist.
(i) $\lim_{x\to 2^+} f(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to -3^+} f(x)$ (iii) $\lim_{x\to -3} f(x)$
(iv) $\lim_{x\to 4} f(x)$ (v) $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$ (vi) $\lim_{x\to 2^-} f(x)$
(b) State the equations of the vertical asymptotes.
(c) At what numbers is f discontinuous? Explain.

24. Sketch the graph of an example of a function f that satisfies all of the following conditions:
$\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x) = -2$, $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x) = 1$, $f(0) = -1$,
$\lim_{x\to 2^-} f(x) = \infty$, $\lim_{x\to 2^+} f(x) = -\infty$

25–38 Find the limit.

25. $\lim_{x\to 0} \cos(x + \sin x)$

26. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{x^2 - 9}{x^2 + 2x - 3}$

27. $\lim_{x\to -3} \dfrac{x^2 - 9}{x^2 + 2x - 3}$

28. $\lim_{x\to 1^+} \dfrac{x^2 - 9}{x^2 + 2x - 3}$

29. $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{(h-1)^3 + 1}{h}$

30. $\lim_{t\to 2} \dfrac{t^2 - 4}{t^3 - 8}$

31. $\lim_{r\to 9} \dfrac{\sqrt{r}}{(r-9)^4}$

32. $\lim_{v\to 4^+} \dfrac{4 - v}{|4 - v|}$

33. $\lim_{u\to 1} \dfrac{u^4 - 1}{u^3 + 5u^2 - 6u}$

34. $\lim_{x\to 3} \dfrac{\sqrt{x+6} - x}{x^3 - 3x^2}$

35. $\lim_{s\to 16} \dfrac{4 - \sqrt{s}}{s - 16}$

36. $\lim_{v\to 2} \dfrac{v^2 + 2v - 8}{v^4 - 16}$

37. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{1 - \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x}$

38. $\lim_{x\to 1} \left(\dfrac{1}{x-1} + \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 3x + 2}\right)$

39. If $2x - 1 \leqslant f(x) \leqslant x^2$ for $0 < x < 3$, find $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$.

40. Prove that $\lim_{x\to 0} x^2 \cos(1/x^2) = 0$.

41–44 Prove the statement using the precise definition of a limit.

41. $\lim_{x\to 2} (14 - 5x) = 4$

42. $\lim_{x\to 0} \sqrt[3]{x} = 0$

43. $\lim_{x\to 2} (x^2 - 3x) = -2$

44. $\lim_{x\to 4^+} \dfrac{2}{\sqrt{x - 4}} = \infty$

45. Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{-x} & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 3 - x & \text{if } 0 \leqslant x < 3 \\ (x-3)^2 & \text{if } x > 3 \end{cases}$$

(a) Evaluate each limit, if it exists.
(i) $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$ (ii) $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x)$ (iii) $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$
(iv) $\lim_{x\to 3^-} f(x)$ (v) $\lim_{x\to 3^+} f(x)$ (vi) $\lim_{x\to 3} f(x)$
(b) Where is f discontinuous?
(c) Sketch the graph of f.

46. Let

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - x^2 & \text{if } 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2 \\ 2 - x & \text{if } 2 < x \leqslant 3 \\ x - 4 & \text{if } 3 < x < 4 \\ \pi & \text{if } x \geqslant 4 \end{cases}$$

(a) For each of the numbers 2, 3, and 4, discover whether g is continuous from the left, continuous from the right, or continuous at the number.
(b) Sketch the graph of g.

47–48 Show that the function is continuous on its domain. State the domain.

47. $h(x) = \sqrt[4]{x} + x^3 \cos x$

48. $g(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2 - 9}}{x^2 - 2}$

49–50 Use the Intermediate Value Theorem to show that there is a root of the equation in the given interval.

49. $x^5 - x^3 + 3x - 5 = 0$, $(1, 2)$

50. $2 \sin x = 3 - 2x$, $(0, 1)$

51. Suppose that $|f(x)| \leqslant g(x)$ for all x, where $\lim_{x\to a} g(x) = 0$. Find $\lim_{x\to a} f(x)$.

52. Let $f(x) = [\![x]\!] + [\![-x]\!]$.
(a) For what values of a does $\lim_{x\to a} f(x)$ exist?
(b) At what numbers is f discontinuous?

Principles of Problem Solving

There are no hard and fast rules that will ensure success in solving problems. However, it is possible to outline some general steps in the problem-solving process and to give some principles that may be useful in the solution of certain problems. These steps and principles are just common sense made explicit. They have been adapted from George Polya's book *How To Solve It*.

1 UNDERSTAND THE PROBLEM

The first step is to read the problem and make sure that you understand it clearly. Ask yourself the following questions:

What is the unknown?

What are the given quantities?

What are the given conditions?

For many problems it is useful to

draw a diagram

and identify the given and required quantities on the diagram.

Usually it is necessary to

introduce suitable notation

In choosing symbols for the unknown quantities we often use letters such as a, b, c, m, n, x, and y, but in some cases it helps to use initials as suggestive symbols; for instance, V for volume or t for time.

2 THINK OF A PLAN

Find a connection between the given information and the unknown that will enable you to calculate the unknown. It often helps to ask yourself explicitly: "How can I relate the given to the unknown?" If you don't see a connection immediately, the following ideas may be helpful in devising a plan.

Try to Recognize Something Familiar Relate the given situation to previous knowledge. Look at the unknown and try to recall a more familiar problem that has a similar unknown.

Try to Recognize Patterns Some problems are solved by recognizing that some kind of pattern is occurring. The pattern could be geometric, or numerical, or algebraic. If you can see regularity or repetition in a problem, you might be able to guess what the continuing pattern is and then prove it.

Use Analogy Try to think of an analogous problem, that is, a similar problem, a related problem, but one that is easier than the original problem. If you can solve the similar, simpler problem, then it might give you the clues you need to solve the original, more difficult problem. For instance, if a problem involves very large numbers, you could first try a similar problem with smaller numbers. Or if the problem involves three-dimensional geometry, you could look for a similar problem in two-dimensional geometry. Or if the problem you start with is a general one, you could first try a special case.

Introduce Something Extra It may sometimes be necessary to introduce something new, an auxiliary aid, to help make the connection between the given and the unknown. For instance, in a problem where a diagram is useful the auxiliary aid could be a new line drawn in a diagram. In a more algebraic problem it could be a new unknown that is related to the original unknown.

Take Cases We may sometimes have to split a problem into several cases and give a different argument for each of the cases. For instance, we often have to use this strategy in dealing with absolute value.

Work Backward Sometimes it is useful to imagine that your problem is solved and work backward, step by step, until you arrive at the given data. Then you may be able to reverse your steps and thereby construct a solution to the original problem. This procedure is commonly used in solving equations. For instance, in solving the equation $3x - 5 = 7$, we suppose that x is a number that satisfies $3x - 5 = 7$ and work backward. We add 5 to each side of the equation and then divide each side by 3 to get $x = 4$. Since each of these steps can be reversed, we have solved the problem.

Establish Subgoals In a complex problem it is often useful to set subgoals (in which the desired situation is only partially fulfilled). If we can first reach these subgoals, then we may be able to build on them to reach our final goal.

Indirect Reasoning Sometimes it is appropriate to attack a problem indirectly. In using proof by contradiction to prove that P implies Q, we assume that P is true and Q is false and try to see why this can't happen. Somehow we have to use this information and arrive at a contradiction to what we absolutely know is true.

Mathematical Induction In proving statements that involve a positive integer n, it is frequently helpful to use the following principle.

Principle of Mathematical Induction Let S_n be a statement about the positive integer n. Suppose that

1. S_1 is true.
2. S_{k+1} is true whenever S_k is true.

Then S_n is true for all positive integers n.

This is reasonable because, since S_1 is true, it follows from condition 2 (with $k = 1$) that S_2 is true. Then, using condition 2 with $k = 2$, we see that S_3 is true. Again using condition 2, this time with $k = 3$, we have that S_4 is true. This procedure can be followed indefinitely.

3 CARRY OUT THE PLAN

In Step 2 a plan was devised. In carrying out that plan we have to check each stage of the plan and write the details that prove that each stage is correct.

4 LOOK BACK

Having completed our solution, it is wise to look back over it, partly to see if we have made errors in the solution and partly to see if we can think of an easier way to solve the problem. Another reason for looking back is that it will familiarize us with the method of solution and this may be useful for solving a future problem. Descartes said, "Every problem that I solved became a rule which served afterwards to solve other problems."

These principles of problem solving are illustrated in the following examples. Before you look at the solutions, try to solve these problems yourself, referring to these Principles of Problem Solving if you get stuck. You may find it useful to refer to this section from time to time as you solve the exercises in the remaining chapters of this book.

As the first example illustrates, it is often necessary to use the problem-solving principle of *taking cases* when dealing with absolute values.

EXAMPLE 1 Solve the inequality $|x - 3| + |x + 2| < 11$.

SOLUTION Recall the definition of absolute value:

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

It follows that

$$|x-3| = \begin{cases} x-3 & \text{if } x-3 \geqslant 0 \\ -(x-3) & \text{if } x-3 < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$= \begin{cases} x-3 & \text{if } x \geqslant 3 \\ -x+3 & \text{if } x < 3 \end{cases}$$

Similarly

$$|x+2| = \begin{cases} x+2 & \text{if } x+2 \geqslant 0 \\ -(x+2) & \text{if } x+2 < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$= \begin{cases} x+2 & \text{if } x \geqslant -2 \\ -x-2 & \text{if } x < -2 \end{cases}$$

PS Take cases

These expressions show that we must consider three cases:

$$x < -2 \qquad -2 \leqslant x < 3 \qquad x \geqslant 3$$

CASE I If $x < -2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |x-3| + |x+2| &< 11 \\ -x+3-x-2 &< 11 \\ -2x &< 10 \\ x &> -5 \end{aligned}$$

CASE II If $-2 \leqslant x < 3$, the given inequality becomes

$$\begin{aligned} -x+3+x+2 &< 11 \\ 5 &< 11 \qquad \text{(always true)} \end{aligned}$$

CASE III If $x \geqslant 3$, the inequality becomes

$$\begin{aligned} x-3+x+2 &< 11 \\ 2x &< 12 \\ x &< 6 \end{aligned}$$

Combining cases I, II, and III, we see that the inequality is satisfied when $-5 < x < 6$. So the solution is the interval $(-5, 6)$. ■

In the following example we first guess the answer by looking at special cases and recognizing a pattern. Then we prove our conjecture by mathematical induction.

In using the Principle of Mathematical Induction, we follow three steps:

Step 1 Prove that S_n is true when $n = 1$.

Step 2 Assume that S_n is true when $n = k$ and deduce that S_n is true when $n = k + 1$.

Step 3 Conclude that S_n is true for all n by the Principle of Mathematical Induction.

EXAMPLE 2 If $f_0(x) = x/(x + 1)$ and $f_{n+1} = f_0 \circ f_n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, find a formula for $f_n(x)$.

PS Analogy: Try a similar, simpler problem

SOLUTION We start by finding formulas for $f_n(x)$ for the special cases $n = 1, 2,$ and 3.

$$f_1(x) = (f_0 \circ f_0)(x) = f_0(f_0(x)) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{x+1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{x+1}}{\dfrac{2x+1}{x+1}} = \frac{x}{2x+1}$$

$$f_2(x) = (f_0 \circ f_1)(x) = f_0(f_1(x)) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{2x+1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{2x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{2x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{2x+1}}{\dfrac{3x+1}{2x+1}} = \frac{x}{3x+1}$$

$$f_3(x) = (f_0 \circ f_2)(x) = f_0(f_2(x)) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{3x+1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{3x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{3x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{3x+1}}{\dfrac{4x+1}{3x+1}} = \frac{x}{4x+1}$$

PS Look for a pattern

We notice a pattern: The coefficient of x in the denominator of $f_n(x)$ is $n + 1$ in the three cases we have computed. So we make the guess that, in general,

$$\boxed{1} \qquad f_n(x) = \frac{x}{(n+1)x + 1}$$

To prove this, we use the Principle of Mathematical Induction. We have already verified that (1) is true for $n = 1$. Assume that it is true for $n = k$, that is,

$$f_k(x) = \frac{x}{(k+1)x + 1}$$

Then $$f_{k+1}(x) = (f_0 \circ f_k)(x) = f_0(f_k(x)) = f_0\left(\frac{x}{(k+1)x+1}\right)$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{x}{(k+1)x+1}}{\dfrac{x}{(k+1)x+1} + 1} = \frac{\dfrac{x}{(k+1)x+1}}{\dfrac{(k+2)x+1}{(k+1)x+1}} = \frac{x}{(k+2)x+1}$$

This expression shows that (1) is true for $n = k + 1$. Therefore, by mathematical induction, it is true for all positive integers n. ■

In the following example we show how the problem-solving strategy of *introducing something extra* is sometimes useful when we evaluate limits. The idea is to change the variable—to introduce a new variable that is related to the original variable—in such a way as to make the problem simpler. Later, in Section 4.5, we will make more extensive use of this general idea.

EXAMPLE 3 Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sqrt[3]{1+cx}-1}{x}$, where c is a constant.

SOLUTION As it stands, this limit looks challenging. In Section 1.6 we evaluated several limits in which both numerator and denominator approached 0. There our strategy was to perform some sort of algebraic manipulation that led to a simplifying cancellation, but here it's not clear what kind of algebra is necessary.

So we introduce a new variable t by the equation

$$t=\sqrt[3]{1+cx}$$

We also need to express x in terms of t, so we solve this equation:

$$t^3=1+cx \qquad x=\frac{t^3-1}{c} \quad (\text{if } c\neq 0)$$

Notice that $x\to 0$ is equivalent to $t\to 1$. This allows us to convert the given limit into one involving the variable t:

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sqrt[3]{1+cx}-1}{x}&=\lim_{t\to 1}\frac{t-1}{(t^3-1)/c}\\&=\lim_{t\to 1}\frac{c(t-1)}{t^3-1}\end{aligned}$$

The change of variable allowed us to replace a relatively complicated limit by a simpler one of a type that we have seen before. Factoring the denominator as a difference of cubes, we get

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{t\to 1}\frac{c(t-1)}{t^3-1}&=\lim_{t\to 1}\frac{c(t-1)}{(t-1)(t^2+t+1)}\\&=\lim_{t\to 1}\frac{c}{t^2+t+1}=\frac{c}{3}\end{aligned}$$

In making the change of variable we had to rule out the case $c=0$. But if $c=0$, the function is 0 for all nonzero x and so its limit is 0. Therefore, in all cases, the limit is $c/3$. ■

The following problems are meant to test and challenge your problem-solving skills. Some of them require a considerable amount of time to think through, so don't be discouraged if you can't solve them right away. If you get stuck, you might find it helpful to refer to the discussion of the principles of problem solving.

PROBLEMS

1. Solve the equation $|2x-1|-|x+5|=3$.
2. Solve the inequality $|x-1|-|x-3|\geqslant 5$.
3. Sketch the graph of the function $f(x)=|x^2-4|x|+3|$.

4. Sketch the graph of the function $g(x) = |x^2 - 1| - |x^2 - 4|$.

5. Draw the graph of the equation $x + |x| = y + |y|$.

6. Sketch the region in the plane consisting of all points (x, y) such that

$$|x - y| + |x| - |y| \leqslant 2$$

7. The notation $\max\{a, b, \ldots\}$ means the largest of the numbers $a, b, \ldots$. Sketch the graph of each function.
   (a) $f(x) = \max\{x, 1/x\}$
   (b) $f(x) = \max\{\sin x, \cos x\}$
   (c) $f(x) = \max\{x^2, 2 + x, 2 - x\}$

8. Sketch the region in the plane defined by each of the following equations or inequalities.
   (a) $\max\{x, 2y\} = 1$
   (b) $-1 \leqslant \max\{x, 2y\} \leqslant 1$
   (c) $\max\{x, y^2\} = 1$

9. A driver sets out on a journey. For the first half of the distance she drives at the leisurely pace of 30 mi/h; she drives the second half at 60 mi/h. What is her average speed on this trip?

10. Is it true that $f \circ (g + h) = f \circ g + f \circ h$?

11. Prove that if n is a positive integer, then $7^n - 1$ is divisible by 6.

12. Prove that $1 + 3 + 5 + \cdots + (2n - 1) = n^2$.

13. If $f_0(x) = x^2$ and $f_{n+1}(x) = f_0(f_n(x))$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, find a formula for $f_n(x)$.

14. (a) If $f_0(x) = \dfrac{1}{2 - x}$ and $f_{n+1} = f_0 \circ f_n$ for $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, find an expression for $f_n(x)$ and use mathematical induction to prove it.
    (b) Graph f_0, f_1, f_2, f_3 on the same screen and describe the effects of repeated composition.

15. Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 1} \frac{\sqrt[3]{x} - 1}{\sqrt{x} - 1}$.

16. Find numbers a and b such that $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{ax + b} - 2}{x} = 1$.

17. Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{|2x - 1| - |2x + 1|}{x}$.

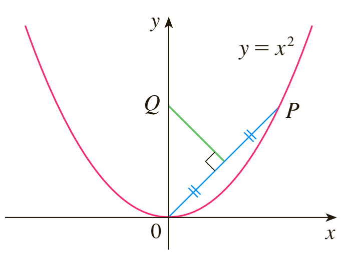


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 18

18. The figure shows a point P on the parabola $y = x^2$ and the point Q where the perpendicular bisector of OP intersects the y-axis. As P approaches the origin along the parabola, what happens to Q? Does it have a limiting position? If so, find it.

19. Evaluate the following limits, if they exist, where $[\![x]\!]$ denotes the greatest integer function.
    (a) $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{[\![x]\!]}{x}$ (b) $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} x[\![1/x]\!]$

20. Sketch the region in the plane defined by each of the following equations.
    (a) $[\![x]\!]^2 + [\![y]\!]^2 = 1$ (b) $[\![x]\!]^2 - [\![y]\!]^2 = 3$
    (c) $[\![x + y]\!]^2 = 1$ (d) $[\![x]\!] + [\![y]\!] = 1$

21. Find all values of a such that f is continuous on $\mathbb{R}$:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{if } x \leqslant a \\ x^2 & \text{if } x > a \end{cases}$$

22. A **fixed point** of a function f is a number c in its domain such that $f(c) = c$. (The function doesn't move c; it stays fixed.)

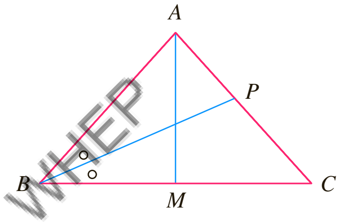
(a) Sketch the graph of a continuous function with domain $[0, 1]$ whose range also lies in $[0, 1]$. Locate a fixed point of f.

(b) Try to draw the graph of a continuous function with domain $[0, 1]$ and range in $[0, 1]$ that does *not* have a fixed point. What is the obstacle?

(c) Use the Intermediate Value Theorem to prove that any continuous function with domain $[0, 1]$ and range in $[0, 1]$ must have a fixed point.

23. If $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = 2$ and $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) - g(x)] = 1$, find $\lim_{x \to a} [f(x)\,g(x)]$.

24. (a) The figure shows an isosceles triangle ABC with $\angle B = \angle C$. The bisector of angle B intersects the side AC at the point P. Suppose that the base BC remains fixed but the altitude $|AM|$ of the triangle approaches 0, so A approaches the midpoint M of BC. What happens to P during this process? Does it have a limiting position? If so, find it.



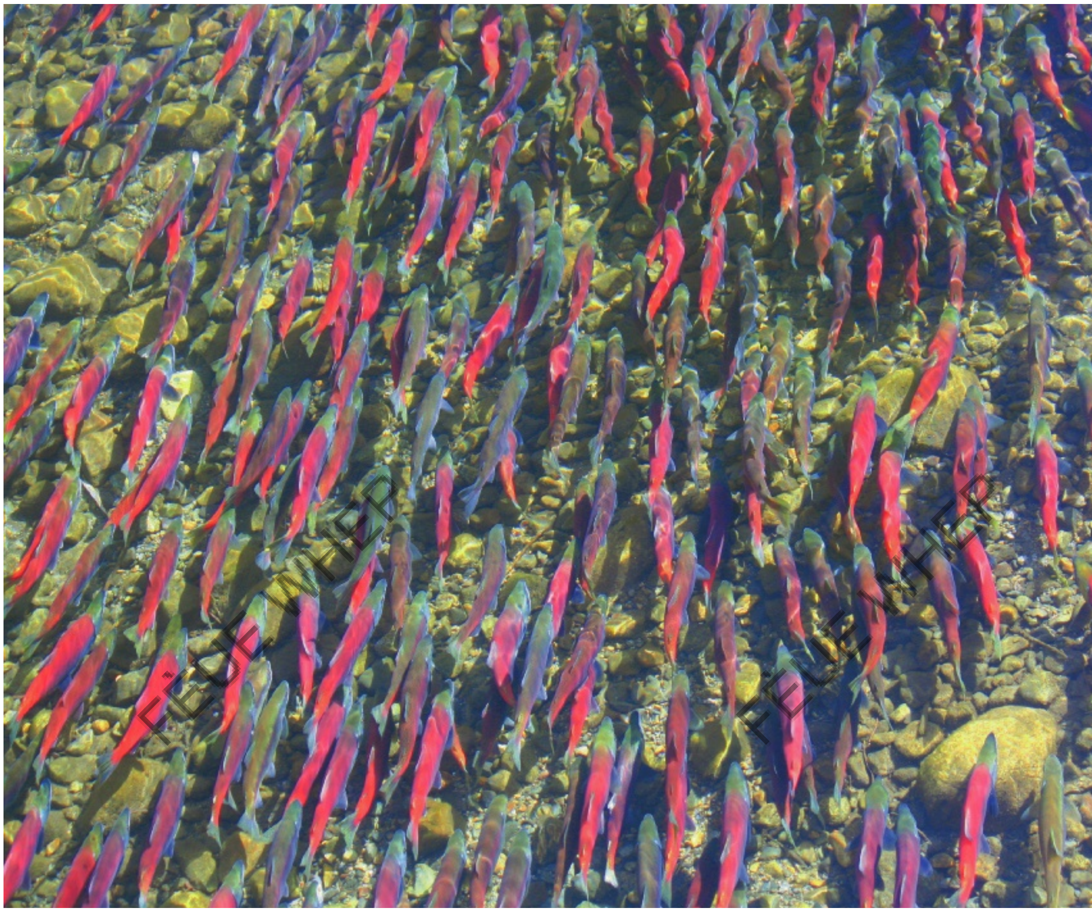
(b) Try to sketch the path traced out by P during this process. Then find an equation of this curve and use this equation to sketch the curve.

25. (a) If we start from 0° latitude and proceed in a westerly direction, we can let $T(x)$ denote the temperature at the point x at any given time. Assuming that T is a continuous function of x, show that at any fixed time there are at least two diametrically opposite points on the equator that have exactly the same temperature.

(b) Does the result in part (a) hold for points lying on any circle on the earth's surface?

(c) Does the result in part (a) hold for barometric pressure and for altitude above sea level?

2 Derivatives



© Jody Ann / Shutterstock.com

The maximum sustainable swimming speed *S* of salmon depends on the water temperature *T*. Exercise 58 in Section 2.1 asks you to analyze how *S* varies as *T* changes by estimating the derivative of *S* with respect to *T*.

IN THIS CHAPTER WE BEGIN our study of differential calculus, which is concerned with how one quantity changes in relation to another quantity. The central concept of differential calculus is the *derivative*, which is an outgrowth of the velocities and slopes of tangents that we considered in Chapter 1. After learning how to calculate derivatives, we use them to solve problems involving rates of change and the approximation of functions.

2.1 Derivatives and Rates of Change

The problem of finding the tangent line to a curve and the problem of finding the velocity of an object both involve finding the same type of limit, as we saw in Section 1.4. This special type of limit is called a *derivative* and we will see that it can be interpreted as a rate of change in any of the natural or social sciences or engineering.

Tangents

If a curve C has equation $y = f(x)$ and we want to find the tangent line to C at the point $P(a, f(a))$, then we consider a nearby point $Q(x, f(x))$, where $x \neq a$, and compute the slope of the secant line PQ:

$$m_{PQ} = \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

Then we let Q approach P along the curve C by letting x approach a. If m_{PQ} approaches a number m, then we define the *tangent* t to be the line through P with slope m. (This amounts to saying that the tangent line is the limiting position of the secant line PQ as Q approaches P. See Figure 1.)

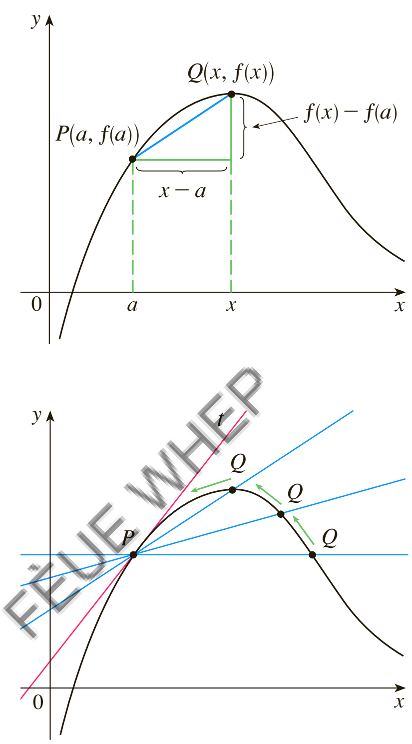


FIGURE 1

1 Definition The **tangent line** to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $P(a, f(a))$ is the line through P with slope

$$m = \lim_{x \to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

provided that this limit exists.

In our first example we confirm the guess we made in Example 1.4.1.

EXAMPLE 1 Find an equation of the tangent line to the parabola $y = x^2$ at the point $P(1, 1)$.

SOLUTION Here we have $a = 1$ and $f(x) = x^2$, so the slope is

$$m = \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{f(x) - f(1)}{x - 1} = \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1}$$

$$= \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{(x - 1)(x + 1)}{x - 1}$$

$$= \lim_{x \to 1} (x + 1) = 1 + 1 = 2$$

Point-slope form for a line through the point (x_1, y_1) with slope m:

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$$

Using the point-slope form of the equation of a line, we find that an equation of the tangent line at $(1, 1)$ is

$$y - 1 = 2(x - 1) \quad \text{or} \quad y = 2x - 1$$ ■

We sometimes refer to the slope of the tangent line to a curve at a point as the **slope of the curve** at the point. The idea is that if we zoom in far enough toward the point, the curve looks almost like a straight line. Figure 2 illustrates this procedure for the curve $y = x^2$ in Example 1. The more we zoom in, the more the parabola looks like a line. In other words, the curve becomes almost indistinguishable from its tangent line.

TEC Visual 2.1 shows an animation of Figure 2.

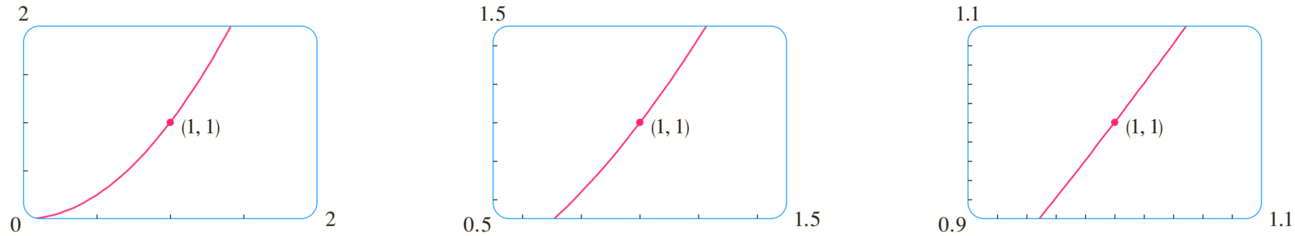


FIGURE 2 Zooming in toward the point (1, 1) on the parabola $y = x^2$

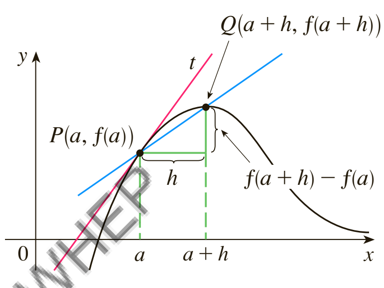


FIGURE 3

There is another expression for the slope of a tangent line that is sometimes easier to use. If $h = x - a$, then $x = a + h$ and so the slope of the secant line PQ is

$$m_{PQ} = \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

(See Figure 3 where the case $h > 0$ is illustrated and Q is to the right of P. If it happened that $h < 0$, however, Q would be to the left of P.)

Notice that as x approaches a, h approaches 0 (because $h = x - a$) and so the expression for the slope of the tangent line in Definition 1 becomes

2
$$\boxed{m = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}}$$

EXAMPLE 2 Find an equation of the tangent line to the hyperbola $y = 3/x$ at the point (3, 1).

SOLUTION Let $f(x) = 3/x$. Then, by Equation 2, the slope of the tangent at (3, 1) is

$$\begin{aligned} m &= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(3+h) - f(3)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\dfrac{3}{3+h} - 1}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\dfrac{3 - (3+h)}{3+h}}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{-h}{h(3+h)} = \lim_{h \to 0} -\frac{1}{3+h} = -\frac{1}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore an equation of the tangent at the point (3, 1) is

$$y - 1 = -\tfrac{1}{3}(x - 3)$$

which simplifies to $$x + 3y - 6 = 0$$

The hyperbola and its tangent are shown in Figure 4. ■

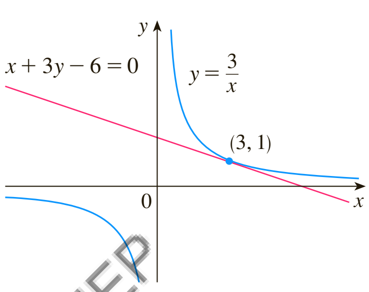


FIGURE 4

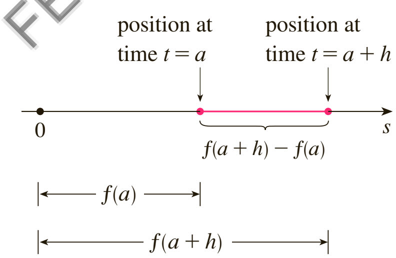
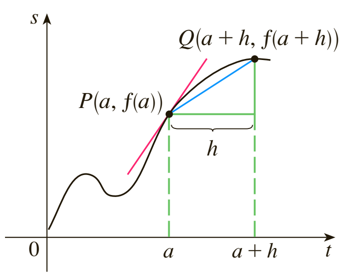


FIGURE 5



$$m_{PQ} = \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$
$$= \text{average velocity}$$

FIGURE 6

Velocities

In Section 1.4 we investigated the motion of a ball dropped from the CN Tower and defined its velocity to be the limiting value of average velocities over shorter and shorter time periods.

In general, suppose an object moves along a straight line according to an equation of motion $s = f(t)$, where s is the displacement (directed distance) of the object from the origin at time t. The function f that describes the motion is called the **position function** of the object. In the time interval from $t = a$ to $t = a + h$ the change in position is $f(a + h) - f(a)$. (See Figure 5.)

The average velocity over this time interval is

$$\text{average velocity} = \frac{\text{displacement}}{\text{time}} = \frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{h}$$

which is the same as the slope of the secant line PQ in Figure 6.

Now suppose we compute the average velocities over shorter and shorter time intervals $[a, a + h]$. In other words, we let h approach 0. As in the example of the falling ball, we define the **velocity** (or **instantaneous velocity**) $v(a)$ at time $t = a$ to be the limit of these average velocities:

3
$$\boxed{v(a) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{h}}$$

This means that the velocity at time $t = a$ is equal to the slope of the tangent line at P (compare Equations 2 and 3).

Now that we know how to compute limits, let's reconsider the problem of the falling ball.

EXAMPLE 3 Suppose that a ball is dropped from the upper observation deck of the CN Tower, 450 m above the ground.

(a) What is the velocity of the ball after 5 seconds?

(b) How fast is the ball traveling when it hits the ground?

Recall from Section 1.4: The distance (in meters) fallen after t seconds is $4.9t^2$.

SOLUTION We will need to find the velocity both when $t = 5$ and when the ball hits the ground, so it's efficient to start by finding the velocity at a general time t. Using the equation of motion $s = f(t) = 4.9t^2$, we have

$$v(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(t + h) - f(t)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{4.9(t + h)^2 - 4.9t^2}{h}$$
$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{4.9(t^2 + 2th + h^2 - t^2)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{4.9(2th + h^2)}{h}$$
$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{4.9h(2t + h)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} 4.9(2t + h) = 9.8t$$

(a) The velocity after 5 seconds is $v(5) = (9.8)(5) = 49$ m/s.

(b) Since the observation deck is 450 m above the ground, the ball will hit the ground at the time t when $s(t) = 450$, that is,

$$4.9t^2 = 450$$

This gives

$$t^2 = \frac{450}{4.9} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \sqrt{\frac{450}{4.9}} \approx 9.6 \text{ s}$$

The velocity of the ball as it hits the ground is therefore

$$v\left(\sqrt{\frac{450}{4.9}}\right) = 9.8\sqrt{\frac{450}{4.9}} \approx 94 \text{ m/s}$$

Derivatives

We have seen that the same type of limit arises in finding the slope of a tangent line (Equation 2) or the velocity of an object (Equation 3). In fact, limits of the form

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

arise whenever we calculate a rate of change in any of the sciences or engineering, such as a rate of reaction in chemistry or a marginal cost in economics. Since this type of limit occurs so widely, it is given a special name and notation.

4 Definition The **derivative of a function f at a number a**, denoted by $f'(a)$, is

$$f'(a) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

if this limit exists.

$f'(a)$ is read "f prime of a."

If we write $x = a + h$, then we have $h = x - a$ and h approaches 0 if and only if x approaches a. Therefore an equivalent way of stating the definition of the derivative, as we saw in finding tangent lines, is

5
$$f'(a) = \lim_{x \to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

EXAMPLE 4 Find the derivative of the function $f(x) = x^2 - 8x + 9$ at the number a.

SOLUTION From Definition 4 we have

$$f'(a) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{[(a+h)^2 - 8(a+h) + 9] - [a^2 - 8a + 9]}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{a^2 + 2ah + h^2 - 8a - 8h + 9 - a^2 + 8a - 9}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{2ah + h^2 - 8h}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} (2a + h - 8)$$

$$= 2a - 8$$

Definitions 4 and 5 are equivalent, so we can use either one to compute the derivative. In practice, Definition 4 often leads to simpler computations.

We defined the tangent line to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $P(a, f(a))$ to be the line that passes through P and has slope m given by Equation 1 or 2. Since, by Definition 4, this is the same as the derivative $f'(a)$, we can now say the following.

> The tangent line to $y = f(x)$ at $(a, f(a))$ is the line through $(a, f(a))$ whose slope is equal to $f'(a)$, the derivative of f at a.

If we use the point-slope form of the equation of a line, we can write an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $(a, f(a))$:

$$y - f(a) = f'(a)(x - a)$$

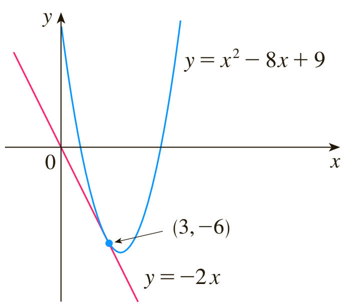


FIGURE 7

EXAMPLE 5 Find an equation of the tangent line to the parabola $y = x^2 - 8x + 9$ at the point $(3, -6)$.

SOLUTION From Example 4 we know that the derivative of $f(x) = x^2 - 8x + 9$ at the number a is $f'(a) = 2a - 8$. Therefore the slope of the tangent line at $(3, -6)$ is $f'(3) = 2(3) - 8 = -2$. Thus an equation of the tangent line, shown in Figure 7, is

$$y - (-6) = (-2)(x - 3) \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = -2x$$ ■

Rates of Change

Suppose y is a quantity that depends on another quantity x. Thus y is a function of x and we write $y = f(x)$. If x changes from x_1 to x_2, then the change in x (also called the **increment** of x) is

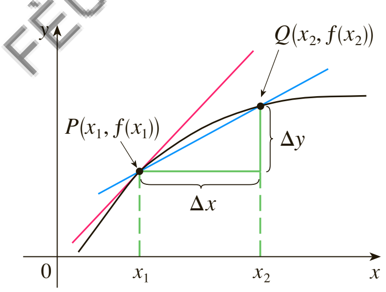
$$\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$$

and the corresponding change in y is

$$\Delta y = f(x_2) - f(x_1)$$

The difference quotient

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1}$$



average rate of change $= m_{PQ}$

instantaneous rate of change = slope of tangent at P

FIGURE 8

is called the **average rate of change of y with respect to x** over the interval $[x_1, x_2]$ and can be interpreted as the slope of the secant line PQ in Figure 8.

By analogy with velocity, we consider the average rate of change over smaller and smaller intervals by letting x_2 approach x_1 and therefore letting Δx approach 0. The limit of these average rates of change is called the **(instantaneous) rate of change of y with respect to x** at $x = x_1$, which (as in the case of velocity) is interpreted as the slope of the tangent to the curve $y = f(x)$ at $P(x_1, f(x_1))$:

6 $$\text{instantaneous rate of change} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \lim_{x_2 \to x_1} \frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1}$$

We recognize this limit as being the derivative $f'(x_1)$.

We know that one interpretation of the derivative $f'(a)$ is as the slope of the tangent line to the curve $y = f(x)$ when $x = a$. We now have a second interpretation:

> The derivative $f'(a)$ is the instantaneous rate of change of $y = f(x)$ with respect to x when $x = a$.

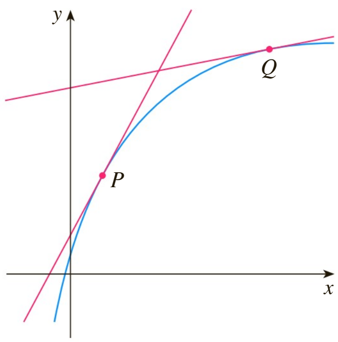


FIGURE 9
The y-values are changing rapidly at P and slowly at Q.

The connection with the first interpretation is that if we sketch the curve $y = f(x)$, then the instantaneous rate of change is the slope of the tangent to this curve at the point where $x = a$. This means that when the derivative is large (and therefore the curve is steep, as at the point P in Figure 9), the y-values change rapidly. When the derivative is small, the curve is relatively flat (as at point Q) and the y-values change slowly.

In particular, if $s = f(t)$ is the position function of a particle that moves along a straight line, then $f'(a)$ is the rate of change of the displacement s with respect to the time t. In other words, *$f'(a)$ is the velocity of the particle at time $t = a$*. The **speed** of the particle is the absolute value of the velocity, that is, $|f'(a)|$.

In the next example we discuss the meaning of the derivative of a function that is defined verbally.

EXAMPLE 6 A manufacturer produces bolts of a fabric with a fixed width. The cost of producing x yards of this fabric is $C = f(x)$ dollars.
(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $f'(x)$? What are its units?
(b) In practical terms, what does it mean to say that $f'(1000) = 9$?
(c) Which do you think is greater, $f'(50)$ or $f'(500)$? What about $f'(5000)$?

SOLUTION
(a) The derivative $f'(x)$ is the instantaneous rate of change of C with respect to x; that is, $f'(x)$ means the rate of change of the production cost with respect to the number of yards produced. (Economists call this rate of change the *marginal cost*. This idea is discussed in more detail in Sections 2.7 and 3.7.)

Because

$$f'(x) = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x}$$

the units for $f'(x)$ are the same as the units for the difference quotient $\Delta C/\Delta x$. Since ΔC is measured in dollars and Δx in yards, it follows that the units for $f'(x)$ are dollars per yard.

(b) The statement that $f'(1000) = 9$ means that, after 1000 yards of fabric have been manufactured, the rate at which the production cost is increasing is \$9/yard. (When $x = 1000$, C is increasing 9 times as fast as x.)

Since $\Delta x = 1$ is small compared with $x = 1000$, we could use the approximation

Here we are assuming that the cost function is well behaved; in other words, $C(x)$ doesn't oscillate rapidly near $x = 1000$.

$$f'(1000) \approx \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} = \frac{\Delta C}{1} = \Delta C$$

and say that the cost of manufacturing the 1000th yard (or the 1001st) is about \$9.

(c) The rate at which the production cost is increasing (per yard) is probably lower when $x = 500$ than when $x = 50$ (the cost of making the 500th yard is less than the cost of the 50th yard) because of economies of scale. (The manufacturer makes more efficient use of the fixed costs of production.) So

$$f'(50) > f'(500)$$

But, as production expands, the resulting large-scale operation might become inefficient and there might be overtime costs. Thus it is possible that the rate of increase of costs will eventually start to rise. So it may happen that

$$f'(5000) > f'(500)$$ ■

In the following example we estimate the rate of change of the national debt with respect to time. Here the function is defined not by a formula but by a table of values.

t	$D(t)$
1985	1945.9
1990	3364.8
1995	4988.7
2000	5662.2
2005	8170.4
2010	14,025.2

Source: US Dept. of the Treasury

EXAMPLE 7 Let $D(t)$ be the US national debt at time t. The table in the margin gives approximate values of this function by providing end of year estimates, in billions of dollars, from 1985 to 2010. Interpret and estimate the value of $D'(2000)$.

SOLUTION The derivative $D'(2000)$ means the rate of change of D with respect to t when $t = 2000$, that is, the rate of increase of the national debt in 2000.

According to Equation 5,

$$D'(2000) = \lim_{t \to 2000} \frac{D(t) - D(2000)}{t - 2000}$$

So we compute and tabulate values of the difference quotient (the average rates of change) as follows.

t	Time interval	Average rate of change $= \dfrac{D(t) - D(2000)}{t - 2000}$
1985	[1985, 2000]	247.75
1990	[1990, 2000]	229.74
1995	[1995, 2000]	134.70
2005	[2000, 2005]	501.64
2010	[2000, 2010]	836.30

From this table we see that $D'(2000)$ lies somewhere between 134.70 and 501.64 billion dollars per year. [Here we are making the reasonable assumption that the debt didn't fluctuate wildly between 1995 and 2005.] We estimate that the rate of increase of the national debt of the United States in 2000 was the average of these two numbers, namely,

$$D'(2000) \approx 318 \text{ billion dollars per year}$$

Another method would be to plot the debt function and estimate the slope of the tangent line when $t = 2000$. ■

A Note on Units

The units for the average rate of change $\Delta D/\Delta t$ are the units for ΔD divided by the units for Δt, namely, billions of dollars per year. The instantaneous rate of change is the limit of the average rates of change, so it is measured in the same units: billions of dollars per year.

In Examples 3, 6, and 7 we saw three specific examples of rates of change: the velocity of an object is the rate of change of displacement with respect to time; marginal cost is the rate of change of production cost with respect to the number of items produced; the rate of change of the debt with respect to time is of interest in economics. Here is a small sample of other rates of change: In physics, the rate of change of work with respect to time is called *power*. Chemists who study a chemical reaction are interested in the rate of change in the concentration of a reactant with respect to time (called the *rate of reaction*).

A biologist is interested in the rate of change of the population of a colony of bacteria with respect to time. In fact, the computation of rates of change is important in all of the natural sciences, in engineering, and even in the social sciences. Further examples will be given in Section 2.7.

All these rates of change are derivatives and can therefore be interpreted as slopes of tangents. This gives added significance to the solution of the tangent problem. Whenever we solve a problem involving tangent lines, we are not just solving a problem in geometry. We are also implicitly solving a great variety of problems involving rates of change in science and engineering.

2.1 EXERCISES

1. A curve has equation $y = f(x)$.
(a) Write an expression for the slope of the secant line through the points $P(3, f(3))$ and $Q(x, f(x))$.
(b) Write an expression for the slope of the tangent line at P.

2. Graph the curve $y = \sin x$ in the viewing rectangles $[-2, 2]$ by $[-2, 2]$, $[-1, 1]$ by $[-1, 1]$, and $[-0.5, 0.5]$ by $[-0.5, 0.5]$. What do you notice about the curve as you zoom in toward the origin?

3. (a) Find the slope of the tangent line to the parabola $y = 4x - x^2$ at the point $(1, 3)$
(i) using Definition 1 (ii) using Equation 2
(b) Find an equation of the tangent line in part (a).
(c) Graph the parabola and the tangent line. As a check on your work, zoom in toward the point $(1, 3)$ until the parabola and the tangent line are indistinguishable.

4. (a) Find the slope of the tangent line to the curve $y = x - x^3$ at the point $(1, 0)$
(i) using Definition 1 (ii) using Equation 2
(b) Find an equation of the tangent line in part (a).
(c) Graph the curve and the tangent line in successively smaller viewing rectangles centered at $(1, 0)$ until the curve and the line appear to coincide.

5–8 Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve at the given point.

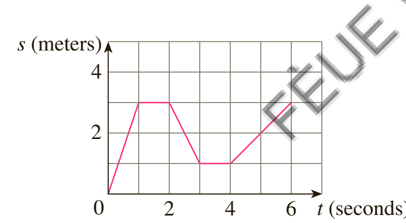
5. $y = 4x - 3x^2$, $(2, -4)$ **6.** $y = x^3 - 3x + 1$, $(2, 3)$

7. $y = \sqrt{x}$, $(1, 1)$ **8.** $y = \dfrac{2x + 1}{x + 2}$, $(1, 1)$

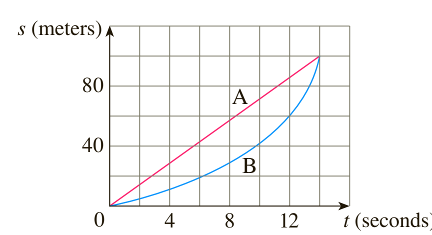
9. (a) Find the slope of the tangent to the curve $y = 3 + 4x^2 - 2x^3$ at the point where $x = a$.
(b) Find equations of the tangent lines at the points $(1, 5)$ and $(2, 3)$.
(c) Graph the curve and both tangents on a common screen.

10. (a) Find the slope of the tangent to the curve $y = 1/\sqrt{x}$ at the point where $x = a$.
(b) Find equations of the tangent lines at the points $(1, 1)$ and $\left(4, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.
(c) Graph the curve and both tangents on a common screen.

11. (a) A particle starts by moving to the right along a horizontal line; the graph of its position function is shown in the figure. When is the particle moving to the right? Moving to the left? Standing still?
(b) Draw a graph of the velocity function.



12. Shown are graphs of the position functions of two runners, A and B, who run a 100-meter race and finish in a tie.



(a) Describe and compare how the runners run the race.
(b) At what time is the distance between the runners the greatest?
(c) At what time do they have the same velocity?

13. If a ball is thrown into the air with a velocity of 40 ft/s, its height (in feet) after t seconds is given by $y = 40t - 16t^2$. Find the velocity when $t = 2$.

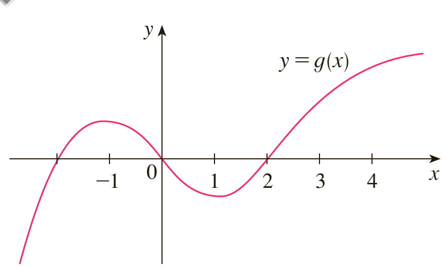
14. If a rock is thrown upward on the planet Mars with a velocity of 10 m/s, its height (in meters) after t seconds is given by $H = 10t - 1.86t^2$.
(a) Find the velocity of the rock after one second.
(b) Find the velocity of the rock when $t = a$.
(c) When will the rock hit the surface?
(d) With what velocity will the rock hit the surface?

15. The displacement (in meters) of a particle moving in a straight line is given by the equation of motion $s = 1/t^2$, where t is measured in seconds. Find the velocity of the particle at times $t = a$, $t = 1$, $t = 2$, and $t = 3$.

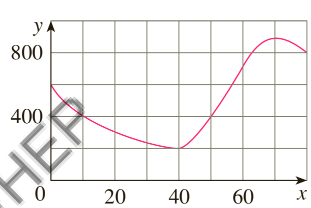
16. The displacement (in feet) of a particle moving in a straight line is given by $s = \frac{1}{2}t^2 - 6t + 23$, where t is measured in seconds.
(a) Find the average velocity over each time interval:
(i) $[4, 8]$ (ii) $[6, 8]$
(iii) $[8, 10]$ (iv) $[8, 12]$
(b) Find the instantaneous velocity when $t = 8$.
(c) Draw the graph of s as a function of t and draw the secant lines whose slopes are the average velocities in part (a). Then draw the tangent line whose slope is the instantaneous velocity in part (b).

17. For the function g whose graph is given, arrange the following numbers in increasing order and explain your reasoning:

$$0 \qquad g'(-2) \qquad g'(0) \qquad g'(2) \qquad g'(4)$$



18. The graph of a function f is shown.
(a) Find the average rate of change of f on the interval $[20, 60]$.
(b) Identify an interval on which the average rate of change of f is 0.
(c) Which interval gives a larger average rate of change, $[40, 60]$ or $[40, 70]$?
(d) Compute $\dfrac{f(40) - f(10)}{40 - 10}$. What does this value represent geometrically?



19. For the function f graphed in Exercise 18:
(a) Estimate the value of $f'(50)$.
(b) Is $f'(10) > f'(30)$?
(c) Is $f'(60) > \dfrac{f(80) - f(40)}{80 - 40}$? Explain.

20. Find an equation of the tangent line to the graph of $y = g(x)$ at $x = 5$ if $g(5) = -3$ and $g'(5) = 4$.

21. If an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point where $a = 2$ is $y = 4x - 5$, find $f(2)$ and $f'(2)$.

22. If the tangent line to $y = f(x)$ at $(4, 3)$ passes through the point $(0, 2)$, find $f(4)$ and $f'(4)$.

23. Sketch the graph of a function f for which $f(0) = 0$, $f'(0) = 3$, $f'(1) = 0$, and $f'(2) = -1$.

24. Sketch the graph of a function g for which $g(0) = g(2) = g(4) = 0$, $g'(1) = g'(3) = 0$, $g'(0) = g'(4) = 1$, $g'(2) = -1$, $\lim_{x \to 5^-} g(x) = \infty$, and $\lim_{x \to -1^+} g(x) = -\infty$.

25. Sketch the graph of a function g that is continuous on its domain $(-5, 5)$ and where $g(0) = 1$, $g'(0) = 1$, $g'(-2) = 0$, $\lim_{x \to -5^+} g(x) = \infty$, and $\lim_{x \to 5^-} g(x) = 3$.

26. Sketch the graph of a function f where the domain is $(-2, 2)$, $f'(0) = -2$, $\lim_{x \to 2^-} f(x) = \infty$, f is continuous at all numbers in its domain except ± 1, and f is odd.

27. If $f(x) = 3x^2 - x^3$, find $f'(1)$ and use it to find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = 3x^2 - x^3$ at the point $(1, 2)$.

28. If $g(x) = x^4 - 2$, find $g'(1)$ and use it to find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = x^4 - 2$ at the point $(1, -1)$.

29. (a) If $F(x) = 5x/(1 + x^2)$, find $F'(2)$ and use it to find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = 5x/(1 + x^2)$ at the point $(2, 2)$.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on the same screen.

30. (a) If $G(x) = 4x^2 - x^3$, find $G'(a)$ and use it to find equations of the tangent lines to the curve $y = 4x^2 - x^3$ at the points $(2, 8)$ and $(3, 9)$.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent lines on the same screen.

31–36 Find $f'(a)$.

31. $f(x) = 3x^2 - 4x + 1$

32. $f(t) = 2t^3 + t$

33. $f(t) = \dfrac{2t + 1}{t + 3}$

34. $f(x) = x^{-2}$

35. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - 2x}$

36. $f(x) = \dfrac{4}{\sqrt{1 - x}}$

37–42 Each limit represents the derivative of some function f at some number a. State such an f and a in each case.

37. $\displaystyle\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{9 + h} - 3}{h}$

38. $\displaystyle\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{2^{3+h} - 8}{h}$

39. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2}\frac{x^6-64}{x-2}$

40. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1/4}\frac{\dfrac{1}{x}-4}{x-\frac{1}{4}}$

41. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\cos(\pi+h)+1}{h}$

42. $\displaystyle\lim_{\theta\to\pi/6}\frac{\sin\theta-\frac{1}{2}}{\theta-\pi/6}$

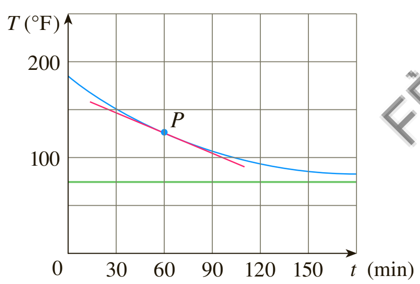
43–44 A particle moves along a straight line with equation of motion $s=f(t)$, where s is measured in meters and t in seconds. Find the velocity and the speed when $t=4$.

43. $f(t)=80t-6t^2$

44. $f(t)=10+\dfrac{45}{t+1}$

45. A warm can of soda is placed in a cold refrigerator. Sketch the graph of the temperature of the soda as a function of time. Is the initial rate of change of temperature greater or less than the rate of change after an hour?

46. A roast turkey is taken from an oven when its temperature has reached 185°F and is placed on a table in a room where the temperature is 75°F. The graph shows how the temperature of the turkey decreases and eventually approaches room temperature. By measuring the slope of the tangent, estimate the rate of change of the temperature after an hour.



47. Researchers measured the average blood alcohol concentration $C(t)$ of eight men starting one hour after consumption of 30 mL of ethanol (corresponding to two alcoholic drinks).

t (hours)	1.0	1.5	2.0	2.5	3.0
$C(t)$ (g/dL)	0.033	0.024	0.018	0.012	0.007

(a) Find the average rate of change of C with respect to t over each time interval:
  (i) [1.0, 2.0] (ii) [1.5, 2.0]
  (iii) [2.0, 2.5] (iv) [2.0, 3.0]
  In each case, include the units.

(b) Estimate the instantaneous rate of change at $t=2$ and interpret your result. What are the units?

Source: Adapted from P. Wilkinson et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Ethanol after Oral Administration in the Fasting State," *Journal of Pharmacokinetics and Biopharmaceutics* 5 (1977): 207–24.

48. The number N of locations of a popular coffeehouse chain is given in the table. (The numbers of locations as of October 1 are given.)

Year	2004	2006	2008	2010	2012
N	8569	12,440	16,680	16,858	18,066

(a) Find the average rate of growth
  (i) from 2006 to 2008
  (ii) from 2008 to 2010
  In each case, include the units. What can you conclude?

(b) Estimate the instantaneous rate of growth in 2010 by taking the average of two average rates of change. What are its units?

(c) Estimate the instantaneous rate of growth in 2010 by measuring the slope of a tangent.

49. The table shows world average daily oil consumption from 1985 to 2010 measured in thousands of barrels per day.

(a) Compute and interpret the average rate of change from 1990 to 2005. What are the units?

(b) Estimate the instantaneous rate of change in 2000 by taking the average of two average rates of change. What are its units?

Years since 1985	Thousands of barrels of oil per day
0	60,083
5	66,533
10	70,099
15	76,784
20	84,077
25	87,302

Source: US Energy Information Administration

50. The table shows values of the viral load $V(t)$ in HIV patient 303, measured in RNA copies/mL, t days after ABT-538 treatment was begun.

t	4	8	11	15	22
$V(t)$	53	18	9.4	5.2	3.6

(a) Find the average rate of change of V with respect to t over each time interval:
  (i) [4, 11] (ii) [8, 11]
  (iii) [11, 15] (iv) [11, 22]
  What are the units?

(b) Estimate and interpret the value of the derivative $V'(11)$.

Source: Adapted from D. Ho et al., "Rapid Turnover of Plasma Virions and CD4 Lymphocytes in HIV-1 Infection," *Nature* 373 (1995): 123–26.

51. The cost (in dollars) of producing x units of a certain commodity is $C(x) = 5000 + 10x + 0.05x^2$.

(a) Find the average rate of change of C with respect to x when the production level is changed

(i) from $x = 100$ to $x = 105$

(ii) from $x = 100$ to $x = 101$

(b) Find the instantaneous rate of change of C with respect to x when $x = 100$. (This is called the *marginal cost*. Its significance will be explained in Section 2.7.)

52. If a cylindrical tank holds 100,000 gallons of water, which can be drained from the bottom of the tank in an hour, then Torricelli's Law gives the volume V of water remaining in the tank after t minutes as

$$V(t) = 100{,}000\left(1 - \tfrac{1}{60}t\right)^2 \qquad 0 \leqslant t \leqslant 60$$

Find the rate at which the water is flowing out of the tank (the instantaneous rate of change of V with respect to t) as a function of t. What are its units? For times $t = 0$, 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, and 60 min, find the flow rate and the amount of water remaining in the tank. Summarize your findings in a sentence or two. At what time is the flow rate the greatest? The least?

53. The cost of producing x ounces of gold from a new gold mine is $C = f(x)$ dollars.

(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $f'(x)$? What are its units?

(b) What does the statement $f'(800) = 17$ mean?

(c) Do you think the values of $f'(x)$ will increase or decrease in the short term? What about the long term? Explain.

54. The number of bacteria after t hours in a controlled laboratory experiment is $n = f(t)$.

(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $f'(5)$? What are its units?

(b) Suppose there is an unlimited amount of space and nutrients for the bacteria. Which do you think is larger, $f'(5)$ or $f'(10)$? If the supply of nutrients is limited, would that affect your conclusion? Explain.

55. Let $H(t)$ be the daily cost (in dollars) to heat an office building when the outside temperature is t degrees Fahrenheit.

(a) What is the meaning of $H'(58)$? What are its units?

(b) Would you expect $H'(58)$ to be positive or negative? Explain.

56. The quantity (in pounds) of a gourmet ground coffee that is sold by a coffee company at a price of p dollars per pound is $Q = f(p)$.

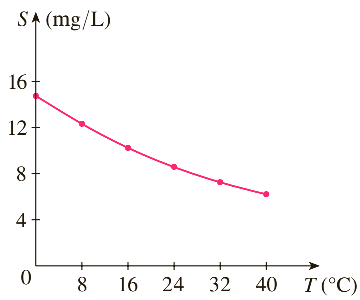
(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $f'(8)$? What are its units?

(b) Is $f'(8)$ positive or negative? Explain.

57. The quantity of oxygen that can dissolve in water depends on the temperature of the water. (So thermal pollution influences the oxygen content of water.) The graph shows how oxygen solubility S varies as a function of the water temperature T.

(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $S'(T)$? What are its units?

(b) Estimate the value of $S'(16)$ and interpret it.

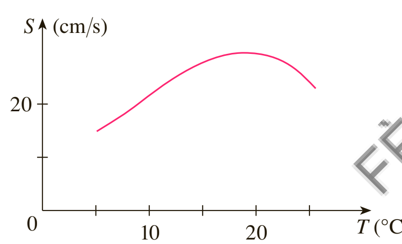


Source: C. Kupchella et al., *Environmental Science: Living Within the System of Nature*, 2d ed. (Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1989).

58. The graph shows the influence of the temperature T on the maximum sustainable swimming speed S of Coho salmon.

(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $S'(T)$? What are its units?

(b) Estimate the values of $S'(15)$ and $S'(25)$ and interpret them.



59–60 Determine whether $f'(0)$ exists.

59. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x \sin \dfrac{1}{x} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$

60. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \sin \dfrac{1}{x} & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$

---

61. (a) Graph the function $f(x) = \sin x - \frac{1}{1000}\sin(1000x)$ in the viewing rectangle $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$ by $[-4, 4]$. What slope does the graph appear to have at the origin?

(b) Zoom in to the viewing window $[-0.4, 0.4]$ by $[-0.25, 0.25]$ and estimate the value of $f'(0)$. Does this agree with your answer from part (a)?

(c) Now zoom in to the viewing window $[-0.008, 0.008]$ by $[-0.005, 0.005]$. Do you wish to revise your estimate for $f'(0)$?

WRITING PROJECT EARLY METHODS FOR FINDING TANGENTS

The first person to formulate explicitly the ideas of limits and derivatives was Sir Isaac Newton in the 1660s. But Newton acknowledged that "If I have seen further than other men, it is because I have stood on the shoulders of giants." Two of those giants were Pierre Fermat (1601–1665) and Newton's mentor at Cambridge, Isaac Barrow (1630–1677). Newton was familiar with the methods that these men used to find tangent lines, and their methods played a role in Newton's eventual formulation of calculus.

The following references contain explanations of these methods. Read one or more of the references and write a report comparing the methods of either Fermat or Barrow to modern methods. In particular, use the method of Section 2.1 to find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = x^3 + 2x$ at the point (1, 3) and show how either Fermat or Barrow would have solved the same problem. Although you used derivatives and they did not, point out similarities between the methods.

1. Carl Boyer and Uta Merzbach, *A History of Mathematics* (New York: Wiley, 1989), pp. 389, 432.

2. C. H. Edwards, *The Historical Development of the Calculus* (New York: Springer-Verlag, 1979), pp. 124, 132.

3. Howard Eves, *An Introduction to the History of Mathematics*, 6th ed. (New York: Saunders, 1990), pp. 391, 395.

4. Morris Kline, *Mathematical Thought from Ancient to Modern Times* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1972), pp. 344, 346.

2.2 The Derivative as a Function

In the preceding section we considered the derivative of a function f at a fixed number a:

1 $$f'(a) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(a + h) - f(a)}{h}$$

Here we change our point of view and let the number a vary. If we replace a in Equation 1 by a variable x, we obtain

2 $$\boxed{f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h}}$$

Given any number x for which this limit exists, we assign to x the number $f'(x)$. So we can regard f' as a new function, called the **derivative of f** and defined by Equation 2. We know that the value of f' at x, $f'(x)$, can be interpreted geometrically as the slope of the tangent line to the graph of f at the point $(x, f(x))$.

The function f' is called the derivative of f because it has been "derived" from f by the limiting operation in Equation 2. The domain of f' is the set $\{x \mid f'(x) \text{ exists}\}$ and may be smaller than the domain of f.

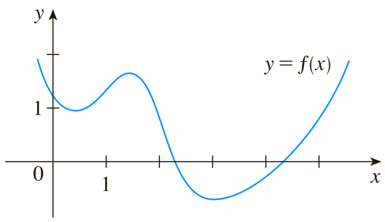


FIGURE 1

EXAMPLE 1 The graph of a function f is given in Figure 1. Use it to sketch the graph of the derivative f'.

SOLUTION We can estimate the value of the derivative at any value of x by drawing the tangent at the point $(x, f(x))$ and estimating its slope. For instance, for $x = 5$ we draw the tangent at P in Figure 2(a) and estimate its slope to be about $\frac{3}{2}$, so $f'(5) \approx 1.5$. This allows us to plot the point $P'(5, 1.5)$ on the graph of f' directly beneath P. (The slope of the graph of f becomes the y-value on the graph of f'.) Repeating this procedure at several points, we get the graph shown in Figure 2(b). Notice that the tangents at A, B, and C are horizontal, so the derivative is 0 there and the graph of f' crosses the x-axis (where $y = 0$) at the points A', B', and C', directly beneath A, B, and C. Between A and B the tangents have positive slope, so $f'(x)$ is positive there. (The graph is above the x-axis.) But between B and C the tangents have negative slope, so $f'(x)$ is negative there.

TEC Visual 2.2 shows an animation of Figure 2 for several functions.

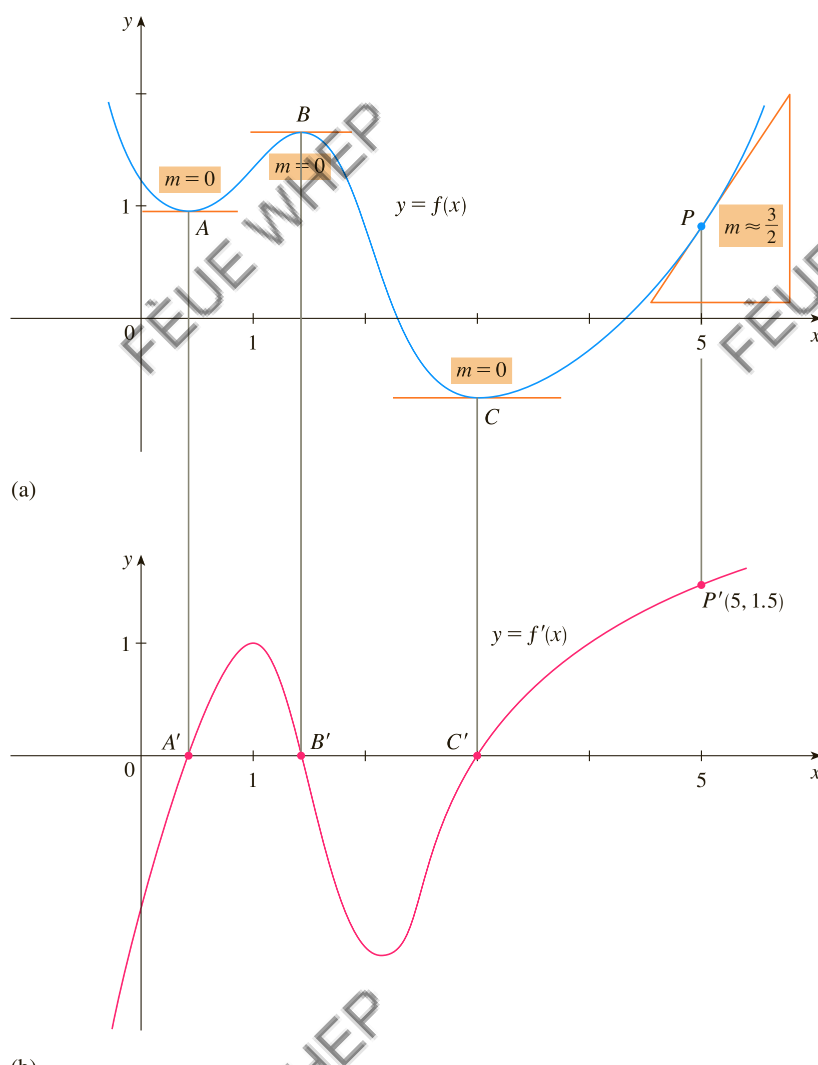


FIGURE 2

EXAMPLE 2
(a) If $f(x) = x^3 - x$, find a formula for $f'(x)$.
(b) Illustrate this formula by comparing the graphs of f and f'.

SOLUTION
(a) When using Equation 2 to compute a derivative, we must remember that the variable is h and that x is temporarily regarded as a constant during the calculation of the limit.

$$
\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{[(x+h)^3 - (x+h)] - [x^3 - x]}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{x^3 + 3x^2h + 3xh^2 + h^3 - x - h - x^3 + x}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{3x^2h + 3xh^2 + h^3 - h}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} (3x^2 + 3xh + h^2 - 1) = 3x^2 - 1
\end{aligned}
$$

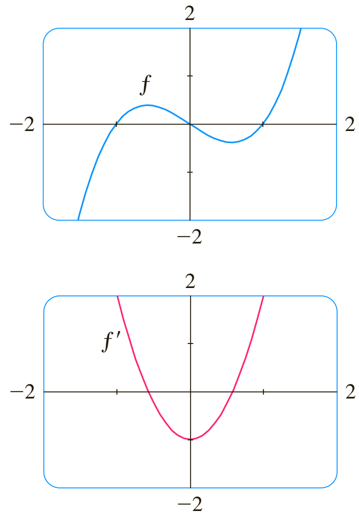


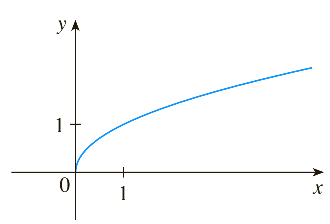
FIGURE 3

(b) We use a graphing device to graph f and f' in Figure 3. Notice that $f'(x) = 0$ when f has horizontal tangents and $f'(x)$ is positive when the tangents have positive slope. So these graphs serve as a check on our work in part (a). ■

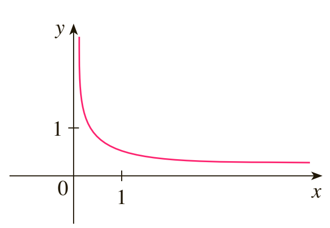
EXAMPLE 3 If $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, find the derivative of f. State the domain of f'.

SOLUTION

$$
\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \left(\frac{\sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}}{h} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}} \right) \qquad \text{(Rationalize the numerator.)} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{(x+h) - x}{h\left(\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}\right)} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{h}{h\left(\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}\right)} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{x}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}
\end{aligned}
$$



(a) $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$



(b) $f'(x) = \dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$

FIGURE 4

We see that $f'(x)$ exists if $x > 0$, so the domain of f' is $(0, \infty)$. This is slightly smaller than the domain of f, which is $[0, \infty)$. ■

Let's check to see that the result of Example 3 is reasonable by looking at the graphs of f and f' in Figure 4. When x is close to 0, $\sqrt{x}$ is also close to 0, so $f'(x) = 1/(2\sqrt{x})$ is very large and this corresponds to the steep tangent lines near $(0, 0)$ in Figure 4(a) and the large values of $f'(x)$ just to the right of 0 in Figure 4(b). When x is large, $f'(x)$ is very small and this corresponds to the flatter tangent lines at the far right of the graph of f and the horizontal asymptote of the graph of f'.

EXAMPLE 4 Find f' if $f(x) = \dfrac{1 - x}{2 + x}$.

SOLUTION

$$
\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\dfrac{1 - (x + h)}{2 + (x + h)} - \dfrac{1 - x}{2 + x}}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(1 - x - h)(2 + x) - (1 - x)(2 + x + h)}{h(2 + x + h)(2 + x)} \\
&= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(2 - x - 2h - x^2 - xh) - (2 - x + h - x^2 - xh)}{h(2 + x + h)(2 + x)} \\
&= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{-3h}{h(2 + x + h)(2 + x)} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{-3}{(2 + x + h)(2 + x)} = -\frac{3}{(2 + x)^2}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\frac{\dfrac{a}{b} - \dfrac{c}{d}}{e} = \frac{ad - bc}{bd} \cdot \frac{1}{e}$$

Leibniz

Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz was born in Leipzig in 1646 and studied law, theology, philosophy, and mathematics at the university there, graduating with a bachelor's degree at age 17. After earning his doctorate in law at age 20, Leibniz entered the diplomatic service and spent most of his life traveling to the capitals of Europe on political missions. In particular, he worked to avert a French military threat against Germany and attempted to reconcile the Catholic and Protestant churches.

His serious study of mathematics did not begin until 1672 while he was on a diplomatic mission in Paris. There he built a calculating machine and met scientists, like Huygens, who directed his attention to the latest developments in mathematics and science. Leibniz sought to develop a symbolic logic and system of notation that would simplify logical reasoning. In particular, the version of calculus that he published in 1684 established the notation and the rules for finding derivatives that we use today.

Unfortunately, a dreadful priority dispute arose in the 1690s between the followers of Newton and those of Leibniz as to who had invented calculus first. Leibniz was even accused of plagiarism by members of the Royal Society in England. The truth is that each man invented calculus independently. Newton arrived at his version of calculus first but, because of his fear of controversy, did not publish it immediately. So Leibniz's 1684 account of calculus was the first to be published.

Other Notations

If we use the traditional notation $y = f(x)$ to indicate that the independent variable is x and the dependent variable is y, then some common alternative notations for the derivative are as follows:

$$f'(x) = y' = \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{df}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx} f(x) = Df(x) = D_x f(x)$$

The symbols D and d/dx are called **differentiation operators** because they indicate the operation of **differentiation**, which is the process of calculating a derivative.

The symbol dy/dx, which was introduced by Leibniz, should not be regarded as a ratio (for the time being); it is simply a synonym for $f'(x)$. Nonetheless, it is a very useful and suggestive notation, especially when used in conjunction with increment notation. Referring to Equation 2.1.6, we can rewrite the definition of derivative in Leibniz notation in the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$$

If we want to indicate the value of a derivative dy/dx in Leibniz notation at a specific number a, we use the notation

$$\left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right|_{x=a} \qquad \text{or} \qquad \left. \frac{dy}{dx} \right]_{x=a}$$

which is a synonym for $f'(a)$. The vertical bar means "evaluate at."

3 Definition A function f is **differentiable at *a*** if $f'(a)$ exists. It is **differentiable on an open interval** (a, b) [or (a, ∞) or $(-\infty, a)$ or $(-\infty, \infty)$] if it is differentiable at every number in the interval.

EXAMPLE 5 Where is the function $f(x) = |x|$ differentiable?

SOLUTION If $x > 0$, then $|x| = x$ and we can choose h small enough that $x + h > 0$ and hence $|x + h| = x + h$. Therefore, for $x > 0$, we have

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{|x + h| - |x|}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(x + h) - x}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{h}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} 1 = 1$$

and so f is differentiable for any $x > 0$.

Similarly, for $x < 0$ we have $|x| = -x$ and h can be chosen small enough that $x + h < 0$ and so $|x + h| = -(x + h)$. Therefore, for $x < 0$,

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{|x + h| - |x|}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{-(x + h) - (-x)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{-h}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} (-1) = -1$$

and so f is differentiable for any $x < 0$.

For $x = 0$ we have to investigate

$$f'(0) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(0 + h) - f(0)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{|0 + h| - |0|}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{|h|}{h} \qquad \text{(if it exists)}$$

Let's compute the left and right limits separately:

$$\lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{|h|}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{h}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0^+} 1 = 1$$

and

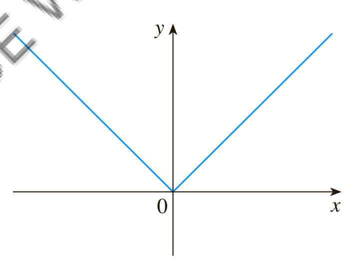
$$\lim_{h \to 0^-} \frac{|h|}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0^-} \frac{-h}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0^-} (-1) = -1$$

Since these limits are different, $f'(0)$ does not exist. Thus f is differentiable at all x except 0.

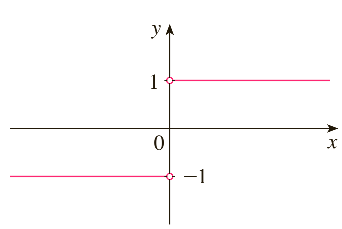
A formula for f' is given by

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

and its graph is shown in Figure 5(b). The fact that $f'(0)$ does not exist is reflected geometrically in the fact that the curve $y = |x|$ does not have a tangent line at $(0, 0)$. [See Figure 5(a).] ■



(a) $y = f(x) = |x|$



(b) $y = f'(x)$

FIGURE 5

Both continuity and differentiability are desirable properties for a function to have. The following theorem shows how these properties are related.

> **4 Theorem** If f is differentiable at a, then f is continuous at a.

PROOF To prove that f is continuous at a, we have to show that $\lim_{x\to a} f(x) = f(a)$. We do this by showing that the difference $f(x) - f(a)$ approaches 0.

The given information is that f is differentiable at a, that is,

$$f'(a) = \lim_{x\to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

PS An important aspect of problem solving is trying to find a connection between the given and the unknown. See Step 2 (Think of a Plan) in *Principles of Problem Solving* on page 98.

exists (see Equation 2.1.5). To connect the given and the unknown, we divide and multiply $f(x) - f(a)$ by $x - a$ (which we can do when $x \neq a$):

$$f(x) - f(a) = \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}(x - a)$$

Thus, using the Product Law and Equation 2.1.5, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x\to a} [f(x) - f(a)] &= \lim_{x\to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}(x - a) \\ &= \lim_{x\to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a} \cdot \lim_{x\to a} (x - a) \\ &= f'(a) \cdot 0 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

To use what we have just proved, we start with $f(x)$ and add and subtract $f(a)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x\to a} f(x) &= \lim_{x\to a} [f(a) + (f(x) - f(a))] \\ &= \lim_{x\to a} f(a) + \lim_{x\to a} [f(x) - f(a)] \\ &= f(a) + 0 = f(a) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore f is continuous at a. ■

NOTE The converse of Theorem 4 is false; that is, there are functions that are continuous but not differentiable. For instance, the function $f(x) = |x|$ is continuous at 0 because

$$\lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 0} |x| = 0 = f(0)$$

(See Example 1.6.7.) But in Example 5 we showed that f is not differentiable at 0.

How Can a Function Fail To Be Differentiable?

We saw that the function $y = |x|$ in Example 5 is not differentiable at 0 and Figure 5(a) shows that its graph changes direction abruptly when $x = 0$. In general, if the graph of a function f has a "corner" or "kink" in it, then the graph of f has no tangent at this point and f is not differentiable there. [In trying to compute $f'(a)$, we find that the left and right limits are different.]

Theorem 4 gives another way for a function not to have a derivative. It says that if f is not continuous at a, then f is not differentiable at a. So at any discontinuity (for instance, a jump discontinuity) f fails to be differentiable.

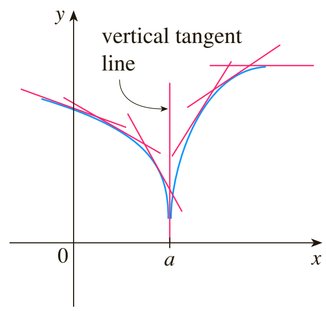


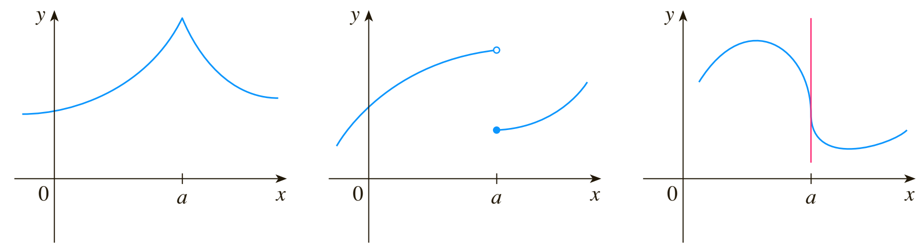
FIGURE 6

A third possibility is that the curve has a **vertical tangent line** when $x = a$; that is, f is continuous at a and

$$\lim_{x \to a} |f'(x)| = \infty$$

This means that the tangent lines become steeper and steeper as $x \to a$. Figure 6 shows one way that this can happen; Figure 7(c) shows another. Figure 7 illustrates the three possibilities that we have discussed.

FIGURE 7
Three ways for f not to be differentiable at a



(a) A corner (b) A discontinuity (c) A vertical tangent

A graphing calculator or computer provides another way of looking at differentiability. If f is differentiable at a, then when we zoom in toward the point $(a, f(a))$ the graph straightens out and appears more and more like a line. (See Figure 8. We saw a specific example of this in Figure 2.1.2.) But no matter how much we zoom in toward a point like the ones in Figures 6 and 7(a), we can't eliminate the sharp point or corner (see Figure 9).

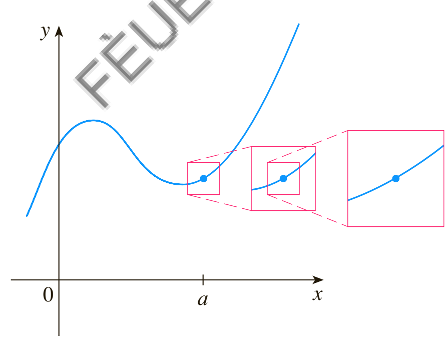


FIGURE 8
f is differentiable at a.

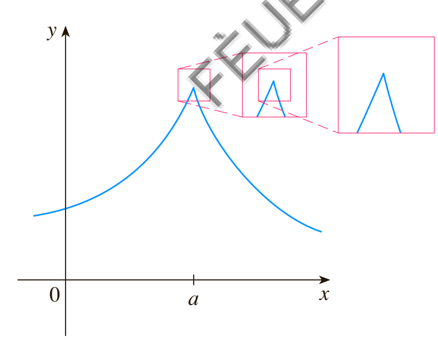


FIGURE 9
f is not differentiable at a.

Higher Derivatives

If f is a differentiable function, then its derivative f' is also a function, so f' may have a derivative of its own, denoted by $(f')' = f''$. This new function f'' is called the **second derivative** of f because it is the derivative of the derivative of f. Using Leibniz notation, we write the second derivative of $y = f(x)$ as

$$\underbrace{\frac{d}{dx}}_{\text{derivative of}} \underbrace{\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)}_{\text{first derivative}} = \underbrace{\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}}_{\text{second derivative}}$$

EXAMPLE 6 If $f(x) = x^3 - x$, find and interpret $f''(x)$.

SOLUTION In Example 2 we found that the first derivative is $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 1$. So the second derivative is

$$f''(x) = (f')'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f'(x+h) - f'(x)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{[3(x+h)^2 - 1] - [3x^2 - 1]}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{3x^2 + 6xh + 3h^2 - 1 - 3x^2 + 1}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} (6x + 3h) = 6x$$

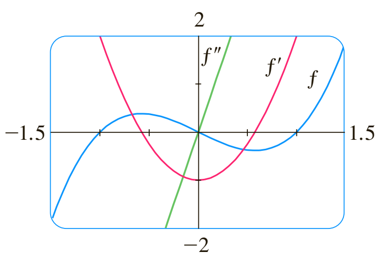


FIGURE 10

TEC In Module 2.2 you can see how changing the coefficients of a polynomial f affects the appearance of the graphs of f, f', and f''.

The graphs of f, f', and f'' are shown in Figure 10.

We can interpret $f''(x)$ as the slope of the curve $y = f'(x)$ at the point $(x, f'(x))$. In other words, it is the rate of change of the slope of the original curve $y = f(x)$.

Notice from Figure 10 that $f''(x)$ is negative when $y = f'(x)$ has negative slope and positive when $y = f'(x)$ has positive slope. So the graphs serve as a check on our calculations. ■

In general, we can interpret a second derivative as a rate of change of a rate of change. The most familiar example of this is *acceleration*, which we define as follows.

If $s = s(t)$ is the position function of an object that moves in a straight line, we know that its first derivative represents the velocity $v(t)$ of the object as a function of time:

$$v(t) = s'(t) = \frac{ds}{dt}$$

The instantaneous rate of change of velocity with respect to time is called the **acceleration** $a(t)$ of the object. Thus the acceleration function is the derivative of the velocity function and is therefore the second derivative of the position function:

$$a(t) = v'(t) = s''(t)$$

or, in Leibniz notation,

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}$$

Acceleration is the change in velocity you would feel when your car is speeding up or slowing down.

The **third derivative** f''' is the derivative of the second derivative: $f''' = (f'')'$. So $f'''(x)$ can be interpreted as the slope of the curve $y = f''(x)$ or as the rate of change of $f''(x)$. If $y = f(x)$, then alternative notations for the third derivative are

$$y''' = f'''(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right) = \frac{d^3y}{dx^3}$$

We can also interpret the third derivative physically in the case where the function is the position function $s = s(t)$ of an object that moves along a straight line. Because $s''' = (s'')' = a'$, the third derivative of the position function is the derivative of the acceleration function and is called the **jerk**:

$$j = \frac{da}{dt} = \frac{d^3s}{dt^3}$$

Thus the jerk j is the rate of change of acceleration. It is aptly named because a large jerk means a sudden change in acceleration, which causes an abrupt movement in a vehicle.

The differentiation process can be continued. The fourth derivative f'''' is usually denoted by $f^{(4)}$. In general, the nth derivative of f is denoted by $f^{(n)}$ and is obtained from f by differentiating n times. If $y = f(x)$, we write

$$y^{(n)} = f^{(n)}(x) = \frac{d^n y}{dx^n}$$

EXAMPLE 7 If $f(x) = x^3 - x$, find $f'''(x)$ and $f^{(4)}(x)$.

SOLUTION In Example 6 we found that $f''(x) = 6x$. The graph of the second derivative has equation $y = 6x$ and so it is a straight line with slope 6. Since the derivative $f'''(x)$ is the slope of $f''(x)$, we have

$$f'''(x) = 6$$

for all values of x. So f''' is a constant function and its graph is a horizontal line. Therefore, for all values of x,

$$f^{(4)}(x) = 0$$

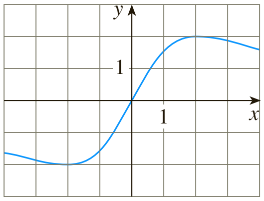
■

We have seen that one application of second and third derivatives occurs in analyzing the motion of objects using acceleration and jerk. We will investigate another application of second derivatives in Section 3.3, where we show how knowledge of f'' gives us information about the shape of the graph of f. In Chapter 11 we will see how second and higher derivatives enable us to represent functions as sums of infinite series.

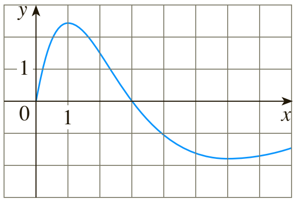
2.2 EXERCISES

1–2 Use the given graph to estimate the value of each derivative. Then sketch the graph of f'.

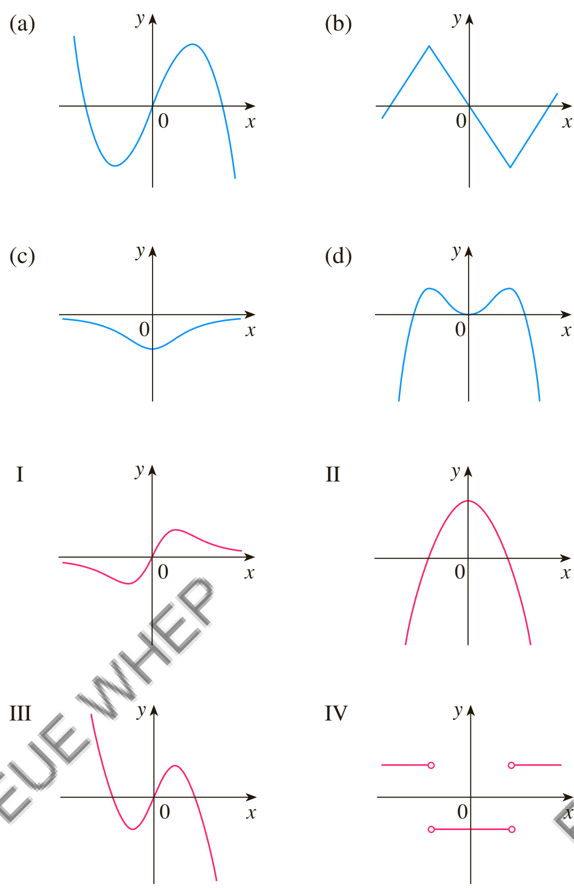
1. (a) $f'(-3)$ (b) $f'(-2)$ (c) $f'(-1)$ (d) $f'(0)$
(e) $f'(1)$ (f) $f'(2)$ (g) $f'(3)$



2. (a) $f'(0)$ (b) $f'(1)$ (c) $f'(2)$ (d) $f'(3)$
(e) $f'(4)$ (f) $f'(5)$ (g) $f'(6)$ (h) $f'(7)$

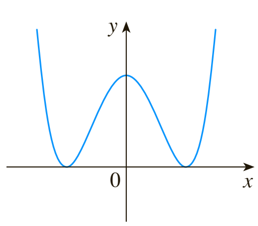


3. Match the graph of each function in (a)–(d) with the graph of its derivative in I–IV. Give reasons for your choices.

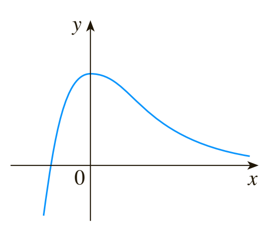


4–11 Trace or copy the graph of the given function f. (Assume that the axes have equal scales.) Then use the method of Example 1 to sketch the graph of f' below it.

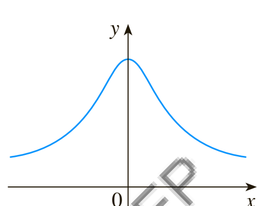
4.



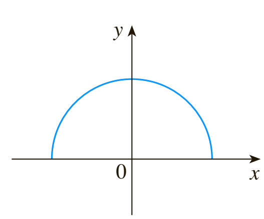
5.



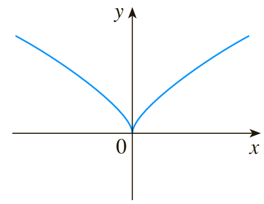
6.



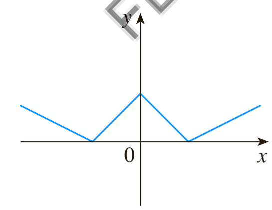
7.



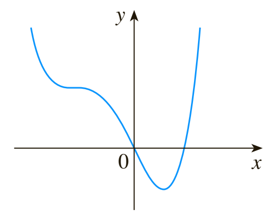
8.



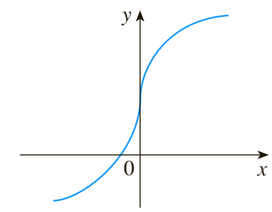
9.



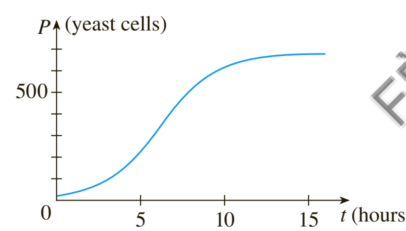
10.



11.



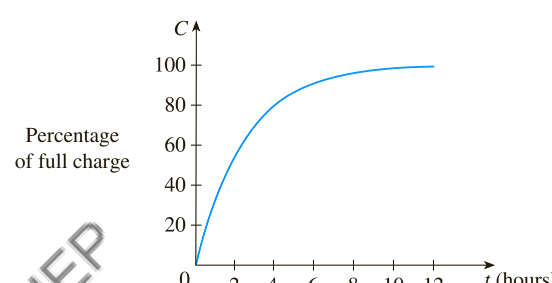
12. Shown is the graph of the population function $P(t)$ for yeast cells in a laboratory culture. Use the method of Example 1 to graph the derivative $P'(t)$. What does the graph of P' tell us about the yeast population?



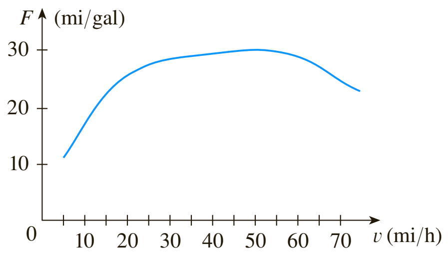
13. A rechargeable battery is plugged into a charger. The graph shows $C(t)$, the percentage of full capacity that the battery reaches as a function of time t elapsed (in hours).

(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $C'(t)$?

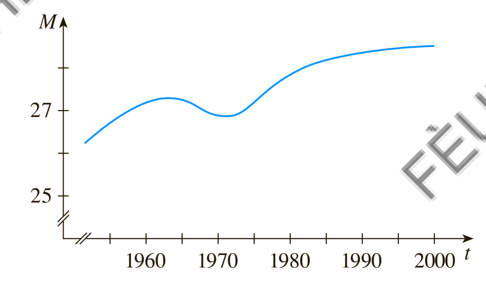
(b) Sketch the graph of $C'(t)$. What does the graph tell you?



14. The graph (from the US Department of Energy) shows how driving speed affects gas mileage. Fuel economy F is measured in miles per gallon and speed v is measured in miles per hour.
(a) What is the meaning of the derivative $F'(v)$?
(b) Sketch the graph of $F'(v)$.
(c) At what speed should you drive if you want to save on gas?



15. The graph shows how the average age M of first marriage of Japanese men varied in the last half of the 20th century. Sketch the graph of the derivative function $M'(t)$. During which years was the derivative negative?



16. Make a careful sketch of the graph of the sine function and below it sketch the graph of its derivative in the same manner as in Example 1. Can you guess what the derivative of the sine function is from its graph?

17. Let $f(x) = x^2$.
(a) Estimate the values of $f'(0)$, $f'(\frac{1}{2})$, $f'(1)$, and $f'(2)$ by using a graphing device to zoom in on the graph of f.
(b) Use symmetry to deduce the values of $f'(-\frac{1}{2})$, $f'(-1)$, and $f'(-2)$.
(c) Use the results from parts (a) and (b) to guess a formula for $f'(x)$.
(d) Use the definition of derivative to prove that your guess in part (c) is correct.

18. Let $f(x) = x^3$.
(a) Estimate the values of $f'(0)$, $f'(\frac{1}{2})$, $f'(1)$, $f'(2)$, and $f'(3)$ by using a graphing device to zoom in on the graph of f.
(b) Use symmetry to deduce the values of $f'(-\frac{1}{2})$, $f'(-1)$, $f'(-2)$, and $f'(-3)$.
(c) Use the values from parts (a) and (b) to graph f'.
(d) Guess a formula for $f'(x)$.
(e) Use the definition of derivative to prove that your guess in part (d) is correct.

19–29 Find the derivative of the function using the definition of derivative. State the domain of the function and the domain of its derivative.

19. $f(x) = 3x - 8$

20. $f(x) = mx + b$

21. $f(t) = 2.5t^2 + 6t$

22. $f(x) = 4 + 8x - 5x^2$

23. $f(x) = x^2 - 2x^3$

24. $g(t) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{t}}$

25. $g(x) = \sqrt{9 - x}$

26. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 1}{2x - 3}$

27. $G(t) = \dfrac{1 - 2t}{3 + t}$

28. $f(x) = x^{3/2}$

29. $f(x) = x^4$

30. (a) Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \sqrt{6 - x}$ by starting with the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ and using the transformations of Section 1.3.
(b) Use the graph from part (a) to sketch the graph of f'.
(c) Use the definition of a derivative to find $f'(x)$. What are the domains of f and f'?
(d) Use a graphing device to graph f' and compare with your sketch in part (b).

31. (a) If $f(x) = x^4 + 2x$, find $f'(x)$.
(b) Check to see that your answer to part (a) is reasonable by comparing the graphs of f and f'.

32. (a) If $f(x) = x + 1/x$, find $f'(x)$.
(b) Check to see that your answer to part (a) is reasonable by comparing the graphs of f and f'.

33. The unemployment rate $U(t)$ varies with time. The table gives the percentage of unemployed in the US labor force from 2003 to 2012.
(a) What is the meaning of $U'(t)$? What are its units?
(b) Construct a table of estimated values for $U'(t)$.

t	$U(t)$	t	$U(t)$
2003	6.0	2008	5.8
2004	5.5	2009	9.3
2005	5.1	2010	9.6
2006	4.6	2011	8.9
2007	4.6	2012	8.1

Source: US Bureau of Labor Statistics

34. The table gives the number $N(t)$, measured in thousands, of minimally invasive cosmetic surgery procedures performed in the United States for various years t.

t	$N(t)$ (thousands)
2000	5,500
2002	4,897
2004	7,470
2006	9,138
2008	10,897
2010	11,561
2012	13,035

Source: American Society of Plastic Surgeons

(a) What is the meaning of $N'(t)$? What are its units?
(b) Construct a table of estimated values for $N'(t)$.
(c) Graph N and N'.
(d) How would it be possible to get more accurate values for $N'(t)$?

35. The table gives the height as time passes of a typical pine tree grown for lumber at a managed site.

Tree age (years)	14	21	28	35	42	49
Height (feet)	41	54	64	72	78	83

Source: Arkansas Forestry Commission

If $H(t)$ is the height of the tree after t years, construct a table of estimated values for H' and sketch its graph.

36. Water temperature affects the growth rate of brook trout. The table shows the amount of weight gained by brook trout after 24 days in various water temperatures.

Temperature (°C)	15.5	17.7	20.0	22.4	24.4
Weight gained (g)	37.2	31.0	19.8	9.7	−9.8

If $W(x)$ is the weight gain at temperature x, construct a table of estimated values for W' and sketch its graph. What are the units for $W'(x)$?

Source: Adapted from J. Chadwick Jr., "Temperature Effects on Growth and Stress Physiology of Brook Trout: Implications for Climate Change Impacts on an Iconic Cold-Water Fish." *Masters Theses.* Paper 897. 2012. scholarworks.umass.edu/theses/897.

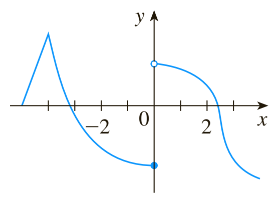
37. Let P represent the percentage of a city's electrical power that is produced by solar panels t years after January 1, 2000.
(a) What does dP/dt represent in this context?
(b) Interpret the statement

$$\left.\frac{dP}{dt}\right|_{t=2} = 3.5$$

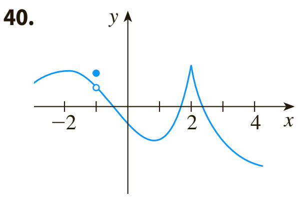
38. Suppose N is the number of people in the United States who travel by car to another state for a vacation this year when the average price of gasoline is p dollars per gallon. Do you expect dN/dp to be positive or negative? Explain.

39–42 The graph of f is given. State, with reasons, the numbers at which f is *not* differentiable.

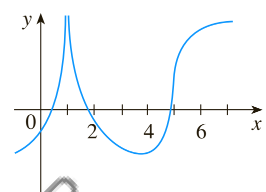
39.



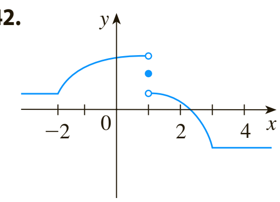
40.



41.



42.

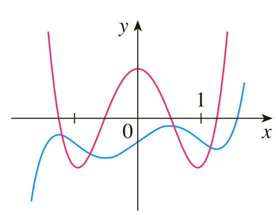


43. Graph the function $f(x) = x + \sqrt{|x|}$. Zoom in repeatedly, first toward the point $(-1, 0)$ and then toward the origin. What is different about the behavior of f in the vicinity of these two points? What do you conclude about the differentiability of f?

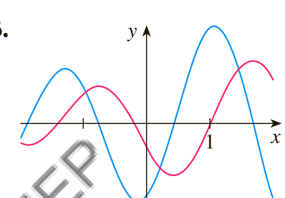
44. Zoom in toward the points $(1, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, and $(-1, 0)$ on the graph of the function $g(x) = (x^2 - 1)^{2/3}$. What do you notice? Account for what you see in terms of the differentiability of g.

45–46 The graphs of a function f and its derivative f' are shown. Which is bigger, $f'(-1)$ or $f''(1)$?

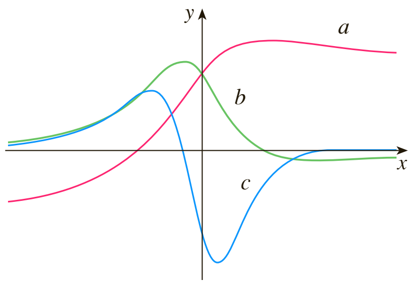
45.



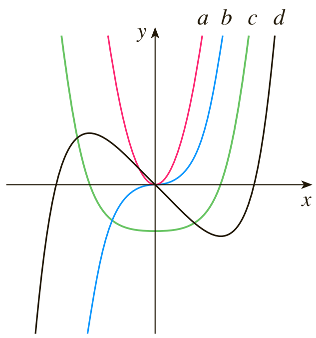
46.



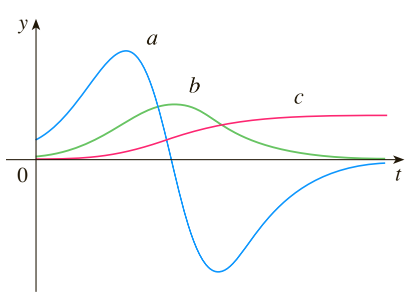
47. The figure shows the graphs of f, f', and f''. Identify each curve, and explain your choices.



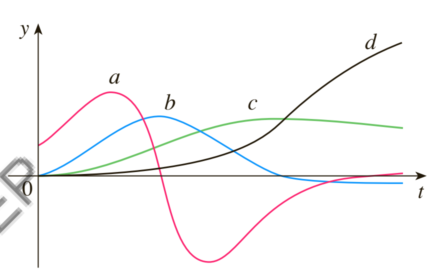
48. The figure shows graphs of f, f', f'', and f'''. Identify each curve, and explain your choices.



49. The figure shows the graphs of three functions. One is the position function of a car, one is the velocity of the car, and one is its acceleration. Identify each curve, and explain your choices.



50. The figure shows the graphs of four functions. One is the position function of a car, one is the velocity of the car, one is its acceleration, and one is its jerk. Identify each curve, and explain your choices.

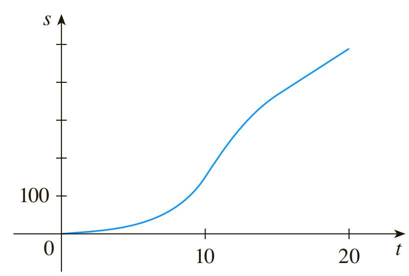


51–52 Use the definition of a derivative to find $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$. Then graph f, f', and f'' on a common screen and check to see if your answers are reasonable.

51. $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2x + 1$ **52.** $f(x) = x^3 - 3x$

53. If $f(x) = 2x^2 - x^3$, find $f'(x)$, $f''(x)$, $f'''(x)$, and $f^{(4)}(x)$. Graph f, f', f'', and f''' on a common screen. Are the graphs consistent with the geometric interpretations of these derivatives?

54. (a) The graph of a position function of a car is shown, where s is measured in feet and t in seconds. Use it to graph the velocity and acceleration of the car. What is the acceleration at $t = 10$ seconds?



(b) Use the acceleration curve from part (a) to estimate the jerk at $t = 10$ seconds. What are the units for jerk?

55. Let $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$.
(a) If $a \neq 0$, use Equation 2.1.5 to find $f'(a)$.
(b) Show that $f'(0)$ does not exist.
(c) Show that $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$ has a vertical tangent line at $(0, 0)$. (Recall the shape of the graph of f. See Figure 1.2.13.)

56. (a) If $g(x) = x^{2/3}$, show that $g'(0)$ does not exist.
(b) If $a \neq 0$, find $g'(a)$.
(c) Show that $y = x^{2/3}$ has a vertical tangent line at $(0, 0)$.
(d) Illustrate part (c) by graphing $y = x^{2/3}$.

57. Show that the function $f(x) = |x - 6|$ is not differentiable at 6. Find a formula for f' and sketch its graph.

58. Where is the greatest integer function $f(x) = [\![x]\!]$ not differentiable? Find a formula for f' and sketch its graph.

59. (a) Sketch the graph of the function $f(x) = x|x|$.
(b) For what values of x is f differentiable?
(c) Find a formula for f'.

60. (a) Sketch the graph of the function $g(x) = x + |x|$.
(b) For what values of x is g differentiable?
(c) Find a formula for g'.

61. Recall that a function f is called *even* if $f(-x) = f(x)$ for all x in its domain and *odd* if $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for all such x. Prove each of the following.
(a) The derivative of an even function is an odd function.
(b) The derivative of an odd function is an even function.

62. The **left-hand** and **right-hand derivatives** of f at a are defined by

$$f'_{-}(a) = \lim_{h \to 0^-} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

and $$f'_{+}(a) = \lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$$

if these limits exist. Then $f'(a)$ exists if and only if these one-sided derivatives exist and are equal.

(a) Find $f'_{-}(4)$ and $f'_{+}(4)$ for the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \leqslant 0 \\ 5 - x & \text{if } 0 < x < 4 \\ \dfrac{1}{5 - x} & \text{if } x \geqslant 4 \end{cases}$$

(b) Sketch the graph of f.
(c) Where is f discontinuous?
(d) Where is f not differentiable?

63. Nick starts jogging and runs faster and faster for 3 mintues, then he walks for 5 minutes. He stops at an intersection for 2 minutes, runs fairly quickly for 5 minutes, then walks for 4 minutes.
(a) Sketch a possible graph of the distance s Nick has covered after t minutes.
(b) Sketch a graph of ds/dt.

64. When you turn on a hot-water faucet, the temperature T of the water depends on how long the water has been running.
(a) Sketch a possible graph of T as a function of the time t that has elapsed since the faucet was turned on.
(b) Describe how the rate of change of T with respect to t varies as t increases.
(c) Sketch a graph of the derivative of T.

65. Let ℓ be the tangent line to the parabola $y = x^2$ at the point $(1, 1)$. The *angle of inclination* of ℓ is the angle ϕ that ℓ makes with the positive direction of the x-axis. Calculate ϕ correct to the nearest degree.

2.3 Differentiation Formulas

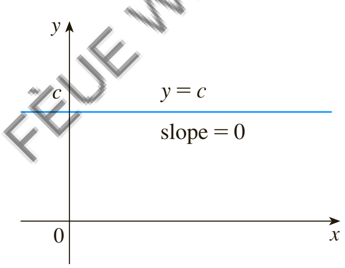


FIGURE 1
The graph of $f(x) = c$ is the line $y = c$, so $f'(x) = 0$.

If it were always necessary to compute derivatives directly from the definition, as we did in the preceding section, such computations would be tedious and the evaluation of some limits would require ingenuity. Fortunately, several rules have been developed for finding derivatives without having to use the definition directly. These formulas greatly simplify the task of differentiation.

Let's start with the simplest of all functions, the constant function $f(x) = c$. The graph of this function is the horizontal line $y = c$, which has slope 0, so we must have $f'(x) = 0$. (See Figure 1.) A formal proof, from the definition of a derivative, is also easy:

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{c - c}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} 0 = 0$$

In Leibniz notation, we write this rule as follows.

Derivative of a Constant Function

$$\frac{d}{dx}(c) = 0$$

Power Functions

We next look at the functions $f(x) = x^n$, where n is a positive integer. If $n = 1$, the graph of $f(x) = x$ is the line $y = x$, which has slope 1. (See Figure 2.) So

1 $$\frac{d}{dx}(x) = 1$$

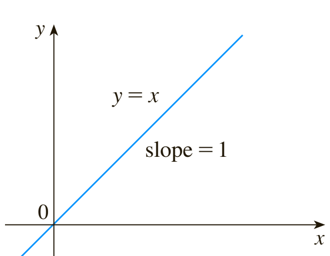


FIGURE 2
The graph of $f(x) = x$ is the line $y = x$, so $f'(x) = 1$.

(You can also verify Equation 1 from the definition of a derivative.) We have already investigated the cases $n = 2$ and $n = 3$. In fact, in Section 2.2 (Exercises 17 and 18) we found that

$$\boxed{2} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(x^2) = 2x \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(x^3) = 3x^2$$

For $n = 4$ we find the derivative of $f(x) = x^4$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(x+h)^4 - x^4}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{x^4 + 4x^3h + 6x^2h^2 + 4xh^3 + h^4 - x^4}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{4x^3h + 6x^2h^2 + 4xh^3 + h^4}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}(4x^3 + 6x^2h + 4xh^2 + h^3) = 4x^3 \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\boxed{3} \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(x^4) = 4x^3$$

Comparing the equations in (1), (2), and (3), we see a pattern emerging. It seems to be a reasonable guess that, when n is a positive integer, $(d/dx)(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$. This turns out to be true. We prove it in two ways; the second proof uses the Binomial Theorem.

The Power Rule If n is a positive integer, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$$

FIRST PROOF The formula

$$x^n - a^n = (x - a)(x^{n-1} + x^{n-2}a + \cdots + xa^{n-2} + a^{n-1})$$

can be verified simply by multiplying out the right-hand side (or by summing the second factor as a geometric series). If $f(x) = x^n$, we can use Equation 2.1.5 for $f'(a)$ and the equation above to write

$$\begin{aligned} f'(a) &= \lim_{x\to a}\frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a} = \lim_{x\to a}\frac{x^n - a^n}{x - a} \\ &= \lim_{x\to a}(x^{n-1} + x^{n-2}a + \cdots + xa^{n-2} + a^{n-1}) \\ &= a^{n-1} + a^{n-2}a + \cdots + aa^{n-2} + a^{n-1} \\ &= na^{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

SECOND PROOF

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(x+h)^n - x^n}{h}$$

The Binomial Theorem is given on Reference Page 1.

In finding the derivative of x^4 we had to expand $(x+h)^4$. Here we need to expand $(x+h)^n$ and we use the Binomial Theorem to do so:

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\left[x^n + nx^{n-1}h + \dfrac{n(n-1)}{2}x^{n-2}h^2 + \cdots + nxh^{n-1} + h^n\right] - x^n}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{nx^{n-1}h + \dfrac{n(n-1)}{2}x^{n-2}h^2 + \cdots + nxh^{n-1} + h^n}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \left[nx^{n-1} + \frac{n(n-1)}{2}x^{n-2}h + \cdots + nxh^{n-2} + h^{n-1}\right]$$

$$= nx^{n-1}$$

because every term except the first has h as a factor and therefore approaches 0. ■

We illustrate the Power Rule using various notations in Example 1.

EXAMPLE 1

(a) If $f(x) = x^6$, then $f'(x) = 6x^5$.

(b) If $y = x^{1000}$, then $y' = 1000x^{999}$.

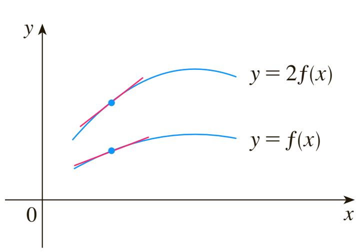
(c) If $y = t^4$, then $\dfrac{dy}{dt} = 4t^3$.

(d) $\dfrac{d}{dr}(r^3) = 3r^2$ ■

New Derivatives from Old

When new functions are formed from old functions by addition, subtraction, or multiplication by a constant, their derivatives can be calculated in terms of derivatives of the old functions. In particular, the following formula says that *the derivative of a constant times a function is the constant times the derivative of the function.*

Geometric Interpretation of the Constant Multiple Rule



Multiplying by $c = 2$ stretches the graph vertically by a factor of 2. All the rises have been doubled but the runs stay the same. So the slopes are doubled too.

> **The Constant Multiple Rule** If c is a constant and f is a differentiable function, then
>
> $$\frac{d}{dx}[cf(x)] = c\frac{d}{dx}f(x)$$

PROOF Let $g(x) = cf(x)$. Then

$$g'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{cf(x+h) - cf(x)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} c\left[\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}\right]$$

$$= c\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \qquad \text{(by Limit Law 3)}$$

$$= cf'(x)$$ ■

EXAMPLE 2

(a) $\dfrac{d}{dx}(3x^4) = 3\dfrac{d}{dx}(x^4) = 3(4x^3) = 12x^3$

(b) $\dfrac{d}{dx}(-x) = \dfrac{d}{dx}[(-1)x] = (-1)\dfrac{d}{dx}(x) = -1(1) = -1$ ■

The next rule tells us that *the derivative of a sum of functions is the sum of the derivatives*.

Using prime notation, we can write the Sum Rule as

$$(f + g)' = f' + g'$$

The Sum Rule If f and g are both differentiable, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}f(x) + \frac{d}{dx}g(x)$$

PROOF Let $F(x) = f(x) + g(x)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} F'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[f(x+h) + g(x+h)] - [f(x) + g(x)]}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} + \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}\right] \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} + \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} \qquad \text{(by Limit Law 1)} \\ &= f'(x) + g'(x) \end{aligned}$$ ■

The Sum Rule can be extended to the sum of any number of functions. For instance, using this theorem twice, we get

$$(f + g + h)' = [(f + g) + h]' = (f + g)' + h' = f' + g' + h'$$

By writing $f - g$ as $f + (-1)g$ and applying the Sum Rule and the Constant Multiple Rule, we get the following formula.

The Difference Rule If f and g are both differentiable, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x) - g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}f(x) - \frac{d}{dx}g(x)$$

The Constant Multiple Rule, the Sum Rule, and the Difference Rule can be combined with the Power Rule to differentiate any polynomial, as the following examples demonstrate.

EXAMPLE 3

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}&(x^8 + 12x^5 - 4x^4 + 10x^3 - 6x + 5)\\
&= \frac{d}{dx}(x^8) + 12\frac{d}{dx}(x^5) - 4\frac{d}{dx}(x^4) + 10\frac{d}{dx}(x^3) - 6\frac{d}{dx}(x) + \frac{d}{dx}(5)\\
&= 8x^7 + 12(5x^4) - 4(4x^3) + 10(3x^2) - 6(1) + 0\\
&= 8x^7 + 60x^4 - 16x^3 + 30x^2 - 6
\end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE 4 Find the points on the curve $y = x^4 - 6x^2 + 4$ where the tangent line is horizontal.

SOLUTION Horizontal tangents occur where the derivative is zero. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{d}{dx}(x^4) - 6\frac{d}{dx}(x^2) + \frac{d}{dx}(4)\\
&= 4x^3 - 12x + 0 = 4x(x^2 - 3)
\end{aligned}$$

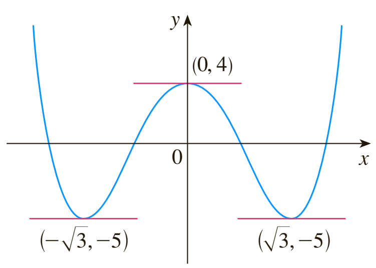


FIGURE 3
The curve $y = x^4 - 6x^2 + 4$ and its horizontal tangents

Thus $dy/dx = 0$ if $x = 0$ or $x^2 - 3 = 0$, that is, $x = \pm\sqrt{3}$. So the given curve has horizontal tangents when $x = 0$, $\sqrt{3}$, and $-\sqrt{3}$. The corresponding points are $(0, 4)$, $(\sqrt{3}, -5)$, and $(-\sqrt{3}, -5)$. (See Figure 3.)

EXAMPLE 5 The equation of motion of a particle is $s = 2t^3 - 5t^2 + 3t + 4$, where s is measured in centimeters and t in seconds. Find the acceleration as a function of time. What is the acceleration after 2 seconds?

SOLUTION The velocity and acceleration are

$$v(t) = \frac{ds}{dt} = 6t^2 - 10t + 3$$

$$a(t) = \frac{dv}{dt} = 12t - 10$$

The acceleration after 2 s is $a(2) = 12(2) - 10 = 14\ \text{cm/s}^2$.

Next we need a formula for the derivative of a product of two functions. By analogy with the Sum and Difference Rules, one might be tempted to guess, as Leibniz did three centuries ago, that the derivative of a product is the product of the derivatives. We can see, however, that this guess is wrong by looking at a particular example. Let $f(x) = x$ and $g(x) = x^2$. Then the Power Rule gives $f'(x) = 1$ and $g'(x) = 2x$. But $(fg)(x) = x^3$, so $(fg)'(x) = 3x^2$. Thus $(fg)' \neq f'g'$. The correct formula was discovered by Leibniz (soon after his false start) and is called the Product Rule.

In prime notation:
$$(fg)' = fg' + gf'$$

The Product Rule If f and g are both differentiable, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] = f(x)\frac{d}{dx}[g(x)] + g(x)\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)]$$

PROOF Let $F(x) = f(x)g(x)$. Then

$$F'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h)g(x+h) - f(x)g(x)}{h}$$

In order to evaluate this limit, we would like to separate the functions f and g as in the proof of the Sum Rule. We can achieve this separation by subtracting and adding the term $f(x+h)g(x)$ in the numerator:

$$F'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h)g(x+h) - f(x+h)g(x) + f(x+h)g(x) - f(x)g(x)}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} \left[f(x+h)\frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} + g(x)\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \right]$$

$$= \lim_{h \to 0} f(x+h) \cdot \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} + \lim_{h \to 0} g(x) \cdot \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

$$= f(x)g'(x) + g(x)f'(x)$$

Note that $\lim_{h \to 0} g(x) = g(x)$ because $g(x)$ is a constant with respect to the variable h. Also, since f is differentiable at x, it is continuous at x by Theorem 2.2.4, and so $\lim_{h \to 0} f(x+h) = f(x)$. (See Exercise 1.8.63.) ■

In words, the Product Rule says that the *derivative of a product of two functions is the first function times the derivative of the second function plus the second function times the derivative of the first function.*

EXAMPLE 6 Find $F'(x)$ if $F(x) = (6x^3)(7x^4)$.

SOLUTION By the Product Rule, we have

$$F'(x) = (6x^3)\frac{d}{dx}(7x^4) + (7x^4)\frac{d}{dx}(6x^3)$$

$$= (6x^3)(28x^3) + (7x^4)(18x^2)$$

$$= 168x^6 + 126x^6 = 294x^6$$ ■

Notice that we could verify the answer to Example 6 directly by first multiplying the factors:

$$F(x) = (6x^3)(7x^4) = 42x^7 \qquad \Rightarrow \qquad F'(x) = 42(7x^6) = 294x^6$$

But later we will meet functions, such as $y = x^2 \sin x$, for which the Product Rule is the only possible method.

EXAMPLE 7 If $h(x) = xg(x)$ and it is known that $g(3) = 5$ and $g'(3) = 2$, find $h'(3)$.

SOLUTION Applying the Product Rule, we get

$$h'(x) = \frac{d}{dx}[xg(x)] = x\frac{d}{dx}[g(x)] + g(x)\frac{d}{dx}[x]$$

$$= x \cdot g'(x) + g(x) \cdot (1)$$

Therefore $$h'(3) = 3g'(3) + g(3) = 3 \cdot 2 + 5 = 11$$ ■

In prime notation:

$$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)' = \frac{gf' - fg'}{g^2}$$

The Quotient Rule If f and g are differentiable, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right] = \frac{g(x)\dfrac{d}{dx}[f(x)] - f(x)\dfrac{d}{dx}[g(x)]}{[g(x)]^2}$$

PROOF Let $F(x) = f(x)/g(x)$. Then

$$F'(x) = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\dfrac{f(x+h)}{g(x+h)} - \dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}}{h}$$

$$= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x) - f(x)g(x+h)}{hg(x+h)g(x)}$$

We can separate f and g in this expression by subtracting and adding the term $f(x)g(x)$ in the numerator:

$$F'(x) = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x) - f(x)g(x) + f(x)g(x) - f(x)g(x+h)}{hg(x+h)g(x)}$$

$$= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(x)\dfrac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} - f(x)\dfrac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}}{g(x+h)g(x)}$$

$$= \frac{\lim_{h\to 0} g(x) \cdot \lim_{h\to 0}\dfrac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} - \lim_{h\to 0} f(x) \cdot \lim_{h\to 0}\dfrac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h}}{\lim_{h\to 0} g(x+h) \cdot \lim_{h\to 0} g(x)}$$

$$= \frac{g(x)f'(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}$$

Again g is continuous by Theorem 2.2.4, so $\lim_{h\to 0} g(x+h) = g(x)$. ■

In words, the Quotient Rule says that the *derivative of a quotient is the denominator times the derivative of the numerator minus the numerator times the derivative of the denominator, all divided by the square of the denominator.*

The theorems of this section show that any polynomial is differentiable on $\mathbb{R}$ and any rational function is differentiable on its domain. Furthermore, the Quotient Rule and the other differentiation formulas enable us to compute the derivative of any rational function, as the next example illustrates.

We can use a graphing device to check that the answer to Example 8 is plausible. Figure 4 shows the graphs of the function of Example 8 and its derivative. Notice that when y grows rapidly (near -2), y' is large. And when y grows slowly, y' is near 0.

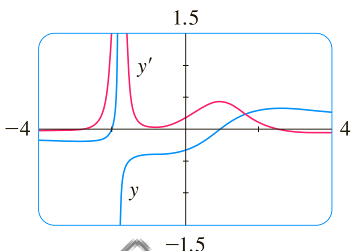


FIGURE 4

EXAMPLE 8 Let $y = \dfrac{x^2 + x - 2}{x^3 + 6}$. Then

$$y' = \frac{(x^3 + 6)\dfrac{d}{dx}(x^2 + x - 2) - (x^2 + x - 2)\dfrac{d}{dx}(x^3 + 6)}{(x^3 + 6)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(x^3 + 6)(2x + 1) - (x^2 + x - 2)(3x^2)}{(x^3 + 6)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(2x^4 + x^3 + 12x + 6) - (3x^4 + 3x^3 - 6x^2)}{(x^3 + 6)^2}$$

$$= \frac{-x^4 - 2x^3 + 6x^2 + 12x + 6}{(x^3 + 6)^2}$$

NOTE Don't use the Quotient Rule *every* time you see a quotient. Sometimes it's easier to first rewrite a quotient to put it in a form that is simpler for the purpose of differentiation. For instance, although it is possible to differentiate the function

$$F(x) = \frac{3x^2 + 2\sqrt{x}}{x}$$

using the Quotient Rule, it is much easier to perform the division first and write the function as

$$F(x) = 3x + 2x^{-1/2}$$

before differentiating.

General Power Functions

The Quotient Rule can be used to extend the Power Rule to the case where the exponent is a negative integer.

If n is a positive integer, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^{-n}) = -nx^{-n-1}$$

PROOF

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^{-n}) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{x^n}\right)$$

$$= \frac{x^n \dfrac{d}{dx}(1) - 1 \cdot \dfrac{d}{dx}(x^n)}{(x^n)^2} = \frac{x^n \cdot 0 - 1 \cdot nx^{n-1}}{x^{2n}}$$

$$= \frac{-nx^{n-1}}{x^{2n}} = -nx^{n-1-2n} = -nx^{-n-1}$$

EXAMPLE 9

(a) If $y = \dfrac{1}{x}$, then $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{d}{dx}(x^{-1}) = -x^{-2} = -\dfrac{1}{x^2}$

(b) $\dfrac{d}{dt}\left(\dfrac{6}{t^3}\right) = 6\dfrac{d}{dt}(t^{-3}) = 6(-3)t^{-4} = -\dfrac{18}{t^4}$ ■

So far we know that the Power Rule holds if the exponent n is a positive or negative integer. If $n = 0$, then $x^0 = 1$, which we know has a derivative of 0. Thus the Power Rule holds for any integer n. What if the exponent is a fraction? In Example 2.2.3 we found that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\sqrt{x} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$$

which can be written as

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^{1/2}) = \tfrac{1}{2}x^{-1/2}$$

This shows that the Power Rule is true even when $n = \frac{1}{2}$. In fact, it also holds for *any real number n*, as we will prove in Chapter 6. (A proof for rational values of n is indicated in Exercise 2.6.48.) In the meantime we state the general version and use it in the examples and exercises.

The Power Rule (General Version) If n is any real number, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$$

EXAMPLE 10

(a) If $f(x) = x^{\pi}$, then $f'(x) = \pi x^{\pi-1}$.

(b) Let
$$y = \frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{x^2}}$$

Then
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(x^{-2/3}) = -\tfrac{2}{3}x^{-(2/3)-1}$$
$$= -\tfrac{2}{3}x^{-5/3}$$ ■

In Example 11, a and b are constants. It is customary in mathematics to use letters near the beginning of the alphabet to represent constants and letters near the end of the alphabet to represent variables.

EXAMPLE 11 Differentiate the function $f(t) = \sqrt{t}\,(a + bt)$.

SOLUTION 1 Using the Product Rule, we have

$$f'(t) = \sqrt{t}\,\frac{d}{dt}(a + bt) + (a + bt)\frac{d}{dt}(\sqrt{t})$$
$$= \sqrt{t}\cdot b + (a + bt)\cdot \tfrac{1}{2}t^{-1/2}$$
$$= b\sqrt{t} + \frac{a + bt}{2\sqrt{t}} = \frac{a + 3bt}{2\sqrt{t}}$$

SOLUTION 2 If we first use the laws of exponents to rewrite $f(t)$, then we can proceed directly without using the Product Rule.

$$f(t) = a\sqrt{t} + bt\sqrt{t} = at^{1/2} + bt^{3/2}$$

$$f'(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}at^{-1/2} + \tfrac{3}{2}bt^{1/2}$$

which is equivalent to the answer given in Solution 1. ■

The differentiation rules enable us to find tangent lines without having to resort to the definition of a derivative. It also enables us to find *normal lines*. The **normal line** to a curve C at a point P is the line through P that is perpendicular to the tangent line at P. (In the study of optics, one needs to consider the angle between a light ray and the normal line to a lens.)

EXAMPLE 12 Find equations of the tangent line and normal line to the curve $y = \sqrt{x}/(1 + x^2)$ at the point $\left(1, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.

SOLUTION According to the Quotient Rule, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(1 + x^2)\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\sqrt{x}\right) - \sqrt{x}\,\dfrac{d}{dx}(1 + x^2)}{(1 + x^2)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(1 + x^2)\dfrac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} - \sqrt{x}\,(2x)}{(1 + x^2)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(1 + x^2) - 4x^2}{2\sqrt{x}\,(1 + x^2)^2} = \frac{1 - 3x^2}{2\sqrt{x}\,(1 + x^2)^2}$$

So the slope of the tangent line at $\left(1, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ is

$$\left.\frac{dy}{dx}\right|_{x=1} = \frac{1 - 3 \cdot 1^2}{2\sqrt{1}\,(1 + 1^2)^2} = -\frac{1}{4}$$

We use the point-slope form to write an equation of the tangent line at $\left(1, \frac{1}{2}\right)$:

$$y - \tfrac{1}{2} = -\tfrac{1}{4}(x - 1) \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = -\tfrac{1}{4}x + \tfrac{3}{4}$$

The slope of the normal line at $\left(1, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ is the negative reciprocal of $-\frac{1}{4}$, namely 4, so an equation is

$$y - \tfrac{1}{2} = 4(x - 1) \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = 4x - \tfrac{7}{2}$$

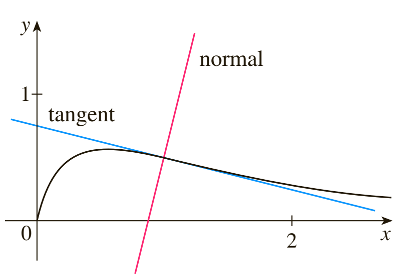


FIGURE 5

The curve and its tangent and normal lines are graphed in Figure 5. ■

EXAMPLE 13 At what points on the hyperbola $xy = 12$ is the tangent line parallel to the line $3x + y = 0$?

SOLUTION Since $xy = 12$ can be written as $y = 12/x$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 12\,\frac{d}{dx}(x^{-1}) = 12(-x^{-2}) = -\frac{12}{x^2}$$

Let the x-coordinate of one of the points in question be a. Then the slope of the tangent

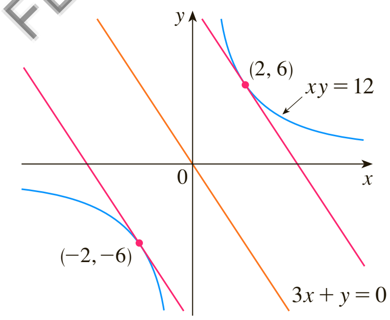


FIGURE 6

line at that point is $-12/a^2$. This tangent line will be parallel to the line $3x + y = 0$, or $y = -3x$, if it has the same slope, that is, -3. Equating slopes, we get

$$-\frac{12}{a^2} = -3 \qquad \text{or} \qquad a^2 = 4 \qquad \text{or} \qquad a = \pm 2$$

Therefore the required points are $(2, 6)$ and $(-2, -6)$. The hyperbola and the tangents are shown in Figure 6. ■

We summarize the differentiation formulas we have learned so far as follows.

Table of Differentiation Formulas

$$\frac{d}{dx}(c) = 0 \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$$

$$(cf)' = cf' \qquad (f + g)' = f' + g' \qquad (f - g)' = f' - g'$$

$$(fg)' = fg' + gf' \qquad \left(\frac{f}{g}\right)' = \frac{gf' - fg'}{g^2}$$

2.3 EXERCISES

1–22 Differentiate the function.

1. $f(x) = 2^{40}$

2. $f(x) = \pi^2$

3. $f(x) = 5.2x + 2.3$

4. $g(x) = \frac{7}{4}x^2 - 3x + 12$

5. $f(t) = 2t^3 - 3t^2 - 4t$

6. $f(t) = 1.4t^5 - 2.5t^2 + 6.7$

7. $g(x) = x^2(1 - 2x)$

8. $H(u) = (3u - 1)(u + 2)$

9. $g(t) = 2t^{-3/4}$

10. $B(y) = cy^{-6}$

11. $F(r) = \dfrac{5}{r^3}$

12. $y = x^{5/3} - x^{2/3}$

13. $S(p) = \sqrt{p} - p$

14. $y = \sqrt[3]{x}(2 + x)$

15. $R(a) = (3a + 1)^2$

16. $S(R) = 4\pi R^2$

17. $y = \dfrac{x^2 + 4x + 3}{\sqrt{x}}$

18. $y = \dfrac{\sqrt{x} + x}{x^2}$

19. $G(q) = (1 + q^{-1})^2$

20. $G(t) = \sqrt{5t} + \dfrac{\sqrt{7}}{t}$

21. $u = \left(\dfrac{1}{t} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{t}}\right)^2$

22. $D(t) = \dfrac{1 + 16t^2}{(4t)^3}$

23. Find the derivative of $f(x) = (1 + 2x^2)(x - x^2)$ in two ways: by using the Product Rule and by performing the multiplication first. Do your answers agree?

24. Find the derivative of the function

$$F(x) = \frac{x^4 - 5x^3 + \sqrt{x}}{x^2}$$

in two ways: by using the Quotient Rule and by simplifying first. Show that your answers are equivalent. Which method do you prefer?

25–44 Differentiate.

25. $f(x) = (5x^2 - 2)(x^3 + 3x)$

26. $B(u) = (u^3 + 1)(2u^2 - 4u - 1)$

27. $F(y) = \left(\dfrac{1}{y^2} - \dfrac{3}{y^4}\right)(y + 5y^3)$

28. $J(v) = (v^3 - 2v)(v^{-4} + v^{-2})$

29. $g(x) = \dfrac{1 + 2x}{3 - 4x}$

30. $h(t) = \dfrac{6t + 1}{6t - 1}$

31. $y = \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{x^3 - 1}$

32. $y = \dfrac{1}{t^3 + 2t^2 - 1}$

33. $y = \dfrac{t^3 + 3t}{t^2 - 4t + 3}$

34. $y = \dfrac{(u + 2)^2}{1 - u}$

35. $y = \dfrac{s - \sqrt{s}}{s^2}$

36. $y = \dfrac{\sqrt{x}}{2 + x}$

37. $f(t) = \dfrac{\sqrt[3]{t}}{t - 3}$

38. $y = \dfrac{cx}{1 + cx}$

39. $F(x) = \dfrac{2x^5 + x^4 - 6x}{x^3}$

40. $A(v) = v^{2/3}(2v^2 + 1 - v^{-2})$

41. $G(y) = \dfrac{B}{Ay^3 + B}$

42. $F(t) = \dfrac{At}{Bt^2 + Ct^3}$

43. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x + \dfrac{c}{x}}$

44. $f(x) = \dfrac{ax + b}{cx + d}$

45. The general polynomial of degree n has the form

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + a_0$$

where $a_n \neq 0$. Find the derivative of P.

46–48 Find $f'(x)$. Compare the graphs of f and f' and use them to explain why your answer is reasonable.

46. $f(x) = x/(x^2 - 1)$

47. $f(x) = 3x^{15} - 5x^3 + 3$

48. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}$

49. (a) Graph the function

$$f(x) = x^4 - 3x^3 - 6x^2 + 7x + 30$$

in the viewing rectangle $[-3, 5]$ by $[-10, 50]$.

(b) Using the graph in part (a) to estimate slopes, make a rough sketch, by hand, of the graph of f'. (See Example 2.2.1.)

(c) Calculate $f'(x)$ and use this expression, with a graphing device, to graph f'. Compare with your sketch in part (b).

50. (a) Graph the function $g(x) = x^2/(x^2 + 1)$ in the viewing rectangle $[-4, 4]$ by $[-1, 1.5]$.

(b) Using the graph in part (a) to estimate slopes, make a rough sketch, by hand, of the graph of g'. (See Example 2.2.1.)

(c) Calculate $g'(x)$ and use this expression, with a graphing device, to graph g'. Compare with your sketch in part (b).

51–52 Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve at the given point.

51. $y = \dfrac{2x}{x + 1}$, $(1, 1)$

52. $y = 2x^3 - x^2 + 2$, $(1, 3)$

53. (a) The curve $y = 1/(1 + x^2)$ is called a **witch of Maria Agnesi**. Find an equation of the tangent line to this curve at the point $\left(-1, \frac{1}{2}\right)$.

(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on the same screen.

54. (a) The curve $y = x/(1 + x^2)$ is called a **serpentine**. Find an equation of the tangent line to this curve at the point $(3, 0.3)$.

(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on the same screen.

55–58 Find equations of the tangent line and normal line to the curve at the given point.

55. $y = x + \sqrt{x}$, $(1, 2)$

56. $y^2 = x^3$, $(1, 1)$

57. $y = \dfrac{3x + 1}{x^2 + 1}$, $(1, 2)$

58. $y = \dfrac{\sqrt{x}}{x + 1}$, $(4, 0.4)$

59–62 Find the first and second derivatives of the function.

59. $f(x) = 0.001x^5 - 0.02x^3$

60. $G(r) = \sqrt{r} + \sqrt[3]{r}$

61. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{1 + 2x}$

62. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{3 - x}$

63. The equation of motion of a particle is $s = t^3 - 3t$, where s is in meters and t is in seconds. Find

(a) the velocity and acceleration as functions of t,

(b) the acceleration after 2 s, and

(c) the acceleration when the velocity is 0.

64. The equation of motion of a particle is $s = t^4 - 2t^3 + t^2 - t$, where s is in meters and t is in seconds.

(a) Find the velocity and acceleration as functions of t.

(b) Find the acceleration after 1 s.

(c) Graph the position, velocity, and acceleration functions on the same screen.

65. Biologists have proposed a cubic polynomial to model the length L of Alaskan rockfish at age A:

$$L = 0.0155A^3 - 0.372A^2 + 3.95A + 1.21$$

where L is measured in inches and A in years. Calculate

$$\left.\frac{dL}{dA}\right|_{A=12}$$

and interpret your answer.

66. The number of tree species S in a given area A in the Pasoh Forest Reserve in Malaysia has been modeled by the power function

$$S(A) = 0.882A^{0.842}$$

where A is measured in square meters. Find $S'(100)$ and interpret your answer.

Source: Adapted from K. Kochummen et al., "Floristic Composition of Pasoh Forest Reserve, A Lowland Rain Forest in Peninsular Malaysia," *Journal of Tropical Forest Science* 3 (1991):1–13.

67. Boyle's Law states that when a sample of gas is compressed at a constant temperature, the pressure P of the gas is inversely proportional to the volume V of the gas.

(a) Suppose that the pressure of a sample of air that occupies $0.106\ \text{m}^3$ at $25°\text{C}$ is 50 kPa. Write V as a function of P.

(b) Calculate dV/dP when $P = 50$ kPa. What is the meaning of the derivative? What are its units?

68. Car tires need to be inflated properly because overinflation or underinflation can cause premature tread wear. The data in the table show tire life L (in thousands of miles) for a certain type of tire at various pressures P (in lb/in^2).

P	26	28	31	35	38	42	45
L	50	66	78	81	74	70	59

(a) Use a calculator to model tire life with a quadratic function of the pressure.

(b) Use the model to estimate dL/dP when $P = 30$ and when $P = 40$. What is the meaning of the derivative? What are the units? What is the significance of the signs of the derivatives?

69. Suppose that $f(5) = 1$, $f'(5) = 6$, $g(5) = -3$, and $g'(5) = 2$. Find the following values.

(a) $(fg)'(5)$ (b) $(f/g)'(5)$ (c) $(g/f)'(5)$

70. Suppose that $f(4) = 2$, $g(4) = 5$, $f'(4) = 6$, and $g'(4) = -3$. Find $h'(4)$.

(a) $h(x) = 3f(x) + 8g(x)$ (b) $h(x) = f(x)g(x)$

(c) $h(x) = \dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}$ (d) $h(x) = \dfrac{g(x)}{f(x) + g(x)}$

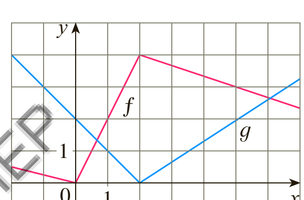
71. If $f(x) = \sqrt{x}\, g(x)$, where $g(4) = 8$ and $g'(4) = 7$, find $f'(4)$.

72. If $h(2) = 4$ and $h'(2) = -3$, find

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{h(x)}{x}\right)\bigg|_{x=2}$$

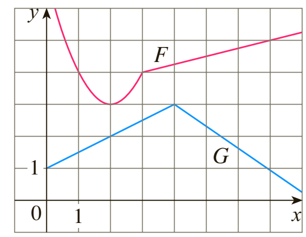
73. If f and g are the functions whose graphs are shown, let $u(x) = f(x)g(x)$ and $v(x) = f(x)/g(x)$.

(a) Find $u'(1)$. (b) Find $v'(5)$.



74. Let $P(x) = F(x)G(x)$ and $Q(x) = F(x)/G(x)$, where F and G are the functions whose graphs are shown.

(a) Find $P'(2)$. (b) Find $Q'(7)$.



75. If g is a differentiable function, find an expression for the derivative of each of the following functions.

(a) $y = xg(x)$ (b) $y = \dfrac{x}{g(x)}$

(c) $y = \dfrac{g(x)}{x}$

76. If f is a differentiable function, find an expression for the derivative of each of the following functions.

(a) $y = x^2 f(x)$ (b) $y = \dfrac{f(x)}{x^2}$

(c) $y = \dfrac{x^2}{f(x)}$ (d) $y = \dfrac{1 + xf(x)}{\sqrt{x}}$

77. Find the points on the curve $y = 2x^3 + 3x^2 - 12x + 1$ where the tangent is horizontal.

78. For what values of x does the graph of $f(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 + x + 3$ have a horizontal tangent?

79. Show that the curve $y = 6x^3 + 5x - 3$ has no tangent line with slope 4.

80. Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = x^4 + 1$ that is parallel to the line $32x - y = 15$.

81. Find equations of both lines that are tangent to the curve $y = x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x - 3$ and are parallel to the line $3x - y = 15$.

82. Find equations of the tangent lines to the curve

$$y = \frac{x - 1}{x + 1}$$

that are parallel to the line $x - 2y = 2$.

83. Find an equation of the normal line to the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$ that is parallel to the line $2x + y = 1$.

84. Where does the normal line to the parabola $y = x^2 - 1$ at the point $(-1, 0)$ intersect the parabola a second time? Illustrate with a sketch.

85. Draw a diagram to show that there are two tangent lines to the parabola $y = x^2$ that pass through the point $(0, -4)$. Find the coordinates of the points where these tangent lines intersect the parabola.

86. (a) Find equations of both lines through the point $(2, -3)$ that are tangent to the parabola $y = x^2 + x$.
(b) Show that there is no line through the point $(2, 7)$ that is tangent to the parabola. Then draw a diagram to see why.

87. (a) Use the Product Rule twice to prove that if f, g, and h are differentiable, then $(fgh)' = f'gh + fg'h + fgh'$.
(b) Taking $f = g = h$ in part (a), show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)]^3 = 3[f(x)]^2 f'(x)$$

(c) Use part (b) to differentiate $y = (x^4 + 3x^3 + 17x + 82)^3$.

88. Find the nth derivative of each function by calculating the first few derivatives and observing the pattern that occurs.
(a) $f(x) = x^n$ (b) $f(x) = 1/x$

89. Find a second-degree polynomial P such that $P(2) = 5$, $P'(2) = 3$, and $P''(2) = 2$.

90. The equation $y'' + y' - 2y = x^2$ is called a **differential equation** because it involves an unknown function y and its derivatives y' and y''. Find constants A, B, and C such that the function $y = Ax^2 + Bx + C$ satisfies this equation. (Differential equations will be studied in detail in Chapter 9.)

91. Find a cubic function $y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ whose graph has horizontal tangents at the points $(-2, 6)$ and $(2, 0)$.

92. Find a parabola with equation $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ that has slope 4 at $x = 1$, slope -8 at $x = -1$, and passes through the point $(2, 15)$.

93. In this exercise we estimate the rate at which the total personal income is rising in the Richmond-Petersburg, Virginia, metropolitan area. In 1999, the population of this area was 961,400, and the population was increasing at roughly 9200 people per year. The average annual income was \$30,593 per capita, and this average was increasing at about \$1400 per year (a little above the national average of about \$1225 yearly). Use the Product Rule and these figures to estimate the rate at which total personal income was rising in the Richmond-Petersburg area in 1999. Explain the meaning of each term in the Product Rule.

94. A manufacturer produces bolts of a fabric with a fixed width. The quantity q of this fabric (measured in yards) that is sold is a function of the selling price p (in dollars per yard), so we can write $q = f(p)$. Then the total revenue earned with selling price p is $R(p) = pf(p)$.
(a) What does it mean to say that $f(20) = 10{,}000$ and $f'(20) = -350$?
(b) Assuming the values in part (a), find $R'(20)$ and interpret your answer.

95. The Michaelis-Menten equation for the enzyme chymotrypsin is

$$v = \frac{0.14[S]}{0.015 + [S]}$$

where v is the rate of an enzymatic reaction and [S] is the concentration of a substrate S. Calculate $dv/d[S]$ and interpret it.

96. The *biomass* $B(t)$ of a fish population is the total mass of the members of the population at time t. It is the product of the number of individuals $N(t)$ in the population and the average mass $M(t)$ of a fish at time t. In the case of guppies, breeding occurs continually. Suppose that at time $t = 4$ weeks the population is 820 guppies and is growing at a rate of 50 guppies per week, while the average mass is 1.2 g and is increasing at a rate of 0.14 g/week. At what rate is the biomass increasing when $t = 4$?

97. Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 1 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ x + 1 & \text{if } x \geqslant 1 \end{cases}$$

Is f differentiable at 1? Sketch the graphs of f and f'.

98. At what numbers is the following function g differentiable?

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} 2x & \text{if } x \leqslant 0 \\ 2x - x^2 & \text{if } 0 < x < 2 \\ 2 - x & \text{if } x \geqslant 2 \end{cases}$$

Give a formula for g' and sketch the graphs of g and g'.

99. (a) For what values of x is the function $f(x) = |x^2 - 9|$ differentiable? Find a formula for f'.
(b) Sketch the graphs of f and f'.

100. Where is the function $h(x) = |x - 1| + |x + 2|$ differentiable? Give a formula for h' and sketch the graphs of h and h'.

101. For what values of a and b is the line $2x + y = b$ tangent to the parabola $y = ax^2$ when $x = 2$?

102. (a) If $F(x) = f(x)\,g(x)$, where f and g have derivatives of all orders, show that $F'' = f''g + 2f'g' + fg''$.
(b) Find similar formulas for F''' and $F^{(4)}$.
(c) Guess a formula for $F^{(n)}$.

103. Find the value of c such that the line $y = \frac{3}{2}x + 6$ is tangent to the curve $y = c\sqrt{x}$.

104. Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x \leqslant 2 \\ mx + b & \text{if } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

Find the values of m and b that make f differentiable everywhere.

105. An easy proof of the Quotient Rule can be given if we make the prior assumption that $F'(x)$ exists, where $F = f/g$. Write $f = Fg$; then differentiate using the Product Rule and solve the resulting equation for F'.

106. A tangent line is drawn to the hyperbola $xy = c$ at a point P.
(a) Show that the midpoint of the line segment cut from this tangent line by the coordinate axes is P.
(b) Show that the triangle formed by the tangent line and the coordinate axes always has the same area, no matter where P is located on the hyperbola.

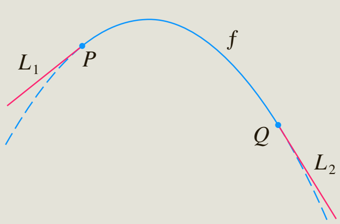
107. Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 1}\frac{x^{1000}-1}{x-1}$.

108. Draw a diagram showing two perpendicular lines that intersect on the y-axis and are both tangent to the parabola $y = x^2$. Where do these lines intersect?

109. If $c > \frac{1}{2}$, how many lines through the point $(0, c)$ are normal lines to the parabola $y = x^2$? What if $c \leqslant \frac{1}{2}$?

110. Sketch the parabolas $y = x^2$ and $y = x^2 - 2x + 2$. Do you think there is a line that is tangent to both curves? If so, find its equation. If not, why not?

APPLIED PROJECT BUILDING A BETTER ROLLER COASTER



Suppose you are asked to design the first ascent and drop for a new roller coaster. By studying photographs of your favorite coasters, you decide to make the slope of the ascent 0.8 and the slope of the drop -1.6. You decide to connect these two straight stretches $y = L_1(x)$ and $y = L_2(x)$ with part of a parabola $y = f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, where x and $f(x)$ are measured in feet. For the track to be smooth there can't be abrupt changes in direction, so you want the linear segments L_1 and L_2 to be tangent to the parabola at the transition points P and Q. (See the figure.) To simplify the equations, you decide to place the origin at P.

1. (a) Suppose the horizontal distance between P and Q is 100 ft. Write equations in a, b, and c that will ensure that the track is smooth at the transition points.

(b) Solve the equations in part (a) for a, b, and c to find a formula for $f(x)$.

(c) Plot L_1, f, and L_2 to verify graphically that the transitions are smooth.

(d) Find the difference in elevation between P and Q.


© Susana Ortega / Shutterstock.com

2. The solution in Problem 1 might *look* smooth, but it might not *feel* smooth because the piecewise defined function [consisting of $L_1(x)$ for $x < 0$, $f(x)$ for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 100$, and $L_2(x)$ for $x > 100$] doesn't have a continuous second derivative. So you decide to improve the design by using a quadratic function $q(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ only on the interval $10 \leqslant x \leqslant 90$ and connecting it to the linear functions by means of two cubic functions:

$$g(x) = kx^3 + lx^2 + mx + n \qquad 0 \leqslant x < 10$$

$$h(x) = px^3 + qx^2 + rx + s \qquad 90 < x \leqslant 100$$

(a) Write a system of equations in 11 unknowns that ensure that the functions and their first two derivatives agree at the transition points.

CAS (b) Solve the equations in part (a) with a computer algebra system to find formulas for $q(x)$, $g(x)$, and $h(x)$.

(c) Plot L_1, g, q, h, and L_2, and compare with the plot in Problem 1(c).

2.4 Derivatives of Trigonometric Functions

A review of the trigonometric functions is given in Appendix D.

Before starting this section, you might need to review the trigonometric functions. In particular, it is important to remember that when we talk about the function f defined for all real numbers x by

$$f(x) = \sin x$$

it is understood that $\sin x$ means the sine of the angle whose *radian* measure is x. A similar convention holds for the other trigonometric functions cos, tan, csc, sec, and cot. Recall from Section 1.8 that all of the trigonometric functions are continuous at every number in their domains.

If we sketch the graph of the function $f(x) = \sin x$ and use the interpretation of $f'(x)$ as the slope of the tangent to the sine curve in order to sketch the graph of f' (see Exercise 2.2.16), then it looks as if the graph of f' may be the same as the cosine curve (see Figure 1).

TEC Visual 2.4 shows an animation of Figure 1.

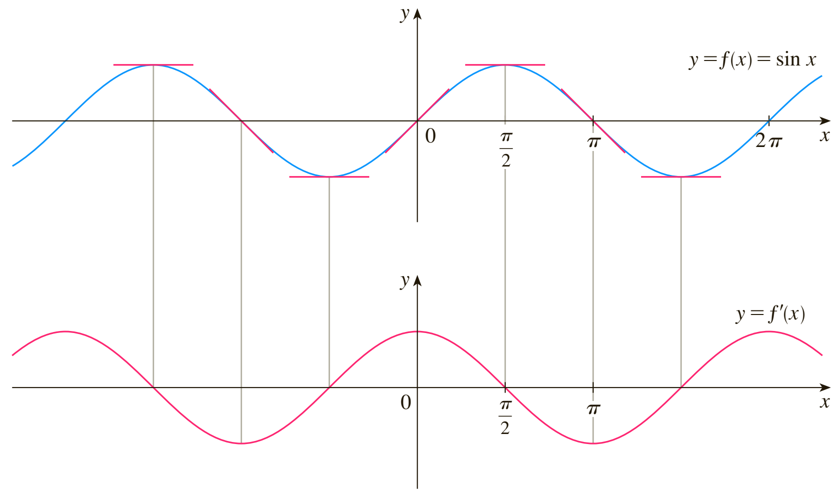


FIGURE 1

Let's try to confirm our guess that if $f(x) = \sin x$, then $f'(x) = \cos x$. From the definition of a derivative, we have

We have used the addition formula for sine. See Appendix D.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin x}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin x \cos h + \cos x \sin h - \sin x}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \left[\frac{\sin x \cos h - \sin x}{h} + \frac{\cos x \sin h}{h} \right] \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \left[\sin x \left(\frac{\cos h - 1}{h} \right) + \cos x \left(\frac{\sin h}{h} \right) \right] \end{aligned}$$

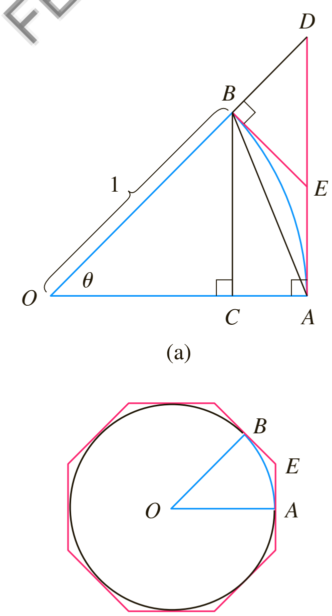
1 $$= \lim_{h\to 0} \sin x \cdot \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\cos h - 1}{h} + \lim_{h\to 0} \cos x \cdot \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin h}{h}$$

Two of these four limits are easy to evaluate. Since we regard x as a constant when computing a limit as $h \to 0$, we have

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \sin x = \sin x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{h\to 0} \cos x = \cos x$$

The limit of $(\sin h)/h$ is not so obvious. In Example 1.5.3 we made the guess, on the basis of numerical and graphical evidence, that

2 $$\boxed{\lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin \theta}{\theta} = 1}$$



(a)

(b)

FIGURE 2

We now use a geometric argument to prove Equation 2. Assume first that θ lies between 0 and $\pi/2$. Figure 2(a) shows a sector of a circle with center O, central angle θ, and radius 1. BC is drawn perpendicular to OA. By the definition of radian measure, we have arc $AB = \theta$. Also $|BC| = |OB|\sin\theta = \sin\theta$. From the diagram we see that

$$|BC| < |AB| < \text{arc } AB$$

Therefore $$\sin\theta < \theta \qquad \text{so} \qquad \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} < 1$$

Let the tangent lines at A and B intersect at E. You can see from Figure 2(b) that the circumference of a circle is smaller than the length of a circumscribed polygon, and so arc $AB < |AE| + |EB|$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \theta = \text{arc } AB &< |AE| + |EB| \\ &< |AE| + |ED| \\ &= |AD| = |OA|\tan\theta \\ &= \tan\theta \end{aligned}$$

(In Appendix F the inequality $\theta \leqslant \tan\theta$ is proved directly from the definition of the length of an arc without resorting to geometric intuition as we did here.) Therefore we have

$$\theta < \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$$

so $$\cos\theta < \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} < 1$$

We know that $\lim_{\theta\to 0} 1 = 1$ and $\lim_{\theta\to 0}\cos\theta = 1$, so by the Squeeze Theorem, we have

$$\lim_{\theta\to 0^+}\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} = 1$$

But the function $(\sin\theta)/\theta$ is an even function, so its right and left limits must be equal. Hence, we have

$$\lim_{\theta\to 0}\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} = 1$$

so we have proved Equation 2.

We can deduce the value of the remaining limit in (1) as follows:

We multiply numerator and denominator by $\cos\theta + 1$ in order to put the function in a form in which we can use the limits we know.

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\theta\to 0}\frac{\cos\theta - 1}{\theta} &= \lim_{\theta\to 0}\left(\frac{\cos\theta - 1}{\theta}\cdot\frac{\cos\theta + 1}{\cos\theta + 1}\right) = \lim_{\theta\to 0}\frac{\cos^2\theta - 1}{\theta(\cos\theta + 1)} \\ &= \lim_{\theta\to 0}\frac{-\sin^2\theta}{\theta(\cos\theta + 1)} = -\lim_{\theta\to 0}\left(\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}\cdot\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta + 1}\right) \\ &= -\lim_{\theta\to 0}\frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}\cdot\lim_{\theta\to 0}\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta + 1} \\ &= -1\cdot\left(\frac{0}{1 + 1}\right) = 0 \qquad \text{(by Equation 2)} \end{aligned}$$

3
$$\lim_{\theta \to 0} \frac{\cos \theta - 1}{\theta} = 0$$

If we now put the limits (2) and (3) in (1), we get

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \to 0} \sin x \cdot \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\cos h - 1}{h} + \lim_{h \to 0} \cos x \cdot \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\sin h}{h}$$
$$= (\sin x) \cdot 0 + (\cos x) \cdot 1 = \cos x$$

So we have proved the formula for the derivative of the sine function:

4
$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x$$

EXAMPLE 1 Differentiate $y = x^2 \sin x$.

SOLUTION Using the Product Rule and Formula 4, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = x^2 \frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) + \sin x \frac{d}{dx}(x^2)$$
$$= x^2 \cos x + 2x \sin x$$
■

Figure 3 shows the graphs of the function of Example 1 and its derivative. Notice that $y' = 0$ whenever y has a horizontal tangent.

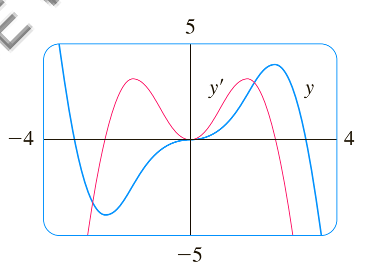


FIGURE 3

Using the same methods as in the proof of Formula 4, one can prove (see Exercise 20) that

5
$$\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) = -\sin x$$

The tangent function can also be differentiated by using the definition of a derivative, but it is easier to use the Quotient Rule together with Formulas 4 and 5:

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}\right)$$
$$= \frac{\cos x \dfrac{d}{dx}(\sin x) - \sin x \dfrac{d}{dx}(\cos x)}{\cos^2 x}$$
$$= \frac{\cos x \cdot \cos x - \sin x\,(-\sin x)}{\cos^2 x}$$
$$= \frac{\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x}$$
$$= \frac{1}{\cos^2 x} = \sec^2 x$$

6

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x$$

The derivatives of the remaining trigonometric functions, csc, sec, and cot, can also be found easily using the Quotient Rule (see Exercises 17–19). We collect all the differentiation formulas for trigonometric functions in the following table. Remember that they are valid only when x is measured in radians.

When you memorize this table, it is helpful to notice that the minus signs go with the derivatives of the "cofunctions," that is, cosine, cosecant, and cotangent.

Derivatives of Trigonometric Functions

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(\csc x) = -\csc x \cot x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) = -\sin x \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x \tan x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x \qquad \frac{d}{dx}(\cot x) = -\csc^2 x$$

EXAMPLE 2 Differentiate $f(x) = \dfrac{\sec x}{1 + \tan x}$. For what values of x does the graph of f have a horizontal tangent?

SOLUTION The Quotient Rule gives

$$f'(x) = \frac{(1 + \tan x)\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sec x) - \sec x \dfrac{d}{dx}(1 + \tan x)}{(1 + \tan x)^2}$$

$$= \frac{(1 + \tan x)\sec x \tan x - \sec x \cdot \sec^2 x}{(1 + \tan x)^2}$$

$$= \frac{\sec x\,(\tan x + \tan^2 x - \sec^2 x)}{(1 + \tan x)^2}$$

$$= \frac{\sec x\,(\tan x - 1)}{(1 + \tan x)^2}$$

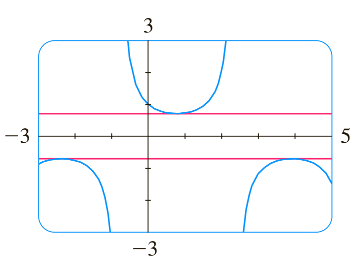


FIGURE 4
The horizontal tangents in Example 2

In simplifying the answer we have used the identity $\tan^2 x + 1 = \sec^2 x$.

Since $\sec x$ is never 0, we see that $f'(x) = 0$ when $\tan x = 1$, and this occurs when $x = n\pi + \pi/4$, where n is an integer (see Figure 4). ■

Trigonometric functions are often used in modeling real-world phenomena. In particular, vibrations, waves, elastic motions, and other quantities that vary in a periodic manner can be described using trigonometric functions. In the following example we discuss an instance of simple harmonic motion.

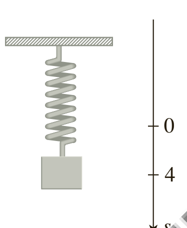


FIGURE 5

EXAMPLE 3 An object at the end of a vertical spring is stretched 4 cm beyond its rest position and released at time $t = 0$. (See Figure 5 and note that the downward direction is positive.) Its position at time t is

$$s = f(t) = 4\cos t$$

Find the velocity and acceleration at time t and use them to analyze the motion of the object.

SOLUTION The velocity and acceleration are

$$v = \frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(4 \cos t) = 4 \frac{d}{dt}(\cos t) = -4 \sin t$$

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(-4 \sin t) = -4 \frac{d}{dt}(\sin t) = -4 \cos t$$

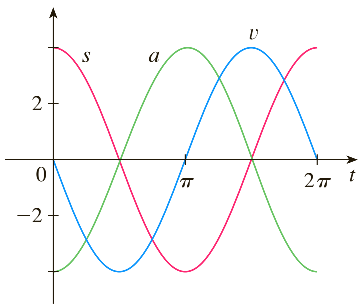


FIGURE 6

The object oscillates from the lowest point ($s = 4$ cm) to the highest point ($s = -4$ cm). The period of the oscillation is 2π, the period of $\cos t$.

The speed is $|v| = 4|\sin t|$, which is greatest when $|\sin t| = 1$, that is, when $\cos t = 0$. So the object moves fastest as it passes through its equilibrium position ($s = 0$). Its speed is 0 when $\sin t = 0$, that is, at the high and low points.

The acceleration $a = -4 \cos t = 0$ when $s = 0$. It has greatest magnitude at the high and low points. See the graphs in Figure 6. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Find the 27th derivative of $\cos x$.

PS Look for a pattern.

SOLUTION The first few derivatives of $f(x) = \cos x$ are as follows:

$$f'(x) = -\sin x$$

$$f''(x) = -\cos x$$

$$f'''(x) = \sin x$$

$$f^{(4)}(x) = \cos x$$

$$f^{(5)}(x) = -\sin x$$

We see that the successive derivatives occur in a cycle of length 4 and, in particular, $f^{(n)}(x) = \cos x$ whenever n is a multiple of 4. Therefore

$$f^{(24)}(x) = \cos x$$

and, differentiating three more times, we have

$$f^{(27)}(x) = \sin x$$ ■

Our main use for the limit in Equation 2 has been to prove the differentiation formula for the sine function. But this limit is also useful in finding certain other trigonometric limits, as the following two examples show.

EXAMPLE 5 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin 7x}{4x}$.

SOLUTION In order to apply Equation 2, we first rewrite the function by multiplying and dividing by 7:

Note that $\sin 7x \neq 7 \sin x$.

$$\frac{\sin 7x}{4x} = \frac{7}{4}\left(\frac{\sin 7x}{7x}\right)$$

If we let $\theta = 7x$, then $\theta \to 0$ as $x \to 0$, so by Equation 2 we have

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin 7x}{4x} = \frac{7}{4} \lim_{x\to 0} \left(\frac{\sin 7x}{7x} \right)$$

$$= \frac{7}{4} \lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} = \frac{7}{4} \cdot 1 = \frac{7}{4}$$

EXAMPLE 6 Calculate $\lim_{x\to 0} x \cot x$.

SOLUTION Here we divide numerator and denominator by x:

$$\lim_{x\to 0} x \cot x = \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{x \cos x}{\sin x}$$

$$= \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\cos x}{\dfrac{\sin x}{x}} = \frac{\lim_{x\to 0} \cos x}{\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin x}{x}}$$

$$= \frac{\cos 0}{1} \qquad \text{(by the continuity of cosine and Equation 2)}$$

$$= 1$$

2.4 EXERCISES

1–16 Differentiate.

1. $f(x) = x^2 \sin x$
2. $f(x) = x \cos x + 2 \tan x$
3. $f(x) = 3 \cot x - 2 \cos x$
4. $y = 2 \sec x - \csc x$
5. $y = \sec\theta \tan\theta$
6. $g(t) = 4 \sec t + \tan t$
7. $y = c \cos t + t^2 \sin t$
8. $y = u(a \cos u + b \cot u)$
9. $y = \dfrac{x}{2 - \tan x}$
10. $y = \sin\theta \cos\theta$
11. $f(\theta) = \dfrac{\sin\theta}{1 + \cos\theta}$
12. $y = \dfrac{\cos x}{1 - \sin x}$
13. $y = \dfrac{t \sin t}{1 + t}$
14. $y = \dfrac{\sin t}{1 + \tan t}$
15. $f(\theta) = \theta \cos\theta \sin\theta$
16. $y = x^2 \sin x \tan x$

17. Prove that $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\csc x) = -\csc x \cot x$.

18. Prove that $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x \tan x$.

19. Prove that $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\cot x) = -\csc^2 x$.

20. Prove, using the definition of derivative, that if $f(x) = \cos x$, then $f'(x) = -\sin x$.

21–24 Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve at the given point.

21. $y = \sin x + \cos x$, $(0, 1)$
22. $y = (1 + x)\cos x$, $(0, 1)$
23. $y = \cos x - \sin x$, $(\pi, -1)$
24. $y = x + \tan x$, (π, π)

25. (a) Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = 2x \sin x$ at the point $(\pi/2, \pi)$.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on the same screen.

26. (a) Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = 3x + 6 \cos x$ at the point $(\pi/3, \pi + 3)$.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on the same screen.

27. (a) If $f(x) = \sec x - x$, find $f'(x)$.
(b) Check to see that your answer to part (a) is reasonable by graphing both f and f' for $|x| < \pi/2$.

28. (a) If $f(x) = \sqrt{x} \sin x$, find $f'(x)$.
(b) Check to see that your answer to part (a) is reasonable by graphing both f and f' for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$.

29. If $H(\theta) = \theta \sin\theta$, find $H'(\theta)$ and $H''(\theta)$.

30. If $f(t) = \sec t$, find $f''(\pi/4)$.

31. (a) Use the Quotient Rule to differentiate the function

$$f(x) = \frac{\tan x - 1}{\sec x}$$

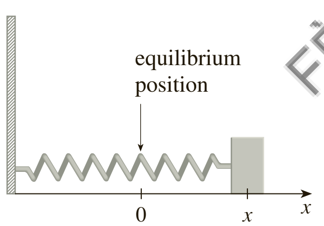
(b) Simplify the expression for $f(x)$ by writing it in terms of $\sin x$ and $\cos x$, and then find $f'(x)$.
(c) Show that your answers to parts (a) and (b) are equivalent.

32. Suppose $f(\pi/3) = 4$ and $f'(\pi/3) = -2$, and let $g(x) = f(x)\sin x$ and $h(x) = (\cos x)/f(x)$. Find
(a) $g'(\pi/3)$ (b) $h'(\pi/3)$

33. For what values of x does the graph of $f(x) = x + 2\sin x$ have a horizontal tangent?

34. Find the points on the curve $y = (\cos x)/(2 + \sin x)$ at which the tangent is horizontal.

35. A mass on a spring vibrates horizontally on a smooth level surface (see the figure). Its equation of motion is $x(t) = 8\sin t$, where t is in seconds and x in centimeters.
(a) Find the velocity and acceleration at time t.
(b) Find the position, velocity, and acceleration of the mass at time $t = 2\pi/3$. In what direction is it moving at that time?



36. An elastic band is hung on a hook and a mass is hung on the lower end of the band. When the mass is pulled downward and then released, it vibrates vertically. The equation of motion is $s = 2\cos t + 3\sin t$, $t \geqslant 0$, where s is measured in centimeters and t in seconds. (Take the positive direction to be downward.)
(a) Find the velocity and acceleration at time t.
(b) Graph the velocity and acceleration functions.
(c) When does the mass pass through the equilibrium position for the first time?
(d) How far from its equilibrium position does the mass travel?
(e) When is the speed the greatest?

37. A ladder 10 ft long rests against a vertical wall. Let θ be the angle between the top of the ladder and the wall and let x be the distance from the bottom of the ladder to the wall. If the bottom of the ladder slides away from the wall, how fast does x change with respect to θ when $\theta = \pi/3$?

38. An object with weight W is dragged along a horizontal plane by a force acting along a rope attached to the object. If the rope makes an angle θ with the plane, then the magnitude of the force is

$$F = \frac{\mu W}{\mu \sin\theta + \cos\theta}$$

where μ is a constant called the *coefficient of friction*.
(a) Find the rate of change of F with respect to θ.
(b) When is this rate of change equal to 0?
(c) If $W = 50$ lb and $\mu = 0.6$, draw the graph of F as a function of θ and use it to locate the value of θ for which $dF/d\theta = 0$. Is the value consistent with your answer to part (b)?

39–50 Find the limit.

39. $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{\sin 5x}{3x}$

40. $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{\sin x}{\sin \pi x}$

41. $\lim_{t \to 0} \dfrac{\tan 6t}{\sin 2t}$

42. $\lim_{\theta \to 0} \dfrac{\cos\theta - 1}{\sin\theta}$

43. $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{\sin 3x}{5x^3 - 4x}$

44. $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{\sin 3x \sin 5x}{x^2}$

45. $\lim_{\theta \to 0} \dfrac{\sin\theta}{\theta + \tan\theta}$

46. $\lim_{x \to 0} \csc x \sin(\sin x)$

47. $\lim_{\theta \to 0} \dfrac{\cos\theta - 1}{2\theta^2}$

48. $\lim_{x \to 0} \dfrac{\sin(x^2)}{x}$

49. $\lim_{x \to \pi/4} \dfrac{1 - \tan x}{\sin x - \cos x}$

50. $\lim_{x \to 1} \dfrac{\sin(x - 1)}{x^2 + x - 2}$

51–52 Find the given derivative by finding the first few derivatives and observing the pattern that occurs.

51. $\dfrac{d^{99}}{dx^{99}}(\sin x)$

52. $\dfrac{d^{35}}{dx^{35}}(x \sin x)$

53. Find constants A and B such that the function $y = A\sin x + B\cos x$ satisfies the differential equation $y'' + y' - 2y = \sin x$.

54. Evaluate $\lim_{x \to 0} x \sin \dfrac{1}{x}$ and illustrate by graphing $y = x\sin(1/x)$.

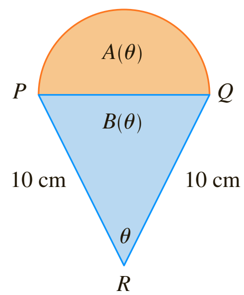
55. Differentiate each trigonometric identity to obtain a new (or familiar) identity.

(a) $\tan x = \dfrac{\sin x}{\cos x}$ (b) $\sec x = \dfrac{1}{\cos x}$

(c) $\sin x + \cos x = \dfrac{1 + \cot x}{\csc x}$

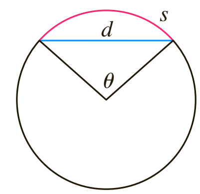
56. A semicircle with diameter PQ sits on an isosceles triangle PQR to form a region shaped like a two-dimensional ice-cream cone, as shown in the figure. If $A(\theta)$ is the area of the semicircle and $B(\theta)$ is the area of the triangle, find

$$\lim_{\theta \to 0^+} \frac{A(\theta)}{B(\theta)}$$



57. The figure shows a circular arc of length s and a chord of length d, both subtended by a central angle θ. Find

$$\lim_{\theta \to 0^+} \frac{s}{d}$$



58. Let $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{1 - \cos 2x}}$.

(a) Graph f. What type of discontinuity does it appear to have at 0?

(b) Calculate the left and right limits of f at 0. Do these values confirm your answer to part (a)?

2.5 The Chain Rule

Suppose you are asked to differentiate the function

$$F(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 1}$$

The differentiation formulas you learned in the previous sections of this chapter do not enable you to calculate $F'(x)$.

See Section 1.3 for a review of composite functions.

Observe that F is a composite function. In fact, if we let $y = f(u) = \sqrt{u}$ and let $u = g(x) = x^2 + 1$, then we can write $y = F(x) = f(g(x))$, that is, $F = f \circ g$. We know how to differentiate both f and g, so it would be useful to have a rule that tells us how to find the derivative of $F = f \circ g$ in terms of the derivatives of f and g.

It turns out that the derivative of the composite function $f \circ g$ is the product of the derivatives of f and g. This fact is one of the most important of the differentiation rules and is called the *Chain Rule*. It seems plausible if we interpret derivatives as rates of change. Regard du/dx as the rate of change of u with respect to x, dy/du as the rate of change of y with respect to u, and dy/dx as the rate of change of y with respect to x. If u changes twice as fast as x and y changes three times as fast as u, then it seems reasonable that y changes six times as fast as x, and so we expect that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}$$

The Chain Rule If g is differentiable at x and f is differentiable at $g(x)$, then the composite function $F = f \circ g$ defined by $F(x) = f(g(x))$ is differentiable at x and F' is given by the product

$$F'(x) = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x)$$

In Leibniz notation, if $y = f(u)$ and $u = g(x)$ are both differentiable functions, then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}$$

James Gregory
The first person to formulate the Chain Rule was the Scottish mathematician James Gregory (1638–1675), who also designed the first practical reflecting telescope. Gregory discovered the basic ideas of calculus at about the same time as Newton. He became the first Professor of Mathematics at the University of St. Andrews and later held the same position at the University of Edinburgh. But one year after accepting that position he died at the age of 36.

COMMENTS ON THE PROOF OF THE CHAIN RULE Let Δu be the change in u corresponding to a change of Δx in x, that is,

$$\Delta u = g(x + \Delta x) - g(x)$$

Then the corresponding change in y is

$$\Delta y = f(u + \Delta u) - f(u)$$

It is tempting to write

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dy}{dx} &= \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} \\
&= \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta u} \cdot \frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x} && \boxed{1} \\
&= \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta u} \cdot \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x} \\
&= \lim_{\Delta u \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta u} \cdot \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta u}{\Delta x} && \text{(Note that } \Delta u \to 0 \text{ as } \Delta x \to 0 \text{ since } g \text{ is continuous.)} \\
&= \frac{dy}{du} \frac{du}{dx}
\end{aligned}$$

The only flaw in this reasoning is that in (1) it might happen that $\Delta u = 0$ (even when $\Delta x \neq 0$) and, of course, we can't divide by 0. Nonetheless, this reasoning does at least *suggest* that the Chain Rule is true. A full proof of the Chain Rule is given at the end of this section. ■

The Chain Rule can be written either in the prime notation

$$\boxed{2} \qquad (f \circ g)'(x) = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x)$$

or, if $y = f(u)$ and $u = g(x)$, in Leibniz notation:

$$\boxed{3} \qquad \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \frac{du}{dx}$$

Equation 3 is easy to remember because if dy/du and du/dx were quotients, then we could cancel du. Remember, however, that du has not been defined and du/dx should not be thought of as an actual quotient.

EXAMPLE 1 Find $F'(x)$ if $F(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 1}$.

SOLUTION 1 (using Equation 2): At the beginning of this section we expressed F as $F(x) = (f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$ where $f(u) = \sqrt{u}$ and $g(x) = x^2 + 1$. Since

$$f'(u) = \tfrac{1}{2}u^{-1/2} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{u}} \qquad \text{and} \qquad g'(x) = 2x$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}
F'(x) &= f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) \\
&= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x^2 + 1}} \cdot 2x = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}
\end{aligned}$$

SOLUTION 2 (using Equation 3): If we let $u = x^2 + 1$ and $y = \sqrt{u}$, then

$$F'(x) = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{u}}(2x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x^2+1}}(2x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$$ ■

When using Formula 3 we should bear in mind that dy/dx refers to the derivative of y when y is considered as a function of x (called the *derivative of y with respect to x*), whereas dy/du refers to the derivative of y when considered as a function of u (the derivative of y with respect to u). For instance, in Example 1, y can be considered as a function of x $\left(y = \sqrt{x^2+1}\right)$ and also as a function of u $\left(y = \sqrt{u}\right)$. Note that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = F'(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}} \qquad \text{whereas} \qquad \frac{dy}{du} = f'(u) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{u}}$$

NOTE In using the Chain Rule we work from the outside to the inside. Formula 2 says that *we differentiate the outer function f [at the inner function g(x)] and then we multiply by the derivative of the inner function.*

$$\frac{d}{dx}\underbrace{f}_{\substack{\text{outer}\\\text{function}}}\underbrace{(g(x))}_{\substack{\text{evaluated}\\\text{at inner}\\\text{function}}} = \underbrace{f'}_{\substack{\text{derivative}\\\text{of outer}\\\text{function}}}\underbrace{(g(x))}_{\substack{\text{evaluated}\\\text{at inner}\\\text{function}}} \cdot \underbrace{g'(x)}_{\substack{\text{derivative}\\\text{of inner}\\\text{function}}}$$

EXAMPLE 2 Differentiate (a) $y = \sin(x^2)$ and (b) $y = \sin^2 x$.

SOLUTION

(a) If $y = \sin(x^2)$, then the outer function is the sine function and the inner function is the squaring function, so the Chain Rule gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}\underbrace{\sin}_{\substack{\text{outer}\\\text{function}}}\underbrace{(x^2)}_{\substack{\text{evaluated}\\\text{at inner}\\\text{function}}} = \underbrace{\cos}_{\substack{\text{derivative}\\\text{of outer}\\\text{function}}}\underbrace{(x^2)}_{\substack{\text{evaluated}\\\text{at inner}\\\text{function}}} \cdot \underbrace{2x}_{\substack{\text{derivative}\\\text{of inner}\\\text{function}}}$$

$$= 2x\cos(x^2)$$

(b) Note that $\sin^2 x = (\sin x)^2$. Here the outer function is the squaring function and the inner function is the sine function. So

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}\underbrace{(\sin x)}_{\substack{\text{inner}\\\text{function}}}{}^2 = \underbrace{2}_{\substack{\text{derivative}\\\text{of outer}\\\text{function}}} \cdot \underbrace{(\sin x)}_{\substack{\text{evaluated}\\\text{at inner}\\\text{function}}} \cdot \underbrace{\cos x}_{\substack{\text{derivative}\\\text{of inner}\\\text{function}}}$$

See Reference Page 2 or Appendix D.

The answer can be left as $2\sin x\,\cos x$ or written as $\sin 2x$ (by a trigonometric identity known as the double-angle formula). ■

In Example 2(a) we combined the Chain Rule with the rule for differentiating the sine function. In general, if $y = \sin u$, where u is a differentiable function of x, then, by the Chain Rule,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx} = \cos u \frac{du}{dx}$$

Thus
$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin u) = \cos u \frac{du}{dx}$$

In a similar fashion, all of the formulas for differentiating trigonometric functions can be combined with the Chain Rule.

Let's make explicit the special case of the Chain Rule where the outer function f is a power function. If $y = [g(x)]^n$, then we can write $y = f(u) = u^n$ where $u = g(x)$. By using the Chain Rule and then the Power Rule, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx} = nu^{n-1}\frac{du}{dx} = n[g(x)]^{n-1}g'(x)$$

4 The Power Rule Combined with the Chain Rule If n is any real number and $u = g(x)$ is differentiable, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}(u^n) = nu^{n-1}\frac{du}{dx}$$

Alternatively,
$$\frac{d}{dx}[g(x)]^n = n[g(x)]^{n-1} \cdot g'(x)$$

Notice that the derivative in Example 1 could be calculated by taking $n = \frac{1}{2}$ in Rule 4.

EXAMPLE 3 Differentiate $y = (x^3 - 1)^{100}$.

SOLUTION Taking $u = g(x) = x^3 - 1$ and $n = 100$ in (4), we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(x^3 - 1)^{100} = 100(x^3 - 1)^{99}\frac{d}{dx}(x^3 - 1)$$
$$= 100(x^3 - 1)^{99} \cdot 3x^2 = 300x^2(x^3 - 1)^{99}$$ ■

EXAMPLE 4 Find $f'(x)$ if $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt[3]{x^2 + x + 1}}$.

SOLUTION First rewrite f: $\quad f(x) = (x^2 + x + 1)^{-1/3}$

Thus
$$f'(x) = -\tfrac{1}{3}(x^2 + x + 1)^{-4/3}\frac{d}{dx}(x^2 + x + 1)$$
$$= -\tfrac{1}{3}(x^2 + x + 1)^{-4/3}(2x + 1)$$ ■

EXAMPLE 5 Find the derivative of the function

$$g(t) = \left(\frac{t-2}{2t+1}\right)^9$$

SOLUTION Combining the Power Rule, Chain Rule, and Quotient Rule, we get

$$g'(t) = 9\left(\frac{t-2}{2t+1}\right)^8 \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{t-2}{2t+1}\right)$$

$$= 9\left(\frac{t-2}{2t+1}\right)^8 \frac{(2t+1)\cdot 1 - 2(t-2)}{(2t+1)^2} = \frac{45(t-2)^8}{(2t+1)^{10}}$$ ■

EXAMPLE 6 Differentiate $y = (2x+1)^5(x^3 - x + 1)^4$.

SOLUTION In this example we must use the Product Rule before using the Chain Rule:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = (2x+1)^5 \frac{d}{dx}(x^3 - x + 1)^4 + (x^3 - x + 1)^4 \frac{d}{dx}(2x+1)^5$$

$$= (2x+1)^5 \cdot 4(x^3 - x + 1)^3 \frac{d}{dx}(x^3 - x + 1)$$

$$+ (x^3 - x + 1)^4 \cdot 5(2x+1)^4 \frac{d}{dx}(2x+1)$$

$$= 4(2x+1)^5(x^3 - x + 1)^3(3x^2 - 1) + 5(x^3 - x + 1)^4(2x+1)^4 \cdot 2$$

The graphs of the functions y and y' in Example 6 are shown in Figure 1. Notice that y' is large when y increases rapidly and $y' = 0$ when y has a horizontal tangent. So our answer appears to be reasonable.

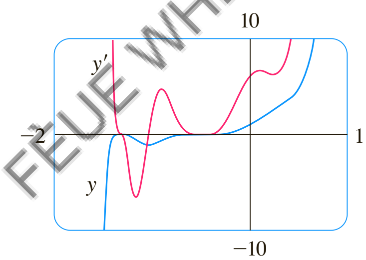


FIGURE 1

Noticing that each term has the common factor $2(2x+1)^4(x^3 - x + 1)^3$, we could factor it out and write the answer as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2(2x+1)^4(x^3 - x + 1)^3(17x^3 + 6x^2 - 9x + 3)$$ ■

The reason for the name "Chain Rule" becomes clear when we make a longer chain by adding another link. Suppose that $y = f(u)$, $u = g(x)$, and $x = h(t)$, where f, g, and h are differentiable functions. Then, to compute the derivative of y with respect to t, we use the Chain Rule twice:

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{dy}{dx}\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{dy}{du}\frac{du}{dx}\frac{dx}{dt}$$

EXAMPLE 7 If $f(x) = \sin(\cos(\tan x))$, then

$$f'(x) = \cos(\cos(\tan x)) \frac{d}{dx}\cos(\tan x)$$

$$= \cos(\cos(\tan x))[-\sin(\tan x)] \frac{d}{dx}(\tan x)$$

$$= -\cos(\cos(\tan x)) \sin(\tan x) \sec^2 x$$

Notice that we used the Chain Rule twice. ■

EXAMPLE 8 Differentiate $y = \sqrt{\sec x^3}$.

SOLUTION Here the outer function is the square root function, the middle function is the secant function, and the inner function is the cubing function. So we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\sec x^3}} \frac{d}{dx}(\sec x^3) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\sec x^3}} \sec x^3 \tan x^3 \frac{d}{dx}(x^3) \\ &= \frac{3x^2 \sec x^3 \tan x^3}{2\sqrt{\sec x^3}}\end{aligned}$$

How to Prove the Chain Rule

Recall that if $y = f(x)$ and x changes from a to $a + \Delta x$, we define the increment of y as

$$\Delta y = f(a + \Delta x) - f(a)$$

According to the definition of a derivative, we have

$$\lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = f'(a)$$

So if we denote by ε the difference between the difference quotient and the derivative, we obtain

$$\lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \varepsilon = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \left(\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} - f'(a) \right) = f'(a) - f'(a) = 0$$

But $$\varepsilon = \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} - f'(a) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \Delta y = f'(a)\,\Delta x + \varepsilon\,\Delta x$$

If we define ε to be 0 when $\Delta x = 0$, then ε becomes a continuous function of Δx. Thus, for a differentiable function f, we can write

5 $$\Delta y = f'(a)\,\Delta x + \varepsilon\,\Delta x \qquad \text{where} \quad \varepsilon \to 0 \text{ as } \Delta x \to 0$$

and ε is a continuous function of Δx. This property of differentiable functions is what enables us to prove the Chain Rule.

PROOF OF THE CHAIN RULE Suppose $u = g(x)$ is differentiable at a and $y = f(u)$ is differentiable at $b = g(a)$. If Δx is an increment in x and Δu and Δy are the corresponding increments in u and y, then we can use Equation 5 to write

6 $$\Delta u = g'(a)\,\Delta x + \varepsilon_1\,\Delta x = [g'(a) + \varepsilon_1]\,\Delta x$$

where $\varepsilon_1 \to 0$ as $\Delta x \to 0$. Similarly

7 $$\Delta y = f'(b)\,\Delta u + \varepsilon_2\,\Delta u = [f'(b) + \varepsilon_2]\,\Delta u$$

where $\varepsilon_2 \to 0$ as $\Delta u \to 0$. If we now substitute the expression for Δu from Equation 6 into Equation 7, we get

$$\Delta y = [f'(b) + \varepsilon_2][g'(a) + \varepsilon_1]\,\Delta x$$

so
$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = [f'(b) + \varepsilon_2][g'(a) + \varepsilon_1]$$

As $\Delta x \to 0$, Equation 6 shows that $\Delta u \to 0$. So both $\varepsilon_1 \to 0$ and $\varepsilon_2 \to 0$ as $\Delta x \to 0$. Therefore
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} [f'(b) + \varepsilon_2][g'(a) + \varepsilon_1]$$
$$= f'(b)\,g'(a) = f'(g(a))\,g'(a)$$

This proves the Chain Rule. ■

2.5 EXERCISES

1–6 Write the composite function in the form $f(g(x))$. [Identify the inner function $u = g(x)$ and the outer function $y = f(u)$.] Then find the derivative dy/dx.

1. $y = \sqrt[3]{1 + 4x}$
2. $y = (2x^3 + 5)^4$
3. $y = \tan \pi x$
4. $y = \sin(\cot x)$
5. $y = \sqrt{\sin x}$
6. $y = \sin \sqrt{x}$

7–46 Find the derivative of the function.

7. $F(x) = (5x^6 + 2x^3)^4$
8. $F(x) = (1 + x + x^2)^{99}$
9. $f(x) = \sqrt{5x + 1}$
10. $g(x) = (2 - \sin x)^{3/2}$
11. $A(t) = \dfrac{1}{(\cos t + \tan t)^2}$
12. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt[3]{x^2 - 1}}$
13. $f(\theta) = \cos(\theta^2)$
14. $g(\theta) = \cos^2 \theta$
15. $h(v) = v\sqrt[3]{1 + v^2}$
16. $f(t) = t \sin \pi t$
17. $f(x) = (2x - 3)^4(x^2 + x + 1)^5$
18. $g(x) = (x^2 + 1)^3(x^2 + 2)^6$
19. $h(t) = (t + 1)^{2/3}(2t^2 - 1)^3$
20. $F(t) = (3t - 1)^4(2t + 1)^{-3}$
21. $g(u) = \left(\dfrac{u^3 - 1}{u^3 + 1}\right)^8$
22. $y = \left(x + \dfrac{1}{x}\right)^5$
23. $y = \sqrt{\dfrac{x}{x + 1}}$
24. $U(y) = \left(\dfrac{y^4 + 1}{y^2 + 1}\right)^5$
25. $h(\theta) = \tan(\theta^2 \sin \theta)$
26. $f(t) = \sqrt{\dfrac{t}{t^2 + 4}}$
27. $y = \dfrac{\cos x}{\sqrt{1 + \sin x}}$
28. $F(t) = \dfrac{t^2}{\sqrt{t^3 + 1}}$
29. $H(r) = \dfrac{(r^2 - 1)^3}{(2r + 1)^5}$
30. $s(t) = \sqrt{\dfrac{1 + \sin t}{1 + \cos t}}$
31. $y = \cos(\sec 4x)$
32. $J(\theta) = \tan^2(n\theta)$
33. $y = \sin\sqrt{1 + x^2}$
34. $y = \sqrt{\sin(1 + x^2)}$
35. $y = \left(\dfrac{1 - \cos 2x}{1 + \cos 2x}\right)^4$
36. $y = x \sin \dfrac{1}{x}$
37. $y = \cot^2(\sin \theta)$
38. $y = \sin(t + \cos\sqrt{t}\,)$
39. $f(t) = \tan(\sec(\cos t))$
40. $g(u) = [(u^2 - 1)^6 - 3u]^4$
41. $y = \sqrt{x + \sqrt{x}}$
42. $y = \sqrt{x + \sqrt{x + \sqrt{x}}}$
43. $g(x) = (2r \sin rx + n)^p$
44. $y = \cos^4(\sin^3 x)$
45. $y = \cos\sqrt{\sin(\tan \pi x)}$
46. $y = [x + (x + \sin^2 x)^3]^4$

47–50 Find y' and y''.

47. $y = \cos(\sin 3\theta)$
48. $y = \dfrac{1}{(1 + \tan x)^2}$
49. $y = \sqrt{1 - \sec t}$
50. $y = \dfrac{4x}{\sqrt{x + 1}}$

51–54 Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve at the given point.

51. $y = (3x - 1)^{-6}$, $(0, 1)$
52. $y = \sqrt{1 + x^3}$, $(2, 3)$
53. $y = \sin(\sin x)$, $(\pi, 0)$
54. $y = \sin^2 x \cos x$, $(\pi/2, 0)$

55. (a) Find an equation of the tangent line to the curve $y = \tan(\pi x^2/4)$ at the point $(1, 1)$.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on the same screen.

56. (a) The curve $y = |x|/\sqrt{2 - x^2}$ is called a *bullet-nose curve*. Find an equation of the tangent line to this curve at the point $(1, 1)$.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on the same screen.

57. (a) If $f(x) = x\sqrt{2 - x^2}$, find $f'(x)$.
(b) Check to see that your answer to part (a) is reasonable by comparing the graphs of f and f'.

58. The function $f(x) = \sin(x + \sin 2x)$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$, arises in applications to frequency modulation (FM) synthesis.
(a) Use a graph of f produced by a graphing device to make a rough sketch of the graph of f'.
(b) Calculate $f'(x)$ and use this expression, with a calculator, to graph f'. Compare with your sketch in part (a).

59. Find all points on the graph of the function $f(x) = 2 \sin x + \sin^2 x$ at which the tangent line is horizontal.

60. At what point on the curve $y = \sqrt{1 + 2x}$ is the tangent line perpendicular to the line $6x + 2y = 1$?

61. If $F(x) = f(g(x))$, where $f(-2) = 8$, $f'(-2) = 4$, $f'(5) = 3$, $g(5) = -2$, and $g'(5) = 6$, find $F'(5)$.

62. If $h(x) = \sqrt{4 + 3f(x)}$, where $f(1) = 7$ and $f'(1) = 4$, find $h'(1)$.

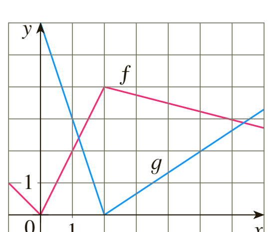
63. A table of values for f, g, f', and g' is given.

x	$f(x)$	$g(x)$	$f'(x)$	$g'(x)$
1	3	2	4	6
2	1	8	5	7
3	7	2	7	9

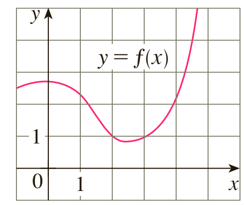
(a) If $h(x) = f(g(x))$, find $h'(1)$.
(b) If $H(x) = g(f(x))$, find $H'(1)$.

64. Let f and g be the functions in Exercise 63.
(a) If $F(x) = f(f(x))$, find $F'(2)$.
(b) If $G(x) = g(g(x))$, find $G'(3)$.

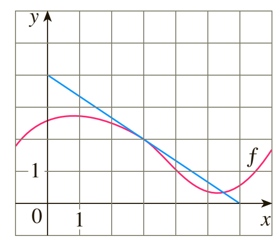
65. If f and g are the functions whose graphs are shown, let $u(x) = f(g(x))$, $v(x) = g(f(x))$, and $w(x) = g(g(x))$. Find each derivative, if it exists. If it does not exist, explain why.
(a) $u'(1)$ (b) $v'(1)$ (c) $w'(1)$



66. If f is the function whose graph is shown, let $h(x) = f(f(x))$ and $g(x) = f(x^2)$. Use the graph of f to estimate the value of each derivative.
(a) $h'(2)$ (b) $g'(2)$



67. If $g(x) = \sqrt{f(x)}$, where the graph of f is shown, evaluate $g'(3)$.



68. Suppose f is differentiable on $\mathbb{R}$ and α is a real number. Let $F(x) = f(x^\alpha)$ and $G(x) = [f(x)]^\alpha$. Find expressions for (a) $F'(x)$ and (b) $G'(x)$.

69. Let $r(x) = f(g(h(x)))$, where $h(1) = 2$, $g(2) = 3$, $h'(1) = 4$, $g'(2) = 5$, and $f'(3) = 6$. Find $r'(1)$.

70. If g is a twice differentiable function and $f(x) = xg(x^2)$, find f'' in terms of g, g', and g''.

71. If $F(x) = f(3f(4f(x)))$, where $f(0) = 0$ and $f'(0) = 2$, find $F'(0)$.

72. If $F(x) = f(xf(xf(x)))$, where $f(1) = 2$, $f(2) = 3$, $f'(1) = 4$, $f'(2) = 5$, and $f'(3) = 6$, find $F'(1)$.

73–74 Find the given derivative by finding the first few derivatives and observing the pattern that occurs.

73. $D^{103} \cos 2x$ **74.** $D^{35}\, x \sin \pi x$

---

75. The displacement of a particle on a vibrating string is given by the equation $s(t) = 10 + \frac{1}{4}\sin(10\pi t)$ where s is measured in centimeters and t in seconds. Find the velocity of the particle after t seconds.

76. If the equation of motion of a particle is given by $s = A\cos(\omega t + \delta)$, the particle is said to undergo *simple harmonic motion*.
(a) Find the velocity of the particle at time t.
(b) When is the velocity 0?

77. A Cepheid variable star is a star whose brightness alternately increases and decreases. The most easily visible such star is

Delta Cephei, for which the interval between times of maximum brightness is 5.4 days. The average brightness of this star is 4.0 and its brightness changes by ± 0.35. In view of these data, the brightness of Delta Cephei at time t, where t is measured in days, has been modeled by the function

$$B(t) = 4.0 + 0.35 \sin\left(\frac{2\pi t}{5.4}\right)$$

(a) Find the rate of change of the brightness after t days.
(b) Find, correct to two decimal places, the rate of increase after one day.

78. In Example 1.3.4 we arrived at a model for the length of daylight (in hours) in Philadelphia on the tth day of the year:

$$L(t) = 12 + 2.8 \sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{365}(t - 80)\right]$$

Use this model to compare how the number of hours of daylight is increasing in Philadelphia on March 21 and May 21.

79. A particle moves along a straight line with displacement $s(t)$, velocity $v(t)$, and acceleration $a(t)$. Show that

$$a(t) = v(t)\,\frac{dv}{ds}$$

Explain the difference between the meanings of the derivatives dv/dt and dv/ds.

80. Air is being pumped into a spherical weather balloon. At any time t, the volume of the balloon is $V(t)$ and its radius is $r(t)$.
(a) What do the derivatives dV/dr and dV/dt represent?
(b) Express dV/dt in terms of dr/dt.

CAS **81.** Computer algebra systems have commands that differentiate functions, but the form of the answer may not be convenient and so further commands may be necessary to simplify the answer.
(a) Use a CAS to find the derivative in Example 5 and compare with the answer in that example. Then use the simplify command and compare again.
(b) Use a CAS to find the derivative in Example 6. What happens if you use the simplify command? What happens if you use the factor command? Which form of the answer would be best for locating horizontal tangents?

CAS **82.** (a) Use a CAS to differentiate the function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{x^4 - x + 1}{x^4 + x + 1}}$$

and to simplify the result.
(b) Where does the graph of f have horizontal tangents?
(c) Graph f and f' on the same screen. Are the graphs consistent with your answer to part (b)?

83. Use the Chain Rule to prove the following.
(a) The derivative of an even function is an odd function.
(b) The derivative of an odd function is an even function.

84. Use the Chain Rule and the Product Rule to give an alternative proof of the Quotient Rule.
[*Hint:* Write $f(x)/g(x) = f(x)[g(x)]^{-1}$.]

85. (a) If n is a positive integer, prove that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin^n x \cos nx) = n \sin^{n-1} x \cos(n + 1)x$$

(b) Find a formula for the derivative of $y = \cos^n x \cos nx$ that is similar to the one in part (a).

86. Suppose $y = f(x)$ is a curve that always lies above the x-axis and never has a horizontal tangent, where f is differentiable everywhere. For what value of y is the rate of change of y^5 with respect to x eighty times the rate of change of y with respect to x?

87. Use the Chain Rule to show that if θ is measured in degrees, then

$$\frac{d}{d\theta}(\sin\theta) = \frac{\pi}{180}\cos\theta$$

(This gives one reason for the convention that radian measure is always used when dealing with trigonometric functions in calculus: the differentiation formulas would not be as simple if we used degree measure.)

88. (a) Write $|x| = \sqrt{x^2}$ and use the Chain Rule to show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}|x| = \frac{x}{|x|}$$

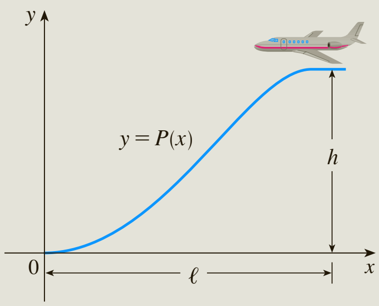
(b) If $f(x) = |\sin x|$, find $f'(x)$ and sketch the graphs of f and f'. Where is f not differentiable?
(c) If $g(x) = \sin|x|$, find $g'(x)$ and sketch the graphs of g and g'. Where is g not differentiable?

89. If $y = f(u)$ and $u = g(x)$, where f and g are twice differentiable functions, show that

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{d^2y}{du^2}\left(\frac{du}{dx}\right)^2 + \frac{dy}{du}\frac{d^2u}{dx^2}$$

90. If $y = f(u)$ and $u = g(x)$, where f and g possess third derivatives, find a formula for d^3y/dx^3 similar to the one given in Exercise 89.

APPLIED PROJECT WHERE SHOULD A PILOT START DESCENT?



An approach path for an aircraft landing is shown in the figure and satisfies the following conditions:

(i) The cruising altitude is h when descent starts at a horizontal distance ℓ from touchdown at the origin.

(ii) The pilot must maintain a constant horizontal speed v throughout descent.

(iii) The absolute value of the vertical acceleration should not exceed a constant k (which is much less than the acceleration due to gravity).

1. Find a cubic polynomial $P(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ that satisfies condition (i) by imposing suitable conditions on $P(x)$ and $P'(x)$ at the start of descent and at touchdown.

2. Use conditions (ii) and (iii) to show that

$$\frac{6hv^2}{\ell^2} \leqslant k$$

3. Suppose that an airline decides not to allow vertical acceleration of a plane to exceed $k = 860$ mi/h^2. If the cruising altitude of a plane is 35,000 ft and the speed is 300 mi/h, how far away from the airport should the pilot start descent?

4. Graph the approach path if the conditions stated in Problem 3 are satisfied.

2.6 Implicit Differentiation

The functions that we have met so far can be described by expressing one variable explicitly in terms of another variable—for example,

$$y = \sqrt{x^3 + 1} \qquad \text{or} \qquad y = x \sin x$$

or, in general, $y = f(x)$. Some functions, however, are defined implicitly by a relation between x and y such as

$$\boxed{1} \qquad x^2 + y^2 = 25$$

or

$$\boxed{2} \qquad x^3 + y^3 = 6xy$$

In some cases it is possible to solve such an equation for y as an explicit function (or several functions) of x. For instance, if we solve Equation 1 for y, we get $y = \pm\sqrt{25 - x^2}$, so two of the functions determined by the implicit Equation 1 are $f(x) = \sqrt{25 - x^2}$ and $g(x) = -\sqrt{25 - x^2}$. The graphs of f and g are the upper and lower semicircles of the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 25$. (See Figure 1.)

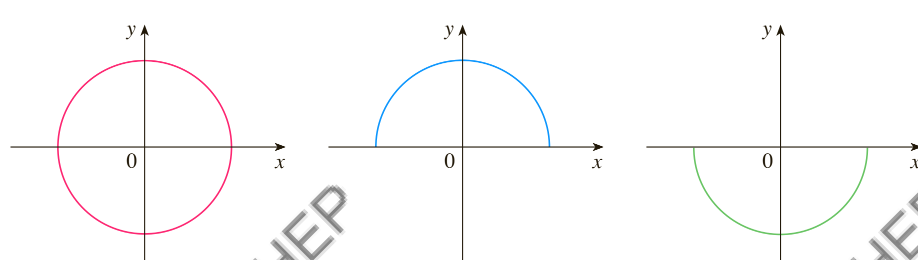


FIGURE 1 (a) $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ (b) $f(x) = \sqrt{25 - x^2}$ (c) $g(x) = -\sqrt{25 - x^2}$

It's not easy to solve Equation 2 for y explicitly as a function of x by hand. (A computer algebra system has no trouble, but the expressions it obtains are very complicated.) Nonetheless, (2) is the equation of a curve called the **folium of Descartes** shown in Figure 2 and it implicitly defines y as several functions of x. The graphs of three such functions are shown in Figure 3. When we say that f is a function defined implicitly by Equation 2, we mean that the equation

$$x^3 + [f(x)]^3 = 6x f(x)$$

is true for all values of x in the domain of f.

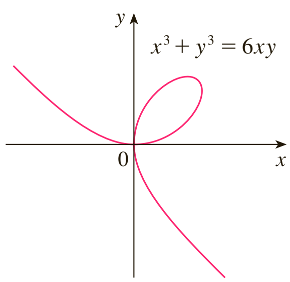


FIGURE 2 The folium of Descartes

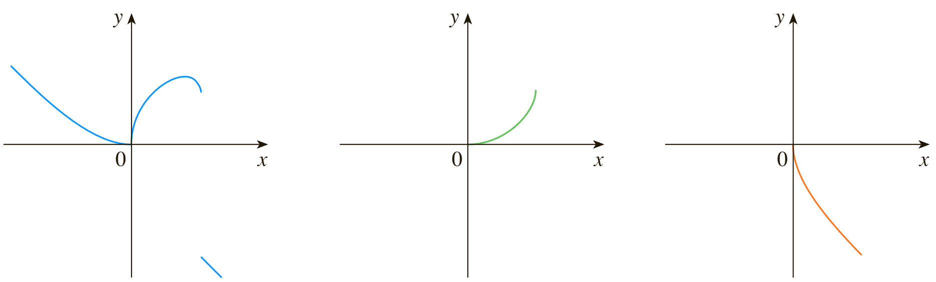


FIGURE 3 Graphs of three functions defined by the folium of Descartes

Fortunately, we don't need to solve an equation for y in terms of x in order to find the derivative of y. Instead we can use the method of **implicit differentiation**. This consists of differentiating both sides of the equation with respect to x and then solving the resulting equation for y'. In the examples and exercises of this section it is always assumed that the given equation determines y implicitly as a differentiable function of x so that the method of implicit differentiation can be applied.

EXAMPLE 1

(a) If $x^2 + y^2 = 25$, find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$.

(b) Find an equation of the tangent to the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ at the point (3, 4).

SOLUTION 1

(a) Differentiate both sides of the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 25$:

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^2 + y^2) = \frac{d}{dx}(25)$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^2) + \frac{d}{dx}(y^2) = 0$$

Remembering that y is a function of x and using the Chain Rule, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(y^2) = \frac{d}{dy}(y^2)\frac{dy}{dx} = 2y\frac{dy}{dx}$$

Thus
$$2x + 2y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$$

Now we solve this equation for dy/dx:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y}$$

(b) At the point (3, 4) we have $x = 3$ and $y = 4$, so

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{3}{4}$$

An equation of the tangent to the circle at (3, 4) is therefore

$$y - 4 = -\tfrac{3}{4}(x - 3) \qquad \text{or} \qquad 3x + 4y = 25$$

SOLUTION 2

(b) Solving the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ for y, we get $y = \pm\sqrt{25 - x^2}$. The point (3, 4) lies on the upper semicircle $y = \sqrt{25 - x^2}$ and so we consider the function $f(x) = \sqrt{25 - x^2}$. Differentiating f using the Chain Rule, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \tfrac{1}{2}(25 - x^2)^{-1/2} \frac{d}{dx}(25 - x^2) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(25 - x^2)^{-1/2}(-2x) = -\frac{x}{\sqrt{25 - x^2}} \end{aligned}$$

Example 1 illustrates that even when it is possible to solve an equation explicitly for y in terms of x, it may be easier to use implicit differentiation.

So
$$f'(3) = -\frac{3}{\sqrt{25 - 3^2}} = -\frac{3}{4}$$

and, as in Solution 1, an equation of the tangent is $3x + 4y = 25$. ■

NOTE 1 The formula $dy/dx = -x/y$ in Solution 1 gives the derivative in terms of both x and y. It is correct no matter which function y is determined by the given equation. For instance, for $y = f(x) = \sqrt{25 - x^2}$ we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y} = -\frac{x}{\sqrt{25 - x^2}}$$

whereas for $y = g(x) = -\sqrt{25 - x^2}$ we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{y} = -\frac{x}{-\sqrt{25 - x^2}} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{25 - x^2}}$$

EXAMPLE 2

(a) Find y' if $x^3 + y^3 = 6xy$.
(b) Find the tangent to the folium of Descartes $x^3 + y^3 = 6xy$ at the point (3, 3).
(c) At what point in the first quadrant is the tangent line horizontal?

SOLUTION

(a) Differentiating both sides of $x^3 + y^3 = 6xy$ with respect to x, regarding y as a function of x, and using the Chain Rule on the term y^3 and the Product Rule on the term $6xy$, we get

$$3x^2 + 3y^2y' = 6xy' + 6y$$

or
$$x^2 + y^2y' = 2xy' + 2y$$

We now solve for y':

$$y^2y' - 2xy' = 2y - x^2$$

$$(y^2 - 2x)y' = 2y - x^2$$

$$y' = \frac{2y - x^2}{y^2 - 2x}$$

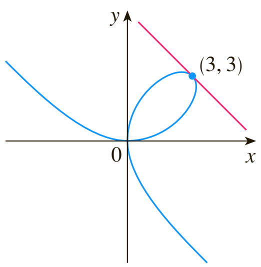


FIGURE 4

(b) When $x = y = 3$,

$$y' = \frac{2 \cdot 3 - 3^2}{3^2 - 2 \cdot 3} = -1$$

and a glance at Figure 4 confirms that this is a reasonable value for the slope at (3, 3). So an equation of the tangent to the folium at (3, 3) is

$$y - 3 = -1(x - 3) \qquad \text{or} \qquad x + y = 6$$

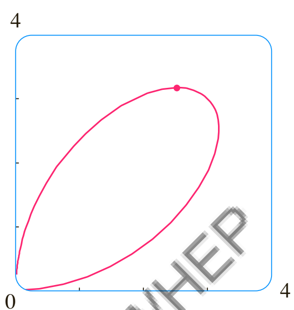


FIGURE 5

(c) The tangent line is horizontal if $y' = 0$. Using the expression for y' from part (a), we see that $y' = 0$ when $2y - x^2 = 0$ (provided that $y^2 - 2x \neq 0$). Substituting $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$ in the equation of the curve, we get

$$x^3 + \left(\tfrac{1}{2}x^2\right)^3 = 6x\left(\tfrac{1}{2}x^2\right)$$

which simplifies to $x^6 = 16x^3$. Since $x \neq 0$ in the first quadrant, we have $x^3 = 16$. If $x = 16^{1/3} = 2^{4/3}$, then $y = \frac{1}{2}(2^{8/3}) = 2^{5/3}$. Thus the tangent is horizontal at $(2^{4/3}, 2^{5/3})$, which is approximately (2.5198, 3.1748). Looking at Figure 5, we see that our answer is reasonable. ■

NOTE 2 There is a formula for the three roots of a cubic equation that is like the quadratic formula but much more complicated. If we use this formula (or a computer algebra system) to solve the equation $x^3 + y^3 = 6xy$ for y in terms of x, we get three functions determined by the equation:

$$y = f(x) = \sqrt[3]{-\tfrac{1}{2}x^3 + \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}x^6 - 8x^3}} + \sqrt[3]{-\tfrac{1}{2}x^3 - \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}x^6 - 8x^3}}$$

and

$$y = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[-f(x) \pm \sqrt{-3}\left(\sqrt[3]{-\tfrac{1}{2}x^3 + \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}x^6 - 8x^3}} - \sqrt[3]{-\tfrac{1}{2}x^3 - \sqrt{\tfrac{1}{4}x^6 - 8x^3}}\right)\right]$$

(These are the three functions whose graphs are shown in Figure 3.) You can see that the method of implicit differentiation saves an enormous amount of work in cases such as this. Moreover, implicit differentiation works just as easily for equations such as

$$y^5 + 3x^2y^2 + 5x^4 = 12$$

for which it is *impossible* to find a similar expression for y in terms of x.

Abel and Galois

The Norwegian mathematician Niels Abel proved in 1824 that no general formula can be given for the roots of a fifth-degree equation in terms of radicals. Later the French mathematician Evariste Galois proved that it is impossible to find a general formula for the roots of an nth-degree equation (in terms of algebraic operations on the coefficients) if n is any integer larger than 4.

EXAMPLE 3 Find y' if $\sin(x + y) = y^2 \cos x$.

SOLUTION Differentiating implicitly with respect to x and remembering that y is a function of x, we get

$$\cos(x + y) \cdot (1 + y') = y^2(-\sin x) + (\cos x)(2yy')$$

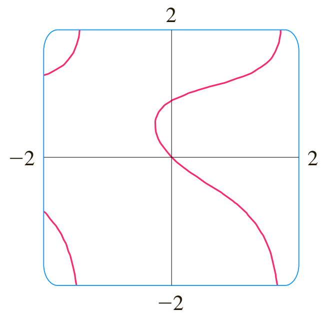


FIGURE 6

(Note that we have used the Chain Rule on the left side and the Product Rule and Chain Rule on the right side.) If we collect the terms that involve y', we get

$$\cos(x + y) + y^2 \sin x = (2y \cos x)y' - \cos(x + y) \cdot y'$$

So
$$y' = \frac{y^2 \sin x + \cos(x + y)}{2y \cos x - \cos(x + y)}$$

Figure 6, drawn with the implicit-plotting command of a computer algebra system, shows part of the curve $\sin(x + y) = y^2 \cos x$. As a check on our calculation, notice that $y' = -1$ when $x = y = 0$ and it appears from the graph that the slope is approximately -1 at the origin. ■

Figures 7, 8, and 9 show three more curves produced by a computer algebra system with an implicit-plotting command. In Exercises 41–42 you will have an opportunity to create and examine unusual curves of this nature.

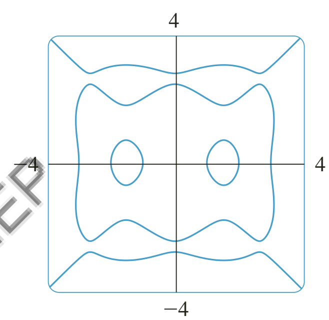


FIGURE 7
$(x^2 - 1)(x^2 - 4)(x^2 - 9)$
$= y^2(y^2 - 4)(y^2 - 9)$

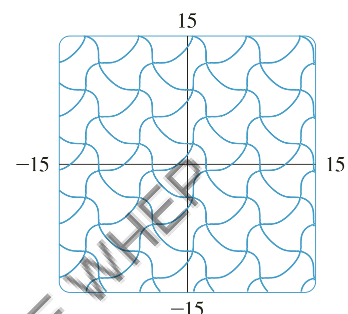


FIGURE 8
$\cos(x - \sin y) = \sin(y - \sin x)$

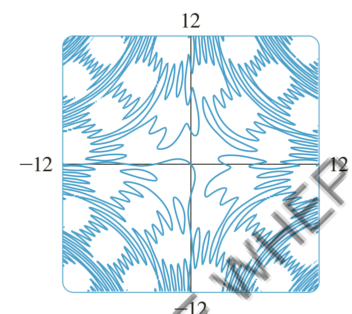


FIGURE 9
$\sin(xy) = \sin x + \sin y$

The following example shows how to find the second derivative of a function that is defined implicitly.

EXAMPLE 4 Find y'' if $x^4 + y^4 = 16$.

SOLUTION Differentiating the equation implicitly with respect to x, we get

$$4x^3 + 4y^3y' = 0$$

Solving for y' gives

$$\boxed{3} \qquad y' = -\frac{x^3}{y^3}$$

To find y'' we differentiate this expression for y' using the Quotient Rule and remembering that y is a function of x:

$$y'' = \frac{d}{dx}\left(-\frac{x^3}{y^3}\right) = -\frac{y^3\,(d/dx)(x^3) - x^3\,(d/dx)(y^3)}{(y^3)^2}$$

$$= -\frac{y^3 \cdot 3x^2 - x^3(3y^2y')}{y^6}$$

If we now substitute Equation 3 into this expression, we get

$$y'' = -\frac{3x^2y^3 - 3x^3y^2\left(-\dfrac{x^3}{y^3}\right)}{y^6}$$

$$= -\frac{3(x^2y^4 + x^6)}{y^7} = -\frac{3x^2(y^4 + x^4)}{y^7}$$

But the values of x and y must satisfy the original equation $x^4 + y^4 = 16$. So the answer simplifies to

$$y'' = -\frac{3x^2(16)}{y^7} = -48\,\frac{x^2}{y^7}$$ ■

Figure 10 shows the graph of the curve $x^4 + y^4 = 16$ of Example 4. Notice that it's a stretched and flattened version of the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$. For this reason it's sometimes called a *fat circle*. It starts out very steep on the left but quickly becomes very flat. This can be seen from the expression

$$y' = -\frac{x^3}{y^3} = -\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^3$$

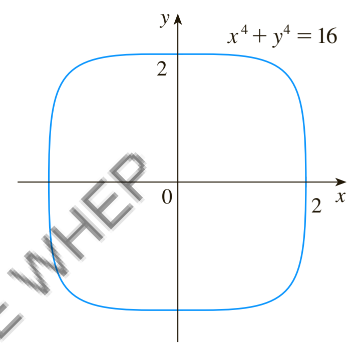


FIGURE 10

2.6 EXERCISES

1–4
(a) Find y' by implicit differentiation.
(b) Solve the equation explicitly for y and differentiate to get y' in terms of x.
(c) Check that your solutions to parts (a) and (b) are consistent by substituting the expression for y into your solution for part (a).

1. $9x^2 - y^2 = 1$

2. $2x^2 + x + xy = 1$

3. $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} = 1$

4. $\dfrac{2}{x} - \dfrac{1}{y} = 4$

5–20 Find dy/dx by implicit differentiation.

5. $x^2 - 4xy + y^2 = 4$

6. $2x^2 + xy - y^2 = 2$

7. $x^4 + x^2y^2 + y^3 = 5$

8. $x^3 - xy^2 + y^3 = 1$

9. $\dfrac{x^2}{x + y} = y^2 + 1$

10. $y^5 + x^2y^3 = 1 + x^4y$

11. $y\cos x = x^2 + y^2$

12. $\cos(xy) = 1 + \sin y$

13. $\sqrt{x + y} = x^4 + y^4$

14. $y\sin(x^2) = x\sin(y^2)$

15. $\tan(x/y) = x + y$

16. $xy = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$

17. $\sqrt{xy} = 1 + x^2y$

18. $x\sin y + y\sin x = 1$

19. $\sin(xy) = \cos(x + y)$

20. $\tan(x - y) = \dfrac{y}{1 + x^2}$

21. If $f(x) + x^2[f(x)]^3 = 10$ and $f(1) = 2$, find $f'(1)$.

22. If $g(x) + x\sin g(x) = x^2$, find $g'(0)$.

23–24 Regard y as the independent variable and x as the dependent variable and use implicit differentiation to find dx/dy.

23. $x^4y^2 - x^3y + 2xy^3 = 0$

24. $y\sec x = x\tan y$

25–32 Use implicit differentiation to find an equation of the tangent line to the curve at the given point.

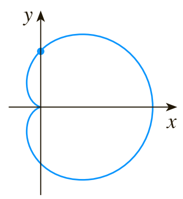
25. $y\sin 2x = x\cos 2y$, $(\pi/2, \pi/4)$

26. $\sin(x + y) = 2x - 2y$, (π, π)

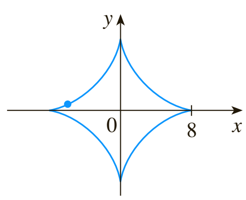
27. $x^2 - xy - y^2 = 1$, $(2, 1)$ (hyperbola)

28. $x^2 + 2xy + 4y^2 = 12$, $(2, 1)$ (ellipse)

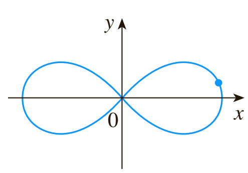
29. $x^2 + y^2 = (2x^2 + 2y^2 - x)^2$, $\left(0, \frac{1}{2}\right)$ (cardioid)



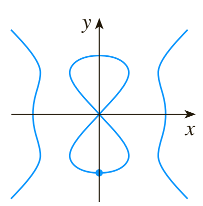
30. $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = 4$, $\left(-3\sqrt{3}, 1\right)$ (astroid)



31. $2(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 25(x^2 - y^2)$, $(3, 1)$ (lemniscate)



32. $y^2(y^2 - 4) = x^2(x^2 - 5)$, $(0, -2)$ (devil's curve)



33. (a) The curve with equation $y^2 = 5x^4 - x^2$ is called a **kampyle of Eudoxus**. Find an equation of the tangent line to this curve at the point $(1, 2)$.

(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the curve and the tangent line on a common screen. (If your graphing device will graph implicitly defined curves, then use that capability. If not, you can still graph this curve by graphing its upper and lower halves separately.)

34. (a) The curve with equation $y^2 = x^3 + 3x^2$ is called the **Tschirnhausen cubic**. Find an equation of the tangent line to this curve at the point $(1, -2)$.

(b) At what points does this curve have horizontal tangents?

(c) Illustrate parts (a) and (b) by graphing the curve and the tangent lines on a common screen.

35–38 Find y'' by implicit differentiation.

35. $x^2 + 4y^2 = 4$

36. $x^2 + xy + y^2 = 3$

37. $\sin y + \cos x = 1$

38. $x^3 - y^3 = 7$

39. If $xy + y^3 = 1$, find the value of y'' at the point where $x = 0$.

40. If $x^2 + xy + y^3 = 1$, find the value of y''' at the point where $x = 1$.

CAS **41.** Fanciful shapes can be created by using the implicit plotting capabilities of computer algebra systems.

(a) Graph the curve with equation

$$y(y^2 - 1)(y - 2) = x(x - 1)(x - 2)$$

At how many points does this curve have horizontal tangents? Estimate the x-coordinates of these points.

(b) Find equations of the tangent lines at the points $(0, 1)$ and $(0, 2)$.

(c) Find the exact x-coordinates of the points in part (a).

(d) Create even more fanciful curves by modifying the equation in part (a).

CAS **42.** (a) The curve with equation

$$2y^3 + y^2 - y^5 = x^4 - 2x^3 + x^2$$

has been likened to a bouncing wagon. Use a computer algebra system to graph this curve and discover why.

(b) At how many points does this curve have horizontal tangent lines? Find the x-coordinates of these points.

43. Find the points on the lemniscate in Exercise 31 where the tangent is horizontal.

44. Show by implicit differentiation that the tangent to the ellipse

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

at the point (x_0, y_0) is

$$\frac{x_0 x}{a^2} + \frac{y_0 y}{b^2} = 1$$

45. Find an equation of the tangent line to the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

at the point (x_0, y_0).

46. Show that the sum of the x- and y-intercepts of any tangent line to the curve $\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{y} = \sqrt{c}$ is equal to c.

47. Show, using implicit differentiation, that any tangent line at a point P to a circle with center O is perpendicular to the radius OP.

48. The Power Rule can be proved using implicit differentiation for the case where n is a rational number, $n = p/q$, and $y = f(x) = x^n$ is assumed beforehand to be a differentiable function. If $y = x^{p/q}$, then $y^q = x^p$. Use implicit differentiation to show that

$$y' = \frac{p}{q} x^{(p/q)-1}$$

49–52 Two curves are **orthogonal** if their tangent lines are perpendicular at each point of intersection. Show that the given families of curves are **orthogonal trajectories** of each other; that is, every curve in one family is orthogonal to every curve in the other family. Sketch both families of curves on the same axes.

49. $x^2 + y^2 = r^2, \quad ax + by = 0$

50. $x^2 + y^2 = ax, \quad x^2 + y^2 = by$

51. $y = cx^2, \quad x^2 + 2y^2 = k$

52. $y = ax^3, \quad x^2 + 3y^2 = b$

---

53. Show that the ellipse $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$ and the hyperbola $x^2/A^2 - y^2/B^2 = 1$ are orthogonal trajectories if $A^2 < a^2$ and $a^2 - b^2 = A^2 + B^2$ (so the ellipse and hyperbola have the same foci).

54. Find the value of the number a such that the families of curves $y = (x + c)^{-1}$ and $y = a(x + k)^{1/3}$ are orthogonal trajectories.

55. (a) The *van der Waals equation* for n moles of a gas is

$$\left(P + \frac{n^2 a}{V^2}\right)(V - nb) = nRT$$

where P is the pressure, V is the volume, and T is the temperature of the gas. The constant R is the universal gas constant and a and b are positive constants that are characteristic of a particular gas. If T remains constant, use implicit differentiation to find dV/dP.

(b) Find the rate of change of volume with respect to pressure of 1 mole of carbon dioxide at a volume of $V = 10$ L and a pressure of $P = 2.5$ atm. Use $a = 3.592 \text{ L}^2\text{-atm/mole}^2$ and $b = 0.04267$ L/mole.

56. (a) Use implicit differentiation to find y' if

$$x^2 + xy + y^2 + 1 = 0$$

(b) Plot the curve in part (a). What do you see? Prove that what you see is correct.

(c) In view of part (b), what can you say about the expression for y' that you found in part (a)?

57. The equation $x^2 - xy + y^2 = 3$ represents a "rotated ellipse," that is, an ellipse whose axes are not parallel to the coordinate axes. Find the points at which this ellipse crosses the x-axis and show that the tangent lines at these points are parallel.

58. (a) Where does the normal line to the ellipse $x^2 - xy + y^2 = 3$ at the point $(-1, 1)$ intersect the ellipse a second time?

(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing the ellipse and the normal line.

59. Find all points on the curve $x^2y^2 + xy = 2$ where the slope of the tangent line is -1.

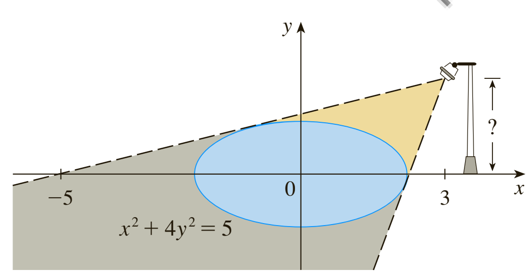
60. Find equations of both the tangent lines to the ellipse $x^2 + 4y^2 = 36$ that pass through the point $(12, 3)$.

61. The **Bessel function** of order 0, $y = J(x)$, satisfies the differential equation $xy'' + y' + xy = 0$ for all values of x and its value at 0 is $J(0) = 1$.

(a) Find $J'(0)$.

(b) Use implicit differentiation to find $J''(0)$.

62. The figure shows a lamp located three units to the right of the y-axis and a shadow created by the elliptical region $x^2 + 4y^2 \leqslant 5$. If the point $(-5, 0)$ is on the edge of the shadow, how far above the x-axis is the lamp located?



LABORATORY PROJECT — FAMILIES OF IMPLICIT CURVES

In this project you will explore the changing shapes of implicitly defined curves as you vary the constants in a family, and determine which features are common to all members of the family.

1. Consider the family of curves

$$y^2 - 2x^2(x + 8) = c[(y + 1)^2(y + 9) - x^2]$$

(a) By graphing the curves with $c = 0$ and $c = 2$, determine how many points of intersection there are. (You might have to zoom in to find all of them.)

(b) Now add the curves with $c = 5$ and $c = 10$ to your graphs in part (a). What do you notice? What about other values of c?

2. (a) Graph several members of the family of curves

$$x^2 + y^2 + cx^2y^2 = 1$$

Describe how the graph changes as you change the value of c.

(b) What happens to the curve when $c = -1$? Describe what appears on the screen. Can you prove it algebraically?

(c) Find y' by implicit differentiation. For the case $c = -1$, is your expression for y' consistent with what you discovered in part (b)?

2.7 Rates of Change in the Natural and Social Sciences

We know that if $y = f(x)$, then the derivative dy/dx can be interpreted as the rate of change of y with respect to x. In this section we examine some of the applications of this idea to physics, chemistry, biology, economics, and other sciences.

Let's recall from Section 2.1 the basic idea behind rates of change. If x changes from x_1 to x_2, then the change in x is

$$\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$$

and the corresponding change in y is

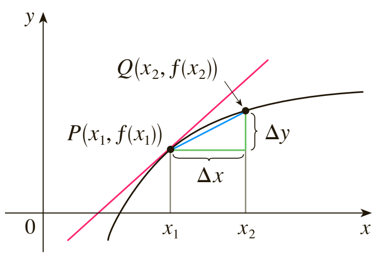
$$\Delta y = f(x_2) - f(x_1)$$

The difference quotient

$$\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1}$$

is **the average rate of change of y with respect to x** over the interval $[x_1, x_2]$ and can be interpreted as the slope of the secant line PQ in Figure 1. Its limit as $\Delta x \to 0$ is the derivative $f'(x_1)$, which can therefore be interpreted as the **instantaneous rate of change of y with respect to x** or the slope of the tangent line at $P(x_1, f(x_1))$. Using Leibniz notation, we write the process in the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$$



m_{PQ} = average rate of change

$m = f'(x_1)$ = instantaneous rate of change

FIGURE 1

Whenever the function $y = f(x)$ has a specific interpretation in one of the sciences, its derivative will have a specific interpretation as a rate of change. (As we discussed in Section 2.1, the units for dy/dx are the units for y divided by the units for x.) We now look at some of these interpretations in the natural and social sciences.

Physics

If $s = f(t)$ is the position function of a particle that is moving in a straight line, then $\Delta s/\Delta t$ represents the average velocity over a time period Δt, and $v = ds/dt$ represents the instantaneous **velocity** (the rate of change of displacement with respect to time). The instantaneous rate of change of velocity with respect to time is **acceleration**: $a(t) = v'(t) = s''(t)$. This was discussed in Sections 2.1 and 2.2, but now that we know the differentiation formulas, we are able to solve problems involving the motion of objects more easily.

EXAMPLE 1 The position of a particle is given by the equation

$$s = f(t) = t^3 - 6t^2 + 9t$$

where t is measured in seconds and s in meters.
(a) Find the velocity at time t.
(b) What is the velocity after 2 s? After 4 s?
(c) When is the particle at rest?
(d) When is the particle moving forward (that is, in the positive direction)?
(e) Draw a diagram to represent the motion of the particle.
(f) Find the total distance traveled by the particle during the first five seconds.
(g) Find the acceleration at time t and after 4 s.
(h) Graph the position, velocity, and acceleration functions for $0 \leqslant t \leqslant 5$.
(i) When is the particle speeding up? When is it slowing down?

SOLUTION
(a) The velocity function is the derivative of the position function.

$$s = f(t) = t^3 - 6t^2 + 9t$$

$$v(t) = \frac{ds}{dt} = 3t^2 - 12t + 9$$

(b) The velocity after 2 s means the instantaneous velocity when $t = 2$, that is,

$$v(2) = \left.\frac{ds}{dt}\right|_{t=2} = 3(2)^2 - 12(2) + 9 = -3 \text{ m/s}$$

The velocity after 4 s is

$$v(4) = 3(4)^2 - 12(4) + 9 = 9 \text{ m/s}$$

(c) The particle is at rest when $v(t) = 0$, that is,

$$3t^2 - 12t + 9 = 3(t^2 - 4t + 3) = 3(t - 1)(t - 3) = 0$$

and this is true when $t = 1$ or $t = 3$. Thus the particle is at rest after 1 s and after 3 s.
(d) The particle moves in the positive direction when $v(t) > 0$, that is,

$$3t^2 - 12t + 9 = 3(t - 1)(t - 3) > 0$$

This inequality is true when both factors are positive ($t > 3$) or when both factors are negative ($t < 1$). Thus the particle moves in the positive direction in the time intervals $t < 1$ and $t > 3$. It moves backward (in the negative direction) when $1 < t < 3$.

(e) Using the information from part (d) we make a schematic sketch in Figure 2 of the motion of the particle back and forth along a line (the s-axis).

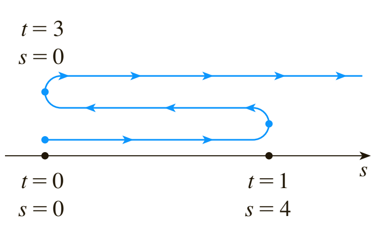


FIGURE 2

(f) Because of what we learned in parts (d) and (e), we need to calculate the distances traveled during the time intervals [0, 1], [1, 3], and [3, 5] separately.

The distance traveled in the first second is

$$|f(1) - f(0)| = |4 - 0| = 4 \text{ m}$$

From $t = 1$ to $t = 3$ the distance traveled is

$$|f(3) - f(1)| = |0 - 4| = 4 \text{ m}$$

From $t = 3$ to $t = 5$ the distance traveled is

$$|f(5) - f(3)| = |20 - 0| = 20 \text{ m}$$

The total distance is $4 + 4 + 20 = 28$ m.

(g) The acceleration is the derivative of the velocity function:

$$a(t) = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = \frac{dv}{dt} = 6t - 12$$

$$a(4) = 6(4) - 12 = 12 \text{ m/s}^2$$

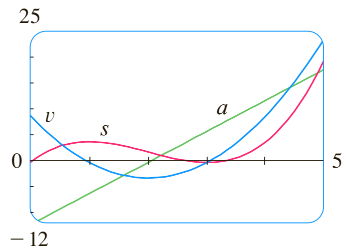


FIGURE 3

(h) Figure 3 shows the graphs of s, v, and a.

(i) The particle speeds up when the velocity is positive and increasing (v and a are both positive) and also when the velocity is negative and decreasing (v and a are both negative). In other words, the particle speeds up when the velocity and acceleration have the same sign. (The particle is pushed in the same direction it is moving.) From Figure 3 we see that this happens when $1 < t < 2$ and when $t > 3$. The particle slows down when v and a have opposite signs, that is, when $0 \leqslant t < 1$ and when $2 < t < 3$. Figure 4 summarizes the motion of the particle.

TEC In Module 2.7 you can see an animation of Figure 4 with an expression for s that you can choose yourself.

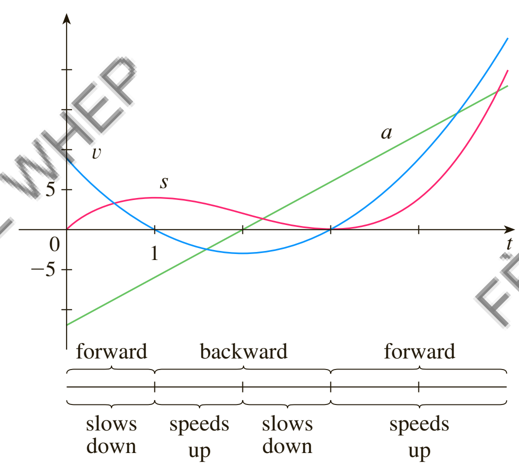


FIGURE 4

■

EXAMPLE 2 If a rod or piece of wire is homogeneous, then its linear density is uniform and is defined as the mass per unit length ($\rho = m/l$) and measured in kilograms per meter. Suppose, however, that the rod is not homogeneous but that its mass measured from its left end to a point x is $m = f(x)$, as shown in Figure 5.

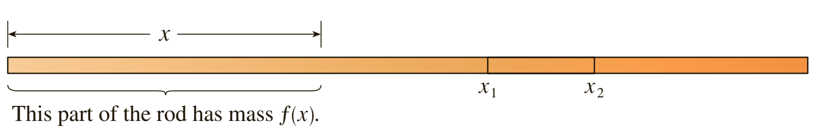


FIGURE 5

The mass of the part of the rod that lies between $x = x_1$ and $x = x_2$ is given by $\Delta m = f(x_2) - f(x_1)$, so the average density of that part of the rod is

$$\text{average density} = \frac{\Delta m}{\Delta x} = \frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1}$$

If we now let $\Delta x \to 0$ (that is, $x_2 \to x_1$), we are computing the average density over smaller and smaller intervals. The **linear density** ρ at x_1 is the limit of these average densities as $\Delta x \to 0$; that is, the linear density is the rate of change of mass with respect to length. Symbolically,

$$\rho = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta m}{\Delta x} = \frac{dm}{dx}$$

Thus the linear density of the rod is the derivative of mass with respect to length.

For instance, if $m = f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, where x is measured in meters and m in kilograms, then the average density of the part of the rod given by $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 1.2$ is

$$\frac{\Delta m}{\Delta x} = \frac{f(1.2) - f(1)}{1.2 - 1} = \frac{\sqrt{1.2} - 1}{0.2} \approx 0.48 \text{ kg/m}$$

while the density right at $x = 1$ is

$$\rho = \left.\frac{dm}{dx}\right|_{x=1} = \left.\frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}\right|_{x=1} = 0.50 \text{ kg/m}$$ ■

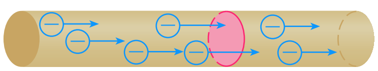


FIGURE 6

EXAMPLE 3 A current exists whenever electric charges move. Figure 6 shows part of a wire and electrons moving through a plane surface, shaded red. If ΔQ is the net charge that passes through this surface during a time period Δt, then the average current during this time interval is defined as

$$\text{average current} = \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} = \frac{Q_2 - Q_1}{t_2 - t_1}$$

If we take the limit of this average current over smaller and smaller time intervals, we get what is called the **current** I at a given time t_1:

$$I = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta Q}{\Delta t} = \frac{dQ}{dt}$$

Thus the current is the rate at which charge flows through a surface. It is measured in units of charge per unit time (often coulombs per second, called amperes). ■

Velocity, density, and current are not the only rates of change that are important in physics. Others include power (the rate at which work is done), the rate of heat flow, temperature gradient (the rate of change of temperature with respect to position), and the rate of decay of a radioactive substance in nuclear physics.

Chemistry

EXAMPLE 4 A chemical reaction results in the formation of one or more substances (called *products*) from one or more starting materials (called *reactants*). For instance, the "equation"

$$2H_2 + O_2 \to 2H_2O$$

indicates that two molecules of hydrogen and one molecule of oxygen form two molecules of water. Let's consider the reaction

$$A + B \to C$$

where A and B are the reactants and C is the product. The **concentration** of a reactant A is the number of moles (1 mole $= 6.022 \times 10^{23}$ molecules) per liter and is denoted by [A]. The concentration varies during a reaction, so [A], [B], and [C] are all functions of time (t). The average rate of reaction of the product C over a time interval

$t_1 \leqslant t \leqslant t_2$ is

$$\frac{\Delta[\mathrm{C}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{[\mathrm{C}](t_2) - [\mathrm{C}](t_1)}{t_2 - t_1}$$

But chemists are more interested in the **instantaneous rate of reaction**, which is obtained by taking the limit of the average rate of reaction as the time interval Δt approaches 0:

$$\text{rate of reaction} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta[\mathrm{C}]}{\Delta t} = \frac{d[\mathrm{C}]}{dt}$$

Since the concentration of the product increases as the reaction proceeds, the derivative $d[\mathrm{C}]/dt$ will be positive, and so the rate of reaction of C is positive. The concentrations of the reactants, however, decrease during the reaction, so, to make the rates of reaction of A and B positive numbers, we put minus signs in front of the derivatives $d[\mathrm{A}]/dt$ and $d[\mathrm{B}]/dt$. Since [A] and [B] each decrease at the same rate that [C] increases, we have

$$\text{rate of reaction} = \frac{d[\mathrm{C}]}{dt} = -\frac{d[\mathrm{A}]}{dt} = -\frac{d[\mathrm{B}]}{dt}$$

More generally, it turns out that for a reaction of the form

$$a\mathrm{A} + b\mathrm{B} \rightarrow c\mathrm{C} + d\mathrm{D}$$

we have

$$-\frac{1}{a}\frac{d[\mathrm{A}]}{dt} = -\frac{1}{b}\frac{d[\mathrm{B}]}{dt} = \frac{1}{c}\frac{d[\mathrm{C}]}{dt} = \frac{1}{d}\frac{d[\mathrm{D}]}{dt}$$

The rate of reaction can be determined from data and graphical methods. In some cases there are explicit formulas for the concentrations as functions of time, which enable us to compute the rate of reaction (see Exercise 24). ■

EXAMPLE 5 One of the quantities of interest in thermodynamics is compressibility. If a given substance is kept at a constant temperature, then its volume V depends on its pressure P. We can consider the rate of change of volume with respect to pressure—namely, the derivative dV/dP. As P increases, V decreases, so $dV/dP < 0$. The **compressibility** is defined by introducing a minus sign and dividing this derivative by the volume V:

$$\text{isothermal compressibility} = \beta = -\frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dP}$$

Thus β measures how fast, per unit volume, the volume of a substance decreases as the pressure on it increases at constant temperature.

For instance, the volume V (in cubic meters) of a sample of air at 25°C was found to be related to the pressure P (in kilopascals) by the equation

$$V = \frac{5.3}{P}$$

The rate of change of V with respect to P when $P = 50$ kPa is

$$\left.\frac{dV}{dP}\right|_{P=50} = -\left.\frac{5.3}{P^2}\right|_{P=50}$$
$$= -\frac{5.3}{2500} = -0.00212 \text{ m}^3/\text{kPa}$$

The compressibility at that pressure is

$$\beta = -\frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dP}\bigg|_{P=50} = \frac{0.00212}{\frac{5.3}{50}} = 0.02\ (\text{m}^3/\text{kPa})/\text{m}^3$$

Biology

EXAMPLE 6 Let $n = f(t)$ be the number of individuals in an animal or plant population at time t. The change in the population size between the times $t = t_1$ and $t = t_2$ is $\Delta n = f(t_2) - f(t_1)$, and so the average rate of growth during the time period $t_1 \leqslant t \leqslant t_2$ is

$$\text{average rate of growth} = \frac{\Delta n}{\Delta t} = \frac{f(t_2) - f(t_1)}{t_2 - t_1}$$

The **instantaneous rate of growth** is obtained from this average rate of growth by letting the time period Δt approach 0:

$$\text{growth rate} = \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta n}{\Delta t} = \frac{dn}{dt}$$

Strictly speaking, this is not quite accurate because the actual graph of a population function $n = f(t)$ would be a step function that is discontinuous whenever a birth or death occurs and therefore not differentiable. However, for a large animal or plant population, we can replace the graph by a smooth approximating curve as in Figure 7.

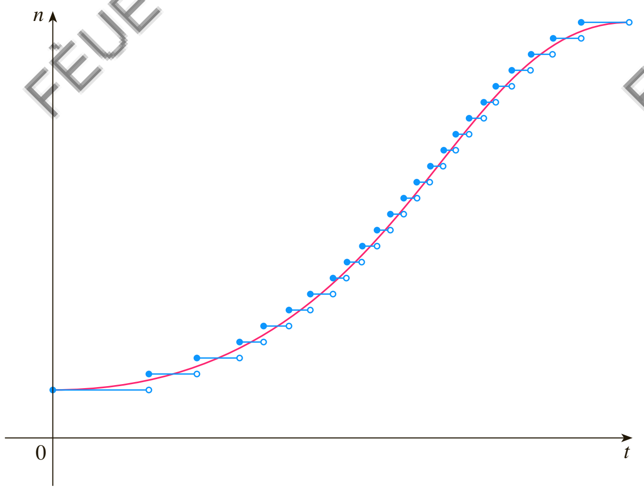


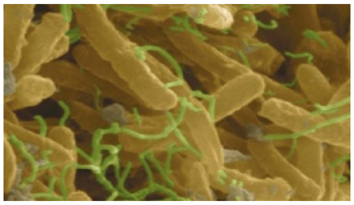
FIGURE 7
A smooth curve approximating a growth function

To be more specific, consider a population of bacteria in a homogeneous nutrient medium. Suppose that by sampling the population at certain intervals it is determined that the population doubles every hour. If the initial population is n_0 and the time t is measured in hours, then

$$f(1) = 2f(0) = 2n_0$$

$$f(2) = 2f(1) = 2^2 n_0$$

$$f(3) = 2f(2) = 2^3 n_0$$



Eye of Science / Science Source

E. coli bacteria are about 2 micrometers (μm) long and 0.75 μm wide. The image was produced with a scanning electron microscope.

and, in general,

$$f(t) = 2^t n_0$$

The population function is $n = n_0 2^t$.

This is an example of an exponential function. In Chapter 6 we will discuss exponential functions in general; at that time we will be able to compute their derivatives and thereby determine the rate of growth of the bacteria population. ■

EXAMPLE 7 When we consider the flow of blood through a blood vessel, such as a vein or artery, we can model the shape of the blood vessel by a cylindrical tube with radius R and length l as illustrated in Figure 8.

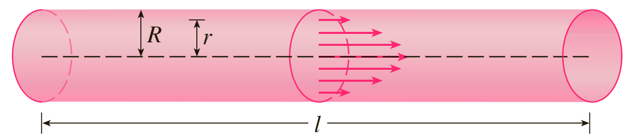


FIGURE 8
Blood flow in an artery

Because of friction at the walls of the tube, the velocity v of the blood is greatest along the central axis of the tube. The velocity decreases as the distance r from the axis increases, until v becomes 0 at the wall. The relationship between v and r is given by the **law of laminar flow** discovered by the French physician Jean-Louis-Marie Poiseuille in 1840. This law states that

$$\boxed{1} \qquad v = \frac{P}{4\eta l}(R^2 - r^2)$$

For more detailed information, see W. Nichols and M. O'Rourke (eds.), *McDonald's Blood Flow in Arteries: Theoretical, Experimental, and Clinical Principles*, 5th ed. (New York, 2005).

where η is the viscosity of the blood and P is the pressure difference between the ends of the tube. If P and l are constant, then v is a function of r with domain $[0, R]$.

The average rate of change of the velocity as we move from $r = r_1$ outward to $r = r_2$ is given by

$$\frac{\Delta v}{\Delta r} = \frac{v(r_2) - v(r_1)}{r_2 - r_1}$$

and if we let $\Delta r \to 0$, we obtain the **velocity gradient**, that is, the instantaneous rate of change of velocity with respect to r:

$$\text{velocity gradient} = \lim_{\Delta r \to 0} \frac{\Delta v}{\Delta r} = \frac{dv}{dr}$$

Using Equation 1, we obtain

$$\frac{dv}{dr} = \frac{P}{4\eta l}(0 - 2r) = -\frac{Pr}{2\eta l}$$

For one of the smaller human arteries we can take $\eta = 0.027$, $R = 0.008$ cm, $l = 2$ cm, and $P = 4000$ dynes/cm^2, which gives

$$v = \frac{4000}{4(0.027)2}(0.000064 - r^2)$$
$$\approx 1.85 \times 10^4 (6.4 \times 10^{-5} - r^2)$$

At $r = 0.002$ cm the blood is flowing at a speed of

$$v(0.002) \approx 1.85 \times 10^4(64 \times 10^{-6} - 4 \times 10^{-6})$$
$$= 1.11 \text{ cm/s}$$

and the velocity gradient at that point is

$$\left.\frac{dv}{dr}\right|_{r=0.002} = -\frac{4000(0.002)}{2(0.027)2} \approx -74 \text{ (cm/s)/cm}$$

To get a feeling for what this statement means, let's change our units from centimeters to micrometers (1 cm = 10,000 μm). Then the radius of the artery is 80 μm. The velocity at the central axis is 11,850 μm/s, which decreases to 11,110 μm/s at a distance of $r = 20$ μm. The fact that $dv/dr = -74$ (μm/s)/μm means that, when $r = 20$ μm, the velocity is decreasing at a rate of about 74 μm/s for each micrometer that we proceed away from the center. ■

Economics

EXAMPLE 8 Suppose $C(x)$ is the total cost that a company incurs in producing x units of a certain commodity. The function C is called a **cost function**. If the number of items produced is increased from x_1 to x_2, then the additional cost is $\Delta C = C(x_2) - C(x_1)$, and the average rate of change of the cost is

$$\frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} = \frac{C(x_2) - C(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{C(x_1 + \Delta x) - C(x_1)}{\Delta x}$$

The limit of this quantity as $\Delta x \to 0$, that is, the instantaneous rate of change of cost with respect to the number of items produced, is called the **marginal cost** by economists:

$$\text{marginal cost} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta C}{\Delta x} = \frac{dC}{dx}$$

[Since x often takes on only integer values, it may not make literal sense to let Δx approach 0, but we can always replace $C(x)$ by a smooth approximating function as in Example 6.]

Taking $\Delta x = 1$ and n large (so that Δx is small compared to n), we have

$$C'(n) \approx C(n + 1) - C(n)$$

Thus the marginal cost of producing n units is approximately equal to the cost of producing one more unit [the $(n + 1)$st unit].

It is often appropriate to represent a total cost function by a polynomial

$$C(x) = a + bx + cx^2 + dx^3$$

where a represents the overhead cost (rent, heat, maintenance) and the other terms represent the cost of raw materials, labor, and so on. (The cost of raw materials may be proportional to x, but labor costs might depend partly on higher powers of x because of overtime costs and inefficiencies involved in large-scale operations.)

For instance, suppose a company has estimated that the cost (in dollars) of producing x items is

$$C(x) = 10,000 + 5x + 0.01x^2$$

Then the marginal cost function is

$$C'(x) = 5 + 0.02x$$

The marginal cost at the production level of 500 items is

$$C'(500) = 5 + 0.02(500) = \$15/\text{item}$$

This gives the rate at which costs are increasing with respect to the production level when $x = 500$ and predicts the cost of the 501st item.

The actual cost of producing the 501st item is

$$\begin{aligned} C(501) - C(500) &= [10{,}000 + 5(501) + 0.01(501)^2] \\ &\qquad - [10{,}000 + 5(500) + 0.01(500)^2] \\ &= \$15.01 \end{aligned}$$

Notice that $C'(500) \approx C(501) - C(500)$. ■

Economists also study marginal demand, marginal revenue, and marginal profit, which are the derivatives of the demand, revenue, and profit functions. These will be considered in Chapter 3 after we have developed techniques for finding the maximum and minimum values of functions.

Other Sciences

Rates of change occur in all the sciences. A geologist is interested in knowing the rate at which an intruded body of molten rock cools by conduction of heat into surrounding rocks. An engineer wants to know the rate at which water flows into or out of a reservoir. An urban geographer is interested in the rate of change of the population density in a city as the distance from the city center increases. A meteorologist is concerned with the rate of change of atmospheric pressure with respect to height (see Exercise 6.5.19).

In psychology, those interested in learning theory study the so-called learning curve, which graphs the performance $P(t)$ of someone learning a skill as a function of the training time t. Of particular interest is the rate at which performance improves as time passes, that is, dP/dt.

In sociology, differential calculus is used in analyzing the spread of rumors (or innovations or fads or fashions). If $p(t)$ denotes the proportion of a population that knows a rumor by time t, then the derivative dp/dt represents the rate of spread of the rumor (see Exercise 6.2.65).

A Single Idea, Many Interpretations

Velocity, density, current, power, and temperature gradient in physics; rate of reaction and compressibility in chemistry; rate of growth and blood velocity gradient in biology; marginal cost and marginal profit in economics; rate of heat flow in geology; rate of improvement of performance in psychology; rate of spread of a rumor in sociology—these are all special cases of a single mathematical concept, the derivative.

This is an illustration of the fact that part of the power of mathematics lies in its abstractness. A single abstract mathematical concept (such as the derivative) can have different interpretations in each of the sciences. When we develop the properties of the mathematical concept once and for all, we can then turn around and apply these results to all of the sciences. This is much more efficient than developing properties of special concepts in each separate science. The French mathematician Joseph Fourier (1768–1830) put it succinctly: "Mathematics compares the most diverse phenomena and discovers the secret analogies that unite them."

2.7 EXERCISES

1–4 A particle moves according to a law of motion $s = f(t)$, $t \geqslant 0$, where t is measured in seconds and s in feet.

(a) Find the velocity at time t.
(b) What is the velocity after 1 second?
(c) When is the particle at rest?
(d) When is the particle moving in the positive direction?
(e) Find the total distance traveled during the first 6 seconds.
(f) Draw a diagram like Figure 2 to illustrate the motion of the particle.
(g) Find the acceleration at time t and after 1 second.
(h) Graph the position, velocity, and acceleration functions for $0 \leqslant t \leqslant 6$.
(i) When is the particle speeding up? When is it slowing down?

1. $f(t) = t^3 - 9t^2 + 24t$

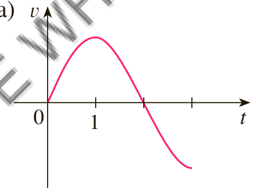
2. $f(t) = 0.01t^4 - 0.04t^3$

3. $f(t) = \sin(\pi t/2)$

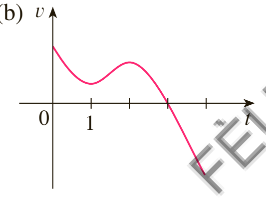
4. $f(t) = \dfrac{9t}{t^2 + 9}$

5. Graphs of the *velocity* functions of two particles are shown, where t is measured in seconds. When is each particle speeding up? When is it slowing down? Explain.

(a)

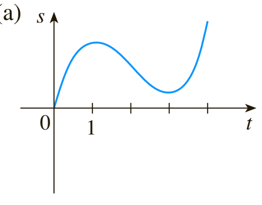


(b)

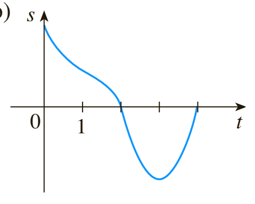


6. Graphs of the *position* functions of two particles are shown, where t is measured in seconds. When is each particle speeding up? When is it slowing down? Explain.

(a)



(b)



7. The height (in meters) of a projectile shot vertically upward from a point 2 m above ground level with an initial velocity of 24.5 m/s is $h = 2 + 24.5t - 4.9t^2$ after t seconds.
(a) Find the velocity after 2 s and after 4 s.
(b) When does the projectile reach its maximum height?
(c) What is the maximum height?
(d) When does it hit the ground?
(e) With what velocity does it hit the ground?

8. If a ball is thrown vertically upward with a velocity of 80 ft/s, then its height after t seconds is $s = 80t - 16t^2$.
(a) What is the maximum height reached by the ball?
(b) What is the velocity of the ball when it is 96 ft above the ground on its way up? On its way down?

9. If a rock is thrown vertically upward from the surface of Mars with velocity 15 m/s, its height after t seconds is $h = 15t - 1.86t^2$.
(a) What is the velocity of the rock after 2 s?
(b) What is the velocity of the rock when its height is 25 m on its way up? On its way down?

10. A particle moves with position function

$$s = t^4 - 4t^3 - 20t^2 + 20t \qquad t \geqslant 0$$

(a) At what time does the particle have a velocity of 20 m/s?
(b) At what time is the acceleration 0? What is the significance of this value of t?

11. (a) A company makes computer chips from square wafers of silicon. It wants to keep the side length of a wafer very close to 15 mm and it wants to know how the area $A(x)$ of a wafer changes when the side length x changes. Find $A'(15)$ and explain its meaning in this situation.
(b) Show that the rate of change of the area of a square with respect to its side length is half its perimeter. Try to explain geometrically why this is true by drawing a square whose side length x is increased by an amount Δx. How can you approximate the resulting change in area ΔA if Δx is small?

12. (a) Sodium chlorate crystals are easy to grow in the shape of cubes by allowing a solution of water and sodium chlorate to evaporate slowly. If V is the volume of such a cube with side length x, calculate dV/dx when $x = 3$ mm and explain its meaning.
(b) Show that the rate of change of the volume of a cube with respect to its edge length is equal to half the surface area of the cube. Explain geometrically why this result is true by arguing by analogy with Exercise 11(b).

13. (a) Find the average rate of change of the area of a circle with respect to its radius r as r changes from
(i) 2 to 3 (ii) 2 to 2.5 (iii) 2 to 2.1
(b) Find the instantaneous rate of change when $r = 2$.
(c) Show that the rate of change of the area of a circle with respect to its radius (at any r) is equal to the circumference of the circle. Try to explain geometrically why this is true by drawing a circle whose radius is increased by an amount Δr. How can you approximate the resulting change in area ΔA if Δr is small?

14. A stone is dropped into a lake, creating a circular ripple that travels outward at a speed of 60 cm/s. Find the rate at which the area within the circle is increasing after (a) 1 s, (b) 3 s, and (c) 5 s. What can you conclude?

15. A spherical balloon is being inflated. Find the rate of increase of the surface area ($S = 4\pi r^2$) with respect to the radius r when r is (a) 1 ft, (b) 2 ft, and (c) 3 ft. What conclusion can you make?

16. (a) The volume of a growing spherical cell is $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$, where the radius r is measured in micrometers ($1\ \mu\text{m} = 10^{-6}$ m). Find the average rate of change of V with respect to r when r changes from

(i) 5 to 8 μm (ii) 5 to 6 μm (iii) 5 to 5.1 μm

(b) Find the instantaneous rate of change of V with respect to r when $r = 5\ \mu$m.

(c) Show that the rate of change of the volume of a sphere with respect to its radius is equal to its surface area. Explain geometrically why this result is true. Argue by analogy with Exercise 13(c).

17. The mass of the part of a metal rod that lies between its left end and a point x meters to the right is $3x^2$ kg. Find the linear density (see Example 2) when x is (a) 1 m, (b) 2 m, and (c) 3 m. Where is the density the highest? The lowest?

18. If a tank holds 5000 gallons of water, which drains from the bottom of the tank in 40 minutes, then Torricelli's Law gives the volume V of water remaining in the tank after t minutes as

$$V = 5000\left(1 - \tfrac{1}{40}t\right)^2 \qquad 0 \leqslant t \leqslant 40$$

Find the rate at which water is draining from the tank after (a) 5 min, (b) 10 min, (c) 20 min, and (d) 40 min. At what time is the water flowing out the fastest? The slowest? Summarize your findings.

19. The quantity of charge Q in coulombs (C) that has passed through a point in a wire up to time t (measured in seconds) is given by $Q(t) = t^3 - 2t^2 + 6t + 2$. Find the current when (a) $t = 0.5$ s and (b) $t = 1$ s. [See Example 3. The unit of current is an ampere (1 A = 1 C/s).] At what time is the current lowest?

20. Newton's Law of Gravitation says that the magnitude F of the force exerted by a body of mass m on a body of mass M is

$$F = \frac{GmM}{r^2}$$

where G is the gravitational constant and r is the distance between the bodies.

(a) Find dF/dr and explain its meaning. What does the minus sign indicate?

(b) Suppose it is known that the earth attracts an object with a force that decreases at the rate of 2 N/km when $r = 20{,}000$ km. How fast does this force change when $r = 10{,}000$ km?

21. The force F acting on a body with mass m and velocity v is the rate of change of momentum: $F = (d/dt)(mv)$. If m is constant, this becomes $F = ma$, where $a = dv/dt$ is the acceleration. But in the theory of relativity the mass of a particle varies with v as follows: $m = m_0/\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$, where m_0 is the mass of the particle at rest and c is the speed of light. Show that

$$F = \frac{m_0 a}{(1 - v^2/c^2)^{3/2}}$$

22. Some of the highest tides in the world occur in the Bay of Fundy on the Atlantic Coast of Canada. At Hopewell Cape the water depth at low tide is about 2.0 m and at high tide it is about 12.0 m. The natural period of oscillation is a little more than 12 hours and on June 30, 2009, high tide occurred at 6:45 AM. This helps explain the following model for the water depth D (in meters) as a function of the time t (in hours after midnight) on that day:

$$D(t) = 7 + 5\cos[0.503(t - 6.75)]$$

How fast was the tide rising (or falling) at the following times?

(a) 3:00 AM (b) 6:00 AM
(c) 9:00 AM (d) Noon

23. Boyle's Law states that when a sample of gas is compressed at a constant temperature, the product of the pressure and the volume remains constant: $PV = C$.

(a) Find the rate of change of volume with respect to pressure.

(b) A sample of gas is in a container at low pressure and is steadily compressed at constant temperature for 10 minutes. Is the volume decreasing more rapidly at the beginning or the end of the 10 minutes? Explain.

(c) Prove that the isothermal compressibility (see Example 5) is given by $\beta = 1/P$.

24. If, in Example 4, one molecule of the product C is formed from one molecule of the reactant A and one molecule of the reactant B, and the initial concentrations of A and B have a common value $[A] = [B] = a$ moles/L, then

$$[C] = a^2kt/(akt + 1)$$

where k is a constant.

(a) Find the rate of reaction at time t.

(b) Show that if $x = [C]$, then

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = k(a - x)^2$$

25. The table gives the population of the world $P(t)$, in millions, where t is measured in years and $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 1900.

t	Population (millions)	t	Population (millions)
0	1650	60	3040
10	1750	70	3710
20	1860	80	4450
30	2070	90	5280
40	2300	100	6080
50	2560	110	6870

(a) Estimate the rate of population growth in 1920 and in 1980 by averaging the slopes of two secant lines.

(b) Use a graphing device to find a cubic function (a third-degree polynomial) that models the data.

(c) Use your model in part (b) to find a model for the rate of population growth.
(d) Use part (c) to estimate the rates of growth in 1920 and 1980. Compare with your estimates in part (a).
(e) Estimate the rate of growth in 1985.

26. The table shows how the average age of first marriage of Japanese women has varied since 1950.

t	$A(t)$	t	$A(t)$
1950	23.0	1985	25.5
1955	23.8	1990	25.9
1960	24.4	1995	26.3
1965	24.5	2000	27.0
1970	24.2	2005	28.0
1975	24.7	2010	28.8
1980	25.2		

(a) Use a graphing calculator or computer to model these data with a fourth-degree polynomial.
(b) Use part (a) to find a model for $A'(t)$.
(c) Estimate the rate of change of marriage age for women in 1990.
(d) Graph the data points and the models for A and A'.

27. Refer to the law of laminar flow given in Example 7. Consider a blood vessel with radius 0.01 cm, length 3 cm, pressure difference 3000 dynes/cm^2, and viscosity $\eta = 0.027$.
(a) Find the velocity of the blood along the centerline $r = 0$, at radius $r = 0.005$ cm, and at the wall $r = R = 0.01$ cm.
(b) Find the velocity gradient at $r = 0$, $r = 0.005$, and $r = 0.01$.
(c) Where is the velocity the greatest? Where is the velocity changing most?

28. The frequency of vibrations of a vibrating violin string is given by

$$f = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T}{\rho}}$$

where L is the length of the string, T is its tension, and ρ is its linear density. [See Chapter 11 in D. E. Hall, *Musical Acoustics*, 3rd ed. (Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole, 2002).]
(a) Find the rate of change of the frequency with respect to
(i) the length (when T and ρ are constant),
(ii) the tension (when L and ρ are constant), and
(iii) the linear density (when L and T are constant).
(b) The pitch of a note (how high or low the note sounds) is determined by the frequency f. (The higher the frequency, the higher the pitch.) Use the signs of the derivatives in part (a) to determine what happens to the pitch of a note
(i) when the effective length of a string is decreased by placing a finger on the string so a shorter portion of the string vibrates,
(ii) when the tension is increased by turning a tuning peg,
(iii) when the linear density is increased by switching to another string.

29. Suppose that the cost (in dollars) for a company to produce x pairs of a new line of jeans is

$$C(x) = 2000 + 3x + 0.01x^2 + 0.0002x^3$$

(a) Find the marginal cost function.
(b) Find $C'(100)$ and explain its meaning. What does it predict?
(c) Compare $C'(100)$ with the cost of manufacturing the 101st pair of jeans.

30. The cost function for a certain commodity is

$$C(q) = 84 + 0.16q - 0.0006q^2 + 0.000003q^3$$

(a) Find and interpret $C'(100)$.
(b) Compare $C'(100)$ with the cost of producing the 101st item.

31. If $p(x)$ is the total value of the production when there are x workers in a plant, then the *average productivity* of the workforce at the plant is

$$A(x) = \frac{p(x)}{x}$$

(a) Find $A'(x)$. Why does the company want to hire more workers if $A'(x) > 0$?
(b) Show that $A'(x) > 0$ if $p'(x)$ is greater than the average productivity.

32. If R denotes the reaction of the body to some stimulus of strength x, the *sensitivity* S is defined to be the rate of change of the reaction with respect to x. A particular example is that when the brightness x of a light source is increased, the eye reacts by decreasing the area R of the pupil. The experimental formula

$$R = \frac{40 + 24x^{0.4}}{1 + 4x^{0.4}}$$

has been used to model the dependence of R on x when R is measured in square millimeters and x is measured in appropriate units of brightness.
(a) Find the sensitivity.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing both R and S as functions of x. Comment on the values of R and S at low levels of brightness. Is this what you would expect?

33. The gas law for an ideal gas at absolute temperature T (in kelvins), pressure P (in atmospheres, atm), and volume V (in liters) is $PV = nRT$, where n is the number of moles of the gas and $R = 0.0821$ is the gas constant. Suppose that, at a certain instant, $P = 8.0$ atm and is increasing at a rate of 0.10 atm/min and $V = 10$ L and is decreasing at a rate of 0.15 L/min. Find the rate of change of T with respect to time at that instant if $n = 10$ moles.

34. Invasive species often display a wave of advance as they colonize new areas. Mathematical models based on random dispersal and reproduction have demonstrated that the speed with which such waves move is given by the function $f(r) = 2\sqrt{Dr}$, where r is the reproductive rate of individuals and D is a parameter quantifying dispersal. Calculate the derivative of the wave speed with respect to the reproductive rate r and explain its meaning.

35. In the study of ecosystems, *predator-prey models* are often used to study the interaction between species. Consider populations of tundra wolves, given by $W(t)$, and caribou, given by $C(t)$, in northern Canada. The interaction has been modeled by the equations

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = aC - bCW \qquad \frac{dW}{dt} = -cW + dCW$$

(a) What values of dC/dt and dW/dt correspond to stable populations?

(b) How would the statement "The caribou go extinct" be represented mathematically?

(c) Suppose that $a = 0.05$, $b = 0.001$, $c = 0.05$, and $d = 0.0001$. Find all population pairs (C, W) that lead to stable populations. According to this model, is it possible for the two species to live in balance or will one or both species become extinct?

36. In a fish farm, a population of fish is introduced into a pond and harvested regularly. A model for the rate of change of the fish population is given by the equation

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = r_0\left(1 - \frac{P(t)}{P_c}\right)P(t) - \beta P(t)$$

where r_0 is the birth rate of the fish, P_c is the maximum population that the pond can sustain (called the *carrying capacity*), and β is the percentage of the population that is harvested.

(a) What value of dP/dt corresponds to a stable population?

(b) If the pond can sustain 10,000 fish, the birth rate is 5%, and the harvesting rate is 4%, find the stable population level.

(c) What happens if β is raised to 5%?

2.8 Related Rates

If we are pumping air into a balloon, both the volume and the radius of the balloon are increasing and their rates of increase are related to each other. But it is much easier to measure directly the rate of increase of the volume than the rate of increase of the radius.

In a related rates problem the idea is to compute the rate of change of one quantity in terms of the rate of change of another quantity (which may be more easily measured). The procedure is to find an equation that relates the two quantities and then use the Chain Rule to differentiate both sides with respect to time.

EXAMPLE 1 Air is being pumped into a spherical balloon so that its volume increases at a rate of 100 cm^3/s. How fast is the radius of the balloon increasing when the diameter is 50 cm?

PS According to the Principles of Problem Solving discussed on page 98, the first step is to understand the problem. This includes reading the problem carefully, identifying the given and the unknown, and introducing suitable notation.

SOLUTION We start by identifying two things:

the *given information:*

the rate of increase of the volume of air is 100 cm^3/s

and the *unknown:*

the rate of increase of the radius when the diameter is 50 cm

In order to express these quantities mathematically, we introduce some suggestive *notation:*

Let V be the volume of the balloon and let r be its radius.

The key thing to remember is that rates of change are derivatives. In this problem, the volume and the radius are both functions of the time t. The rate of increase of the volume with respect to time is the derivative dV/dt, and the rate of increase of the radius is dr/dt. We can therefore restate the given and the unknown as follows:

$$\textit{Given:} \qquad \frac{dV}{dt} = 100 \text{ cm}^3\text{/s}$$

$$\textit{Unknown:} \qquad \frac{dr}{dt} \quad \text{when } r = 25 \text{ cm}$$

PS The second stage of problem solving is to think of a plan for connecting the given and the unknown.

In order to connect dV/dt and dr/dt, we first relate V and r by the formula for the volume of a sphere:

$$V = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3$$

In order to use the given information, we differentiate each side of this equation with respect to t. To differentiate the right side, we need to use the Chain Rule:

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{dV}{dr}\frac{dr}{dt} = 4\pi r^2 \frac{dr}{dt}$$

Now we solve for the unknown quantity:

Notice that, although dV/dt is constant, dr/dt is *not* constant.

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{1}{4\pi r^2}\frac{dV}{dt}$$

If we put $r = 25$ and $dV/dt = 100$ in this equation, we obtain

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{1}{4\pi(25)^2}100 = \frac{1}{25\pi}$$

The radius of the balloon is increasing at the rate of $1/(25\pi) \approx 0.0127$ cm/s. ■

EXAMPLE 2 A ladder 10 ft long rests against a vertical wall. If the bottom of the ladder slides away from the wall at a rate of 1 ft/s, how fast is the top of the ladder sliding down the wall when the bottom of the ladder is 6 ft from the wall?

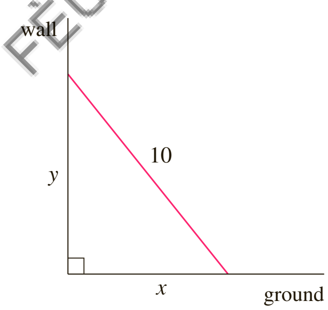


FIGURE 1

SOLUTION We first draw a diagram and label it as in Figure 1. Let x feet be the distance from the bottom of the ladder to the wall and y feet the distance from the top of the ladder to the ground. Note that x and y are both functions of t (time, measured in seconds).

We are given that $dx/dt = 1$ ft/s and we are asked to find dy/dt when $x = 6$ ft (see Figure 2). In this problem, the relationship between x and y is given by the Pythagorean Theorem:

$$x^2 + y^2 = 100$$

Differentiating each side with respect to t using the Chain Rule, we have

$$2x\frac{dx}{dt} + 2y\frac{dy}{dt} = 0$$

and solving this equation for the desired rate, we obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -\frac{x}{y}\frac{dx}{dt}$$

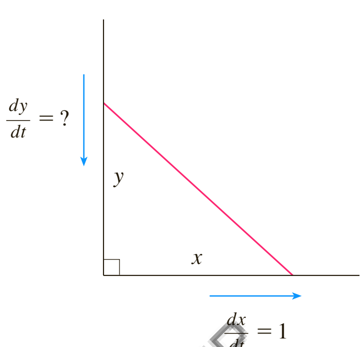


FIGURE 2

When $x = 6$, the Pythagorean Theorem gives $y = 8$ and so, substituting these values and $dx/dt = 1$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -\frac{6}{8}(1) = -\frac{3}{4} \text{ ft/s}$$

The fact that dy/dt is negative means that the distance from the top of the ladder to the ground is *decreasing* at a rate of $\frac{3}{4}$ ft/s. In other words, the top of the ladder is sliding down the wall at a rate of $\frac{3}{4}$ ft/s. ■

EXAMPLE 3 A water tank has the shape of an inverted circular cone with base radius 2 m and height 4 m. If water is being pumped into the tank at a rate of $2 \text{ m}^3/\text{min}$, find the rate at which the water level is rising when the water is 3 m deep.

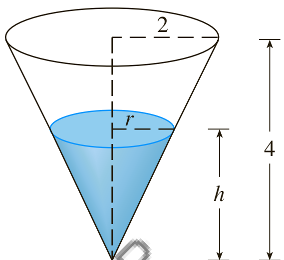


FIGURE 3

SOLUTION We first sketch the cone and label it as in Figure 3. Let V, r, and h be the volume of the water, the radius of the surface, and the height of the water at time t, where t is measured in minutes.

We are given that $dV/dt = 2 \text{ m}^3/\text{min}$ and we are asked to find dh/dt when h is 3 m. The quantities V and h are related by the equation

$$V = \tfrac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$$

but it is very useful to express V as a function of h alone. In order to eliminate r, we use the similar triangles in Figure 3 to write

$$\frac{r}{h} = \frac{2}{4} \qquad r = \frac{h}{2}$$

and the expression for V becomes

$$V = \frac{1}{3}\pi\left(\frac{h}{2}\right)^2 h = \frac{\pi}{12}h^3$$

Now we can differentiate each side with respect to t:

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{\pi}{4}h^2\frac{dh}{dt}$$

so

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{4}{\pi h^2}\frac{dV}{dt}$$

Substituting $h = 3$ m and $dV/dt = 2 \text{ m}^3/\text{min}$, we have

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{4}{\pi(3)^2} \cdot 2 = \frac{8}{9\pi}$$

The water level is rising at a rate of $8/(9\pi) \approx 0.28$ m/min. ■

PS Look back: What have we learned from Examples 1–3 that will help us solve future problems?

Problem Solving Strategy It is useful to recall some of the problem-solving principles from page 98 and adapt them to related rates in light of our experience in Examples 1–3:

1. Read the problem carefully.
2. Draw a diagram if possible.
3. Introduce notation. Assign symbols to all quantities that are functions of time.
4. Express the given information and the required rate in terms of derivatives.

WARNING A common error is to substitute the given numerical information (for quantities that vary with time) too early. This should be done only *after* the differentiation. (Step 7 follows Step 6.) For instance, in Example 3 we dealt with general values of h until we finally substituted $h = 3$ at the last stage. (If we had put $h = 3$ earlier, we would have gotten $dV/dt = 0$, which is clearly wrong.)

5. Write an equation that relates the various quantities of the problem. If necessary, use the geometry of the situation to eliminate one of the variables by substitution (as in Example 3).
6. Use the Chain Rule to differentiate both sides of the equation with respect to t.
7. Substitute the given information into the resulting equation and solve for the unknown rate.

The following examples are further illustrations of the strategy.

EXAMPLE 4 Car A is traveling west at 50 mi/h and car B is traveling north at 60 mi/h. Both are headed for the intersection of the two roads. At what rate are the cars approaching each other when car A is 0.3 mi and car B is 0.4 mi from the intersection?

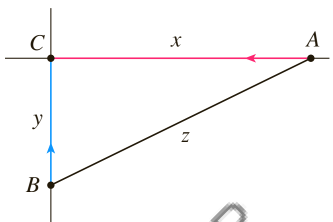


FIGURE 4

SOLUTION We draw Figure 4, where C is the intersection of the roads. At a given time t, let x be the distance from car A to C, let y be the distance from car B to C, and let z be the distance between the cars, where x, y, and z are measured in miles.

We are given that $dx/dt = -50$ mi/h and $dy/dt = -60$ mi/h. (The derivatives are negative because x and y are decreasing as t increases.) We are asked to find dz/dt. The equation that relates x, y, and z is given by the Pythagorean Theorem:

$$z^2 = x^2 + y^2$$

Differentiating each side with respect to t, we have

$$2z\frac{dz}{dt} = 2x\frac{dx}{dt} + 2y\frac{dy}{dt}$$

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = \frac{1}{z}\left(x\frac{dx}{dt} + y\frac{dy}{dt}\right)$$

When $x = 0.3$ mi and $y = 0.4$ mi, the Pythagorean Theorem gives $z = 0.5$ mi, so

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dz}{dt} &= \frac{1}{0.5}[0.3(-50) + 0.4(-60)]\\ &= -78 \text{ mi/h}\end{aligned}$$

The cars are approaching each other at a rate of 78 mi/h. ■

EXAMPLE 5 A man walks along a straight path at a speed of 4 ft/s. A searchlight is located on the ground 20 ft from the path and is kept focused on the man. At what rate is the searchlight rotating when the man is 15 ft from the point on the path closest to the searchlight?

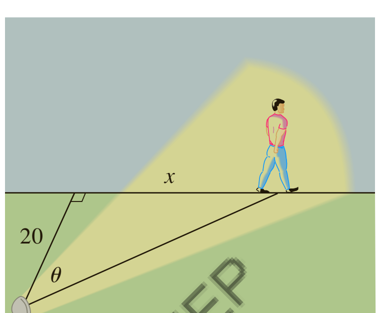


FIGURE 5

SOLUTION We draw Figure 5 and let x be the distance from the man to the point on the path closest to the searchlight. We let θ be the angle between the beam of the searchlight and the perpendicular to the path.

We are given that $dx/dt = 4$ ft/s and are asked to find $d\theta/dt$ when $x = 15$. The equation that relates x and θ can be written from Figure 5:

$$\frac{x}{20} = \tan\theta \qquad x = 20\tan\theta$$

Differentiating each side with respect to t, we get

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = 20\sec^2\theta\,\frac{d\theta}{dt}$$

so

$$\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{1}{20}\cos^2\theta\,\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{1}{20}\cos^2\theta\,(4) = \frac{1}{5}\cos^2\theta$$

When $x = 15$, the length of the beam is 25, so $\cos\theta = \frac{4}{5}$ and

$$\frac{d\theta}{dt} = \frac{1}{5}\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^2 = \frac{16}{125} = 0.128$$

The searchlight is rotating at a rate of 0.128 rad/s. ■

2.8 EXERCISES

1. If V is the volume of a cube with edge length x and the cube expands as time passes, find dV/dt in terms of dx/dt.

2. (a) If A is the area of a circle with radius r and the circle expands as time passes, find dA/dt in terms of dr/dt.
(b) Suppose oil spills from a ruptured tanker and spreads in a circular pattern. If the radius of the oil spill increases at a constant rate of 1 m/s, how fast is the area of the spill increasing when the radius is 30 m?

3. Each side of a square is increasing at a rate of 6 cm/s. At what rate is the area of the square increasing when the area of the square is 16 cm^2?

4. The length of a rectangle is increasing at a rate of 8 cm/s and its width is increasing at a rate of 3 cm/s. When the length is 20 cm and the width is 10 cm, how fast is the area of the rectangle increasing?

5. A cylindrical tank with radius 5 m is being filled with water at a rate of 3 m^3/min. How fast is the height of the water increasing?

6. The radius of a sphere is increasing at a rate of 4 mm/s. How fast is the volume increasing when the diameter is 80 mm?

7. The radius of a spherical ball is increasing at a rate of 2 cm/min. At what rate is the surface area of the ball increasing when the radius is 8 cm?

8. The area of a triangle with sides of lengths a and b and contained angle θ is

$$A = \tfrac{1}{2}ab\sin\theta$$

(a) If $a = 2$ cm, $b = 3$ cm, and θ increases at a rate of 0.2 rad/min, how fast is the area increasing when $\theta = \pi/3$?
(b) If $a = 2$ cm, b increases at a rate of 1.5 cm/min, and θ increases at a rate of 0.2 rad/min, how fast is the area increasing when $b = 3$ cm and $\theta = \pi/3$?
(c) If a increases at a rate of 2.5 cm/min, b increases at a rate of 1.5 cm/min, and θ increases at a rate of 0.2 rad/min, how fast is the area increasing when $a = 2$ cm, $b = 3$ cm, and $\theta = \pi/3$?

9. Suppose $y = \sqrt{2x + 1}$, where x and y are functions of t.
(a) If $dx/dt = 3$, find dy/dt when $x = 4$.
(b) If $dy/dt = 5$, find dx/dt when $x = 12$.

10. Suppose $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36$, where x and y are functions of t.
(a) If $dy/dt = \frac{1}{3}$, find dx/dt when $x = 2$ and $y = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{5}$.
(b) If $dx/dt = 3$, find dy/dt when $x = -2$ and $y = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{5}$.

11. If $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 9$, $dx/dt = 5$, and $dy/dt = 4$, find dz/dt when $(x, y, z) = (2, 2, 1)$.

12. A particle is moving along a hyperbola $xy = 8$. As it reaches the point $(4, 2)$, the y-coordinate is decreasing at a rate of 3 cm/s. How fast is the x-coordinate of the point changing at that instant?

13–16
(a) What quantities are given in the problem?
(b) What is the unknown?
(c) Draw a picture of the situation for any time t.
(d) Write an equation that relates the quantities.
(e) Finish solving the problem.

13. A plane flying horizontally at an altitude of 1 mi and a speed of 500 mi/h passes directly over a radar station. Find the rate at which the distance from the plane to the station is increasing when it is 2 mi away from the station.

14. If a snowball melts so that its surface area decreases at a rate of 1 cm^2/min, find the rate at which the diameter decreases when the diameter is 10 cm.

15. A street light is mounted at the top of a 15-ft-tall pole. A man 6 ft tall walks away from the pole with a speed of 5 ft/s along a straight path. How fast is the tip of his shadow moving when he is 40 ft from the pole?

16. At noon, ship A is 150 km west of ship B. Ship A is sailing east at 35 km/h and ship B is sailing north at 25 km/h. How fast is the distance between the ships changing at 4:00 PM?

---

17. Two cars start moving from the same point. One travels south at 60 mi/h and the other travels west at 25 mi/h. At what rate is the distance between the cars increasing two hours later?

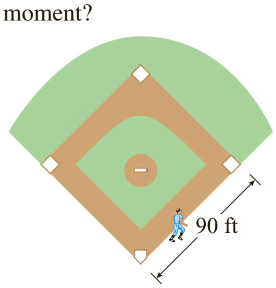
18. A spotlight on the ground shines on a wall 12 m away. If a man 2 m tall walks from the spotlight toward the building at a speed of 1.6 m/s, how fast is the length of his shadow on the building decreasing when he is 4 m from the building?

19. A man starts walking north at 4 ft/s from a point P. Five minutes later a woman starts walking south at 5 ft/s from a point 500 ft due east of P. At what rate are the people moving apart 15 min after the woman starts walking?

20. A baseball diamond is a square with side 90 ft. A batter hits the ball and runs toward first base with a speed of 24 ft/s.

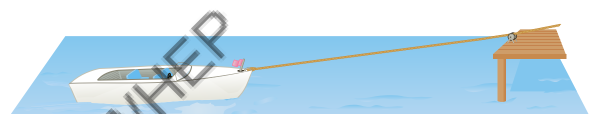
(a) At what rate is his distance from second base decreasing when he is halfway to first base?

(b) At what rate is his distance from third base increasing at the same moment?



21. The altitude of a triangle is increasing at a rate of 1 cm/min while the area of the triangle is increasing at a rate of 2 cm^2/min. At what rate is the base of the triangle changing when the altitude is 10 cm and the area is 100 cm^2?

22. A boat is pulled into a dock by a rope attached to the bow of the boat and passing through a pulley on the dock that is 1 m higher than the bow of the boat. If the rope is pulled in at a rate of 1 m/s, how fast is the boat approaching the dock when it is 8 m from the dock?



23. At noon, ship A is 100 km west of ship B. Ship A is sailing south at 35 km/h and ship B is sailing north at 25 km/h. How fast is the distance between the ships changing at 4:00 PM?

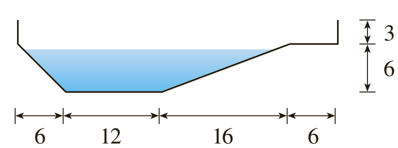
24. A particle moves along the curve $y = 2\sin(\pi x/2)$. As the particle passes through the point $\left(\frac{1}{3}, 1\right)$, its x-coordinate increases at a rate of $\sqrt{10}$ cm/s. How fast is the distance from the particle to the origin changing at this instant?

25. Water is leaking out of an inverted conical tank at a rate of 10,000 cm^3/min at the same time that water is being pumped into the tank at a constant rate. The tank has height 6 m and the diameter at the top is 4 m. If the water level is rising at a rate of 20 cm/min when the height of the water is 2 m, find the rate at which water is being pumped into the tank.

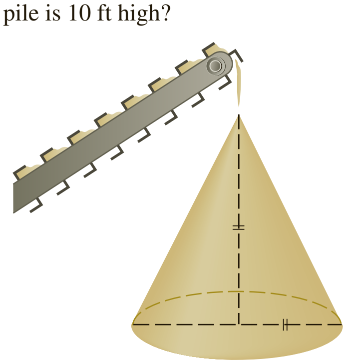
26. A trough is 10 ft long and its ends have the shape of isosceles triangles that are 3 ft across at the top and have a height of 1 ft. If the trough is being filled with water at a rate of 12 ft^3/min, how fast is the water level rising when the water is 6 inches deep?

27. A water trough is 10 m long and a cross-section has the shape of an isosceles trapezoid that is 30 cm wide at the bottom, 80 cm wide at the top, and has height 50 cm. If the trough is being filled with water at the rate of 0.2 m^3/min, how fast is the water level rising when the water is 30 cm deep?

28. A swimming pool is 20 ft wide, 40 ft long, 3 ft deep at the shallow end, and 9 ft deep at its deepest point. A cross-section is shown in the figure. If the pool is being filled at a rate of 0.8 ft^3/min, how fast is the water level rising when the depth at the deepest point is 5 ft?



29. Gravel is being dumped from a conveyor belt at a rate of 30 ft^3/min, and its coarseness is such that it forms a pile in the shape of a cone whose base diameter and height are always equal. How fast is the height of the pile increasing when the pile is 10 ft high?



30. A kite 100 ft above the ground moves horizontally at a speed of 8 ft/s. At what rate is the angle between the string and the horizontal decreasing when 200 ft of string has been let out?

31. The sides of an equilateral triangle are increasing at a rate of 10 cm/min. At what rate is the area of the triangle increasing when the sides are 30 cm long?

32. How fast is the angle between the ladder and the ground changing in Example 2 when the bottom of the ladder is 6 ft from the wall?

33. The top of a ladder slides down a vertical wall at a rate of 0.15 m/s. At the moment when the bottom of the ladder is 3 m from the wall, it slides away from the wall at a rate of 0.2 m/s. How long is the ladder?

34. According to the model we used to solve Example 2, what happens as the top of the ladder approaches the ground? Is the model appropriate for small values of y?

35. If the minute hand of a clock has length r (in centimeters), find the rate at which it sweeps out area as a function of r.

36. A faucet is filling a hemispherical basin of diameter 60 cm with water at a rate of 2 L/min. Find the rate at which the water is rising in the basin when it is half full. [Use the following facts: 1 L is 1000 cm^3. The volume of the portion of a sphere with radius r from the bottom to a height h is $V = \pi\left(rh^2 - \frac{1}{3}h^3\right)$, as we will show in Chapter 5.]

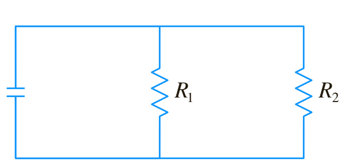
37. Boyle's Law states that when a sample of gas is compressed at a constant temperature, the pressure P and volume V satisfy the equation $PV = C$, where C is a constant. Suppose that at a certain instant the volume is 600 cm^3, the pressure is 150 kPa, and the pressure is increasing at a rate of 20 kPa/min. At what rate is the volume decreasing at this instant?

38. When air expands adiabatically (without gaining or losing heat), its pressure P and volume V are related by the equation $PV^{1.4} = C$, where C is a constant. Suppose that at a certain instant the volume is 400 cm^3 and the pressure is 80 kPa and is decreasing at a rate of 10 kPa/min. At what rate is the volume increasing at this instant?

39. If two resistors with resistances R_1 and R_2 are connected in parallel, as in the figure, then the total resistance R, measured in ohms (Ω), is given by

$$\frac{1}{R} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}$$

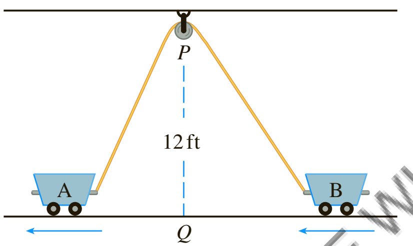
If R_1 and R_2 are increasing at rates of 0.3 Ω/s and 0.2 Ω/s, respectively, how fast is R changing when $R_1 = 80\ \Omega$ and $R_2 = 100\ \Omega$?



40. Brain weight B as a function of body weight W in fish has been modeled by the power function $B = 0.007W^{2/3}$, where B and W are measured in grams. A model for body weight as a function of body length L (measured in centimeters) is $W = 0.12L^{2.53}$. If, over 10 million years, the average length of a certain species of fish evolved from 15 cm to 20 cm at a constant rate, how fast was this species' brain growing when the average length was 18 cm?

41. Two sides of a triangle have lengths 12 m and 15 m. The angle between them is increasing at a rate of 2°/min. How fast is the length of the third side increasing when the angle between the sides of fixed length is 60°?

42. Two carts, A and B, are connected by a rope 39 ft long that passes over a pulley P (see the figure). The point Q is on the floor 12 ft directly beneath P and between the carts. Cart A is being pulled away from Q at a speed of 2 ft/s. How fast is cart B moving toward Q at the instant when cart A is 5 ft from Q?



43. A television camera is positioned 4000 ft from the base of a rocket launching pad. The angle of elevation of the camera has to change at the correct rate in order to keep the rocket in sight. Also, the mechanism for focusing the camera has to take into account the increasing distance from the camera to the rising rocket. Let's assume the rocket rises vertically and its speed is 600 ft/s when it has risen 3000 ft.
(a) How fast is the distance from the television camera to the rocket changing at that moment?
(b) If the television camera is always kept aimed at the rocket, how fast is the camera's angle of elevation changing at that same moment?

44. A lighthouse is located on a small island 3 km away from the nearest point P on a straight shoreline and its light makes four revolutions per minute. How fast is the beam of light moving along the shoreline when it is 1 km from P?

45. A plane flies horizontally at an altitude of 5 km and passes directly over a tracking telescope on the ground. When the angle of elevation is $\pi/3$, this angle is decreasing at a rate of $\pi/6$ radians per minute. How fast is the plane traveling at that time?

46. A Ferris wheel with a radius of 10 m is rotating at a rate of one revolution every 2 minutes. How fast is a rider rising when his seat is 16 m above ground level?

47. A plane flying with a constant speed of 300 km/h passes over a ground radar station at an altitude of 1 km and climbs at an angle of 30°. At what rate is the distance from the plane to the radar station increasing a minute later?

48. Two people start from the same point. One walks east at 3 mi/h and the other walks northeast at 2 mi/h. How fast is the distance between the people changing after 15 minutes?

49. A runner sprints around a circular track of radius 100 m at a constant speed of 7 m/s. The runner's friend is standing at a distance 200 m from the center of the track. How fast is the distance between the friends changing when the distance between them is 200 m?

50. The minute hand on a watch is 8 mm long and the hour hand is 4 mm long. How fast is the distance between the tips of the hands changing at one o'clock?

2.9 Linear Approximations and Differentials

We have seen that a curve lies very close to its tangent line near the point of tangency. In fact, by zooming in toward a point on the graph of a differentiable function, we noticed that the graph looks more and more like its tangent line. (See Figure 2.1.2.) This observation is the basis for a method of finding approximate values of functions.

The idea is that it might be easy to calculate a value $f(a)$ of a function, but difficult (or even impossible) to compute nearby values of f. So we settle for the easily computed values of the linear function L whose graph is the tangent line of f at $(a, f(a))$. (See Figure 1.)

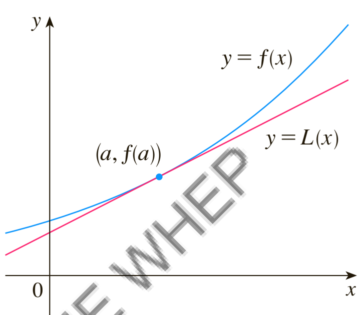


FIGURE 1

In other words, we use the tangent line at $(a, f(a))$ as an approximation to the curve $y = f(x)$ when x is near a. An equation of this tangent line is

$$y = f(a) + f'(a)(x - a)$$

and the approximation

$$\boxed{1} \qquad \boxed{f(x) \approx f(a) + f'(a)(x - a)}$$

is called the **linear approximation** or **tangent line approximation** of f at a. The linear function whose graph is this tangent line, that is,

$$\boxed{2} \qquad \boxed{L(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x - a)}$$

is called the **linearization** of f at a.

EXAMPLE 1 Find the linearization of the function $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 3}$ at $a = 1$ and use it to approximate the numbers $\sqrt{3.98}$ and $\sqrt{4.05}$. Are these approximations overestimates or underestimates?

SOLUTION The derivative of $f(x) = (x + 3)^{1/2}$ is

$$f'(x) = \tfrac{1}{2}(x + 3)^{-1/2} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x + 3}}$$

and so we have $f(1) = 2$ and $f'(1) = \frac{1}{4}$. Putting these values into Equation 2, we see that the linearization is

$$L(x) = f(1) + f'(1)(x - 1) = 2 + \tfrac{1}{4}(x - 1) = \frac{7}{4} + \frac{x}{4}$$

The corresponding linear approximation (1) is

$$\sqrt{x + 3} \approx \frac{7}{4} + \frac{x}{4} \qquad \text{(when } x \text{ is near 1)}$$

In particular, we have

$$\sqrt{3.98} \approx \tfrac{7}{4} + \tfrac{0.98}{4} = 1.995 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sqrt{4.05} \approx \tfrac{7}{4} + \tfrac{1.05}{4} = 2.0125$$

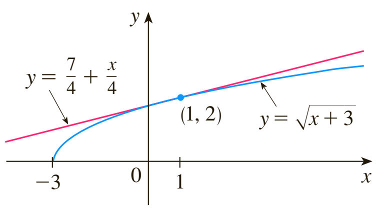


FIGURE 2

The linear approximation is illustrated in Figure 2. We see that, indeed, the tangent line approximation is a good approximation to the given function when x is near l. We also see that our approximations are overestimates because the tangent line lies above the curve.

Of course, a calculator could give us approximations for $\sqrt{3.98}$ and $\sqrt{4.05}$, but the linear approximation gives an approximation *over an entire interval.* ■

In the following table we compare the estimates from the linear approximation in Example 1 with the true values. Notice from this table, and also from Figure 2, that the tangent line approximation gives good estimates when x is close to 1 but the accuracy of the approximation deteriorates when x is farther away from 1.

	x	From $L(x)$	Actual value
$\sqrt{3.9}$	0.9	1.975	1.97484176. . .
$\sqrt{3.98}$	0.98	1.995	1.99499373. . .
$\sqrt{4}$	1	2	2.00000000. . .
$\sqrt{4.05}$	1.05	2.0125	2.01246117. . .
$\sqrt{4.1}$	1.1	2.025	2.02484567. . .
$\sqrt{5}$	2	2.25	2.23606797. . .
$\sqrt{6}$	3	2.5	2.44948974. . .

How good is the approximation that we obtained in Example 1? The next example shows that by using a graphing calculator or computer we can determine an interval throughout which a linear approximation provides a specified accuracy.

EXAMPLE 2 For what values of x is the linear approximation

$$\sqrt{x + 3} \approx \frac{7}{4} + \frac{x}{4}$$

accurate to within 0.5? What about accuracy to within 0.1?

SOLUTION Accuracy to within 0.5 means that the functions should differ by less than 0.5:

$$\left| \sqrt{x + 3} - \left(\frac{7}{4} + \frac{x}{4} \right) \right| < 0.5$$

Equivalently, we could write

$$\sqrt{x + 3} - 0.5 < \frac{7}{4} + \frac{x}{4} < \sqrt{x + 3} + 0.5$$

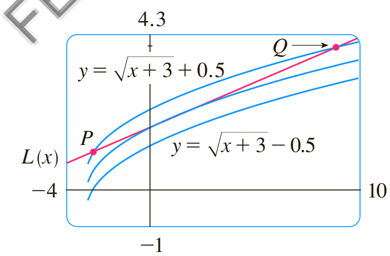


FIGURE 3

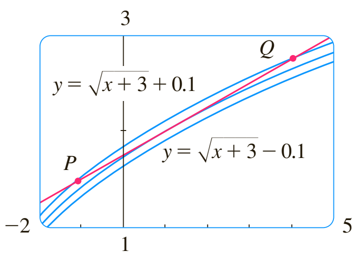


FIGURE 4

This says that the linear approximation should lie between the curves obtained by shifting the curve $y = \sqrt{x+3}$ upward and downward by an amount 0.5. Figure 3 shows the tangent line $y = (7 + x)/4$ intersecting the upper curve $y = \sqrt{x+3} + 0.5$ at P and Q. Zooming in and using the cursor, we estimate that the x-coordinate of P is about -2.66 and the x-coordinate of Q is about 8.66. Thus we see from the graph that the approximation

$$\sqrt{x+3} \approx \frac{7}{4} + \frac{x}{4}$$

is accurate to within 0.5 when $-2.6 < x < 8.6$. (We have rounded -2.66 up and 8.66 down to be safe.)

Similarly, from Figure 4 we see that the approximation is accurate to within 0.1 when $-1.1 < x < 3.9$. ■

Applications to Physics

Linear approximations are often used in physics. In analyzing the consequences of an equation, a physicist sometimes needs to simplify a function by replacing it with its linear approximation. For instance, in deriving a formula for the period of a pendulum, physics textbooks obtain the expression $a_T = -g \sin\theta$ for tangential acceleration and then replace $\sin\theta$ by θ with the remark that $\sin\theta$ is very close to θ if θ is not too large. [See, for example, *Physics: Calculus*, 2d ed., by Eugene Hecht (Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole, 2000), p. 431.] You can verify that the linearization of the function $f(x) = \sin x$ at $a = 0$ is $L(x) = x$ and so the linear approximation at 0 is

$$\sin x \approx x$$

(see Exercise 40). So, in effect, the derivation of the formula for the period of a pendulum uses the tangent line approximation for the sine function.

Another example occurs in the theory of optics, where light rays that arrive at shallow angles relative to the optical axis are called *paraxial rays*. In paraxial (or Gaussian) optics, both $\sin\theta$ and $\cos\theta$ are replaced by their linearizations. In other words, the linear approximations

$$\sin\theta \approx \theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad \cos\theta \approx 1$$

are used because θ is close to 0. The results of calculations made with these approximations became the basic theoretical tool used to design lenses. [See *Optics*, 4th ed., by Eugene Hecht (San Francisco, 2002), p. 154.]

In Section 11.11 we will present several other applications of the idea of linear approximations to physics and engineering.

Differentials

The ideas behind linear approximations are sometimes formulated in the terminology and notation of *differentials*. If $y = f(x)$, where f is a differentiable function, then the **differential** dx is an independent variable; that is, dx can be given the value of any real number. The **differential** dy is then defined in terms of dx by the equation

3
$$dy = f'(x)\,dx$$

If $dx \neq 0$, we can divide both sides of Equation 3 by dx to obtain

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f'(x)$$

We have seen similar equations before, but now the left side can genuinely be interpreted as a ratio of differentials.

So dy is a dependent variable; it depends on the values of x and dx. If dx is given a specific value and x is taken to be some specific number in the domain of f, then the numerical value of dy is determined.

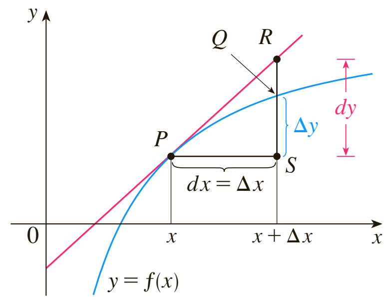


FIGURE 5

The geometric meaning of differentials is shown in Figure 5. Let $P(x, f(x))$ and $Q(x + \Delta x, f(x + \Delta x))$ be points on the graph of f and let $dx = \Delta x$. The corresponding change in y is

$$\Delta y = f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)$$

The slope of the tangent line PR is the derivative $f'(x)$. Thus the directed distance from S to R is $f'(x)\,dx = dy$. Therefore dy represents the amount that the tangent line rises or falls (the change in the linearization) when x changes by an amount dx, whereas Δy represents the amount that the curve $y = f(x)$ rises or falls when x changes by an amount $dx = \Delta x$.

EXAMPLE 3 Compare the values of Δy and dy if $y = f(x) = x^3 + x^2 - 2x + 1$ and x changes (a) from 2 to 2.05 and (b) from 2 to 2.01.

SOLUTION

(a) We have

$$f(2) = 2^3 + 2^2 - 2(2) + 1 = 9$$

$$f(2.05) = (2.05)^3 + (2.05)^2 - 2(2.05) + 1 = 9.717625$$

$$\Delta y = f(2.05) - f(2) = 0.717625$$

Figure 6 shows the function in Example 3 and a comparison of dy and Δy when $a = 2$. The viewing rectangle is [1.8, 2.5] by [6, 18].

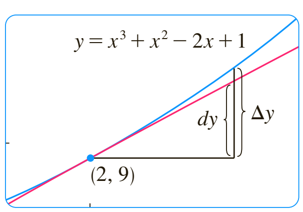


FIGURE 6

In general, $$dy = f'(x)\,dx = (3x^2 + 2x - 2)\,dx$$

When $x = 2$ and $dx = \Delta x = 0.05$, this becomes

$$dy = [3(2)^2 + 2(2) - 2]0.05 = 0.7$$

(b) $$f(2.01) = (2.01)^3 + (2.01)^2 - 2(2.01) + 1 = 9.140701$$

$$\Delta y = f(2.01) - f(2) = 0.140701$$

When $dx = \Delta x = 0.01$,

$$dy = [3(2)^2 + 2(2) - 2]0.01 = 0.14$$ ■

Notice that the approximation $\Delta y \approx dy$ becomes better as Δx becomes smaller in Example 3. Notice also that dy was easier to compute than Δy. For more complicated functions it may be impossible to compute Δy exactly. In such cases the approximation by differentials is especially useful.

In the notation of differentials, the linear approximation (1) can be written as

$$f(a + dx) \approx f(a) + dy$$

For instance, for the function $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 3}$ in Example 1, we have

$$dy = f'(x)\,dx = \frac{dx}{2\sqrt{x + 3}}$$

If $a = 1$ and $dx = \Delta x = 0.05$, then

$$dy = \frac{0.05}{2\sqrt{1 + 3}} = 0.0125$$

and
$$\sqrt{4.05} = f(1.05) \approx f(1) + dy = 2.0125$$

just as we found in Example 1.

Our final example illustrates the use of differentials in estimating the errors that occur because of approximate measurements.

EXAMPLE 4 The radius of a sphere was measured and found to be 21 cm with a possible error in measurement of at most 0.05 cm. What is the maximum error in using this value of the radius to compute the volume of the sphere?

SOLUTION If the radius of the sphere is r, then its volume is $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. If the error in the measured value of r is denoted by $dr = \Delta r$, then the corresponding error in the calculated value of V is ΔV, which can be approximated by the differential

$$dV = 4\pi r^2\,dr$$

When $r = 21$ and $dr = 0.05$, this becomes

$$dV = 4\pi(21)^2 0.05 \approx 277$$

The maximum error in the calculated volume is about 277 cm^3. ■

NOTE Although the possible error in Example 4 may appear to be rather large, a better picture of the error is given by the **relative error**, which is computed by dividing the error by the total volume:

$$\frac{\Delta V}{V} \approx \frac{dV}{V} = \frac{4\pi r^2\,dr}{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3} = 3\,\frac{dr}{r}$$

Thus the relative error in the volume is about three times the relative error in the radius. In Example 4 the relative error in the radius is approximately $dr/r = 0.05/21 \approx 0.0024$ and it produces a relative error of about 0.007 in the volume. The errors could also be expressed as **percentage errors** of 0.24% in the radius and 0.7% in the volume.

2.9 EXERCISES

1–4 Find the linearization $L(x)$ of the function at a.

1. $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 + 3, \quad a = -2$

2. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad a = \pi/6$

3. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad a = 4$

4. $f(x) = 2/\sqrt{x^2 - 5}, \quad a = 3$

5. Find the linear approximation of the function $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}$ at $a = 0$ and use it to approximate the numbers $\sqrt{0.9}$ and $\sqrt{0.99}$. Illustrate by graphing f and the tangent line.

6. Find the linear approximation of the function $g(x) = \sqrt[3]{1 + x}$ at $a = 0$ and use it to approximate the numbers $\sqrt[3]{0.95}$ and $\sqrt[3]{1.1}$. Illustrate by graphing g and the tangent line.

7–10 Verify the given linear approximation at $a = 0$. Then determine the values of x for which the linear approximation is accurate to within 0.1.

7. $\sqrt[4]{1 + 2x} \approx 1 + \frac{1}{2}x$

8. $(1 + x)^{-3} \approx 1 - 3x$

9. $1/(1 + 2x)^4 \approx 1 - 8x$

10. $\tan x \approx x$

11–14 Find the differential dy of each function.

11. (a) $y = (x^2 - 3)^{-2}$ (b) $y = \sqrt{1 - t^4}$

12. (a) $y = \dfrac{1 + 2u}{1 + 3u}$ (b) $y = \theta^2 \sin 2\theta$

13. (a) $y = \tan \sqrt{t}$ (b) $y = \dfrac{1 - v^2}{1 + v^2}$

14. (a) $y = \sqrt{t - \cos t}$ (b) $y = \dfrac{1}{x} \sin x$

15–18 (a) Find the differential dy and (b) evaluate dy for the given values of x and dx.

15. $y = \tan x, \quad x = \pi/4, \quad dx = -0.1$

16. $y = \cos \pi x, \quad x = \frac{1}{3}, \quad dx = -0.02$

17. $y = \sqrt{3 + x^2}, \quad x = 1, \quad dx = -0.1$

18. $y = \dfrac{x + 1}{x - 1}, \quad x = 2, \quad dx = 0.05$

19–22 Compute Δy and dy for the given values of x and $dx = \Delta x$. Then sketch a diagram like Figure 5 showing the line segments with lengths dx, dy, and Δy.

19. $y = x^2 - 4x, \quad x = 3, \quad \Delta x = 0.5$

20. $y = x - x^3, \quad x = 0, \quad \Delta x = -0.3$

21. $y = \sqrt{x - 2}, \quad x = 3, \quad \Delta x = 0.8$

22. $y = x^3, \quad x = 1, \quad \Delta x = 0.5$

23–28 Use a linear approximation (or differentials) to estimate the given number.

23. $(1.999)^4$

24. $1/4.002$

25. $\sqrt[3]{1001}$

26. $\sqrt{100.5}$

27. $\tan 2°$

28. $\cos 29°$

29–30 Explain, in terms of linear approximations or differentials, why the approximation is reasonable.

29. $\sec 0.08 \approx 1$

30. $\sqrt{4.02} \approx 2.005$

31. The edge of a cube was found to be 30 cm with a possible error in measurement of 0.1 cm. Use differentials to estimate the maximum possible error, relative error, and percentage error in computing (a) the volume of the cube and (b) the surface area of the cube.

32. The radius of a circular disk is given as 24 cm with a maximum error in measurement of 0.2 cm.

(a) Use differentials to estimate the maximum error in the calculated area of the disk.

(b) What is the relative error? What is the percentage error?

33. The circumference of a sphere was measured to be 84 cm with a possible error of 0.5 cm.

(a) Use differentials to estimate the maximum error in the calculated surface area. What is the relative error?

(b) Use differentials to estimate the maximum error in the calculated volume. What is the relative error?

34. Use differentials to estimate the amount of paint needed to apply a coat of paint 0.05 cm thick to a hemispherical dome with diameter 50 m.

35. (a) Use differentials to find a formula for the approximate volume of a thin cylindrical shell with height h, inner radius r, and thickness Δr.

(b) What is the error involved in using the formula from part (a)?

36. One side of a right triangle is known to be 20 cm long and the opposite angle is measured as 30°, with a possible error of $\pm 1°$.

(a) Use differentials to estimate the error in computing the length of the hypotenuse.

(b) What is the percentage error?

37. If a current I passes through a resistor with resistance R, Ohm's Law states that the voltage drop is $V = RI$. If V is constant and R is measured with a certain error, use differentials to show that the relative error in calculating I is approximately the same (in magnitude) as the relative error in R.

38. When blood flows along a blood vessel, the flux F (the volume of blood per unit time that flows past a given point) is proportional to the fourth power of the radius R of the blood vessel:

$$F = kR^4$$

(This is known as Poiseuille's Law; we will show why it is true in Section 8.4.) A partially clogged artery can be expanded by an operation called angioplasty, in which a balloon-tipped catheter is inflated inside the artery in order to widen it and restore the normal blood flow.

Show that the relative change in F is about four times the relative change in R. How will a 5% increase in the radius affect the flow of blood?

39. Establish the following rules for working with differentials (where c denotes a constant and u and v are functions of x).

(a) $dc = 0$ (b) $d(cu) = c\,du$

(c) $d(u + v) = du + dv$ (d) $d(uv) = u\,dv + v\,du$

(e) $d\left(\dfrac{u}{v}\right) = \dfrac{v\,du - u\,dv}{v^2}$ (f) $d(x^n) = nx^{n-1}\,dx$

40. On page 431 of *Physics: Calculus*, 2d ed., by Eugene Hecht (Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole, 2000), in the course of deriving the formula $T = 2\pi\sqrt{L/g}$ for the period of a pendulum of length L, the author obtains the equation $a_T = -g \sin\theta$ for the tangential acceleration of the bob of the pendulum. He then says, "for small angles, the value of θ in radians is very nearly the value of $\sin\theta$; they differ by less than 2% out to about 20°."

(a) Verify the linear approximation at 0 for the sine function:

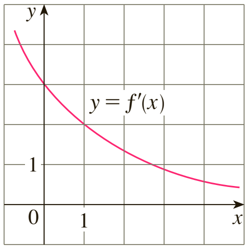
$$\sin x \approx x$$

(b) Use a graphing device to determine the values of x for which $\sin x$ and x differ by less than 2%. Then verify Hecht's statement by converting from radians to degrees.

41. Suppose that the only information we have about a function f is that $f(1) = 5$ and the graph of its *derivative* is as shown.

(a) Use a linear approximation to estimate $f(0.9)$ and $f(1.1)$.

(b) Are your estimates in part (a) too large or too small? Explain.



42. Suppose that we don't have a formula for $g(x)$ but we know that $g(2) = -4$ and $g'(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 5}$ for all x.

(a) Use a linear approximation to estimate $g(1.95)$ and $g(2.05)$.

(b) Are your estimates in part (a) too large or too small? Explain.

LABORATORY PROJECT TAYLOR POLYNOMIALS

The tangent line approximation $L(x)$ is the best first-degree (linear) approximation to $f(x)$ near $x = a$ because $f(x)$ and $L(x)$ have the same rate of change (derivative) at a. For a better approximation than a linear one, let's try a second-degree (quadratic) approximation $P(x)$. In other words, we approximate a curve by a parabola instead of by a straight line. To make sure that the approximation is a good one, we stipulate the following:

(i) $P(a) = f(a)$ (P and f should have the same value at a.)

(ii) $P'(a) = f'(a)$ (P and f should have the same rate of change at a.)

(iii) $P''(a) = f''(a)$ (The slopes of P and f should change at the same rate at a.)

1. Find the quadratic approximation $P(x) = A + Bx + Cx^2$ to the function $f(x) = \cos x$ that satisfies conditions (i), (ii), and (iii) with $a = 0$. Graph P, f, and the linear approximation $L(x) = 1$ on a common screen. Comment on how well the functions P and L approximate f.

2. Determine the values of x for which the quadratic approximation $f(x) \approx P(x)$ in Problem 1 is accurate to within 0.1. [*Hint:* Graph $y = P(x)$, $y = \cos x - 0.1$, and $y = \cos x + 0.1$ on a common screen.]

3. To approximate a function f by a quadratic function P near a number a, it is best to write P in the form

$$P(x) = A + B(x - a) + C(x - a)^2$$

Show that the quadratic function that satisfies conditions (i), (ii), and (iii) is

$$P(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x - a) + \tfrac{1}{2}f''(a)(x - a)^2$$

4. Find the quadratic approximation to $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 3}$ near $a = 1$. Graph f, the quadratic approximation, and the linear approximation from Example 2.9.2 on a common screen. What do you conclude?

5. Instead of being satisfied with a linear or quadratic approximation to $f(x)$ near $x = a$, let's try to find better approximations with higher-degree polynomials. We look for an nth-degree polynomial

$$T_n(x) = c_0 + c_1(x - a) + c_2(x - a)^2 + c_3(x - a)^3 + \cdots + c_n(x - a)^n$$

such that T_n and its first n derivatives have the same values at $x = a$ as f and its first n derivatives. By differentiating repeatedly and setting $x = a$, show that these conditions are satisfied if $c_0 = f(a)$, $c_1 = f'(a)$, $c_2 = \frac{1}{2}f''(a)$, and in general

$$c_k = \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}$$

where $k! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot \cdots \cdot k$. The resulting polynomial

$$T_n(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x - a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x - a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x - a)^n$$

is called the ***n*th-degree Taylor polynomial of *f* centered at *a***.

6. Find the 8th-degree Taylor polynomial centered at $a = 0$ for the function $f(x) = \cos x$. Graph f together with the Taylor polynomials T_2, T_4, T_6, T_8 in the viewing rectangle $[-5, 5]$ by $[-1.4, 1.4]$ and comment on how well they approximate f.

2 REVIEW

CONCEPT CHECK

Answers to the Concept Check can be found on the back endpapers.

1. Write an expression for the slope of the tangent line to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $(a, f(a))$.

2. Suppose an object moves along a straight line with position $f(t)$ at time t. Write an expression for the instantaneous velocity of the object at time $t = a$. How can you interpret this velocity in terms of the graph of f?

3. If $y = f(x)$ and x changes from x_1 to x_2, write expressions for the following.
(a) The average rate of change of y with respect to x over the interval $[x_1, x_2]$.
(b) The instantaneous rate of change of y with respect to x at $x = x_1$.

4. Define the derivative $f'(a)$. Discuss two ways of interpreting this number.

5. (a) What does it mean for f to be differentiable at a?
(b) What is the relation between the differentiability and continuity of a function?
(c) Sketch the graph of a function that is continuous but not differentiable at $a = 2$.

6. Describe several ways in which a function can fail to be differentiable. Illustrate with sketches.

7. What are the second and third derivatives of a function f? If f is the position function of an object, how can you interpret f'' and f'''?

8. State each differentiation rule both in symbols and in words.
(a) The Power Rule (b) The Constant Multiple Rule
(c) The Sum Rule (d) The Difference Rule
(e) The Product Rule (f) The Quotient Rule
(g) The Chain Rule

9. State the derivative of each function.
(a) $y = x^n$ (b) $y = \sin x$ (c) $y = \cos x$
(d) $y = \tan x$ (e) $y = \csc x$ (f) $y = \sec x$
(g) $y = \cot x$

10. Explain how implicit differentiation works.

11. Give several examples of how the derivative can be interpreted as a rate of change in physics, chemistry, biology, economics, or other sciences.

12. (a) Write an expression for the linearization of f at a.
(b) If $y = f(x)$, write an expression for the differential dy.
(c) If $dx = \Delta x$, draw a picture showing the geometric meanings of Δy and dy.

TRUE-FALSE QUIZ

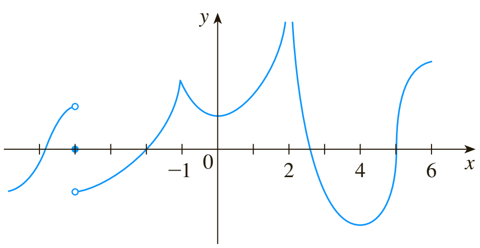
Determine whether the statement is true or false. If it is true, explain why. If it is false, explain why or give an example that disproves the statement.

1. If f is continuous at a, then f is differentiable at a.
2. If f and g are differentiable, then
$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x) + g(x)] = f'(x) + g'(x)$$
3. If f and g are differentiable, then
$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] = f'(x)g'(x)$$
4. If f and g are differentiable, then
$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[f(g(x))\right] = f'(g(x))g'(x)$$
5. If f is differentiable, then $\dfrac{d}{dx}\sqrt{f(x)} = \dfrac{f'(x)}{2\sqrt{f(x)}}$.
6. If f is differentiable, then $\dfrac{d}{dx}f\left(\sqrt{x}\right) = \dfrac{f'(x)}{2\sqrt{x}}$.
7. $\dfrac{d}{dx}|x^2 + x| = |2x + 1|$
8. If $f'(r)$ exists, then $\lim_{x\to r} f(x) = f(r)$.
9. If $g(x) = x^5$, then $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2}\frac{g(x) - g(2)}{x - 2} = 80$
10. $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \left(\dfrac{dy}{dx}\right)^2$
11. An equation of the tangent line to the parabola $y = x^2$ at $(-2, 4)$ is $y - 4 = 2x(x + 2)$.
12. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\tan^2 x) = \dfrac{d}{dx}(\sec^2 x)$
13. The derivative of a polynomial is a polynomial.
14. The derivative of a rational function is a rational function.
15. If $f(x) = (x^6 - x^4)^5$, then $f^{(31)}(x) = 0$.

EXERCISES

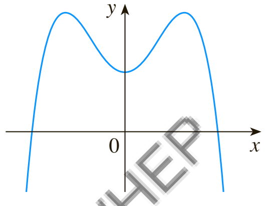
1. The displacement (in meters) of an object moving in a straight line is given by $s = 1 + 2t + \frac{1}{4}t^2$, where t is measured in seconds.
   (a) Find the average velocity over each time period.
   (i) $[1, 3]$ (ii) $[1, 2]$ (iii) $[1, 1.5]$ (iv) $[1, 1.1]$
   (b) Find the instantaneous velocity when $t = 1$.

2. The graph of f is shown. State, with reasons, the numbers at which f is not differentiable.

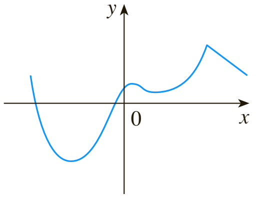


3–4 Trace or copy the graph of the function. Then sketch a graph of its derivative directly beneath.

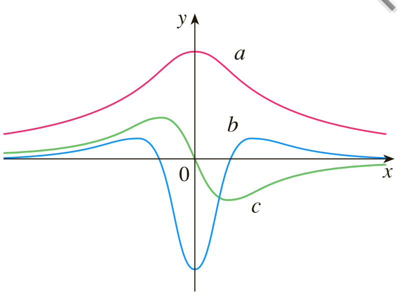
3.



4.



5. The figure shows the graphs of f, f', and f''. Identify each curve, and explain your choices.



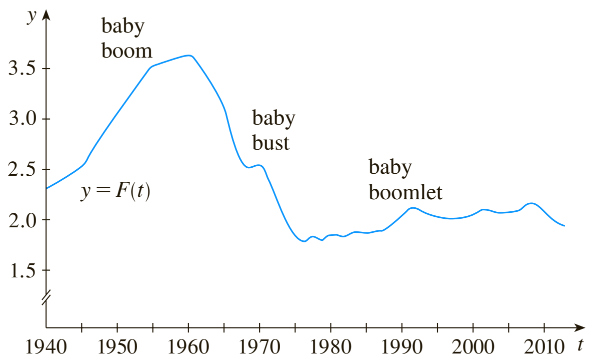
6. Find a function f and a number a such that
$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(2 + h)^6 - 64}{h} = f'(a)$$

7. The total cost of repaying a student loan at an interest rate of r% per year is $C = f(r)$.
   (a) What is the meaning of the derivative $f'(r)$? What are its units?
   (b) What does the statement $f'(10) = 1200$ mean?
   (c) Is $f'(r)$ always positive or does it change sign?

8. The *total fertility rate* at time t, denoted by $F(t)$, is an estimate of the average number of children born to each woman (assuming that current birth rates remain constant). The graph

of the total fertility rate in the United States shows the fluctuations from 1940 to 2010.

(a) Estimate the values of $F'(1950)$, $F'(1965)$, and $F'(1987)$.
(b) What are the meanings of these derivatives?
(c) Can you suggest reasons for the values of these derivatives?



9. Let $P(t)$ be the percentage of Americans under the age of 18 at time t. The table gives values of this function in census years from 1950 to 2010.

t	$P(t)$	t	$P(t)$
1950	31.1	1990	25.7
1960	35.7	2000	25.7
1970	34.0	2010	24.0
1980	28.0		

(a) What is the meaning of $P'(t)$? What are its units?
(b) Construct a table of estimated values for $P'(t)$.
(c) Graph P and P'.
(d) How would it be possible to get more accurate values for $P'(t)$?

10–11 Find $f'(x)$ from first principles, that is, directly from the definition of a derivative.

10. $f(x) = \dfrac{4 - x}{3 + x}$

11. $f(x) = x^3 + 5x + 4$

12. (a) If $f(x) = \sqrt{3 - 5x}$, use the definition of a derivative to find $f'(x)$.
(b) Find the domains of f and f'.
(c) Graph f and f' on a common screen. Compare the graphs to see whether your answer to part (a) is reasonable.

13–40 Calculate y'.

13. $y = (x^2 + x^3)^4$

14. $y = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}} - \dfrac{1}{\sqrt[5]{x^3}}$

15. $y = \dfrac{x^2 - x + 2}{\sqrt{x}}$

16. $y = \dfrac{\tan x}{1 + \cos x}$

17. $y = x^2 \sin \pi x$

18. $y = \left(x + \dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)^{\sqrt{7}}$

19. $y = \dfrac{t^4 - 1}{t^4 + 1}$

20. $y = \sin(\cos x)$

21. $y = \tan \sqrt{1 - x}$

22. $y = \dfrac{1}{\sin(x - \sin x)}$

23. $xy^4 + x^2 y = x + 3y$

24. $y = \sec(1 + x^2)$

25. $y = \dfrac{\sec 2\theta}{1 + \tan 2\theta}$

26. $x^2 \cos y + \sin 2y = xy$

27. $y = (1 - x^{-1})^{-1}$

28. $y = 1/\sqrt[3]{x + \sqrt{x}}$

29. $\sin(xy) = x^2 - y$

30. $y = \sqrt{\sin \sqrt{x}}$

31. $y = \cot(3x^2 + 5)$

32. $y = \dfrac{(x + \lambda)^4}{x^4 + \lambda^4}$

33. $y = \sqrt{x} \cos \sqrt{x}$

34. $y = \dfrac{\sin mx}{x}$

35. $y = \tan^2(\sin \theta)$

36. $x \tan y = y - 1$

37. $y = \sqrt[5]{x \tan x}$

38. $y = \dfrac{(x - 1)(x - 4)}{(x - 2)(x - 3)}$

39. $y = \sin\left(\tan \sqrt{1 + x^3}\right)$

40. $y = \sin^2\left(\cos\sqrt{\sin \pi x}\right)$

41. If $f(t) = \sqrt{4t + 1}$, find $f''(2)$.

42. If $g(\theta) = \theta \sin \theta$, find $g''(\pi/6)$.

43. Find y'' if $x^6 + y^6 = 1$.

44. Find $f^{(n)}(x)$ if $f(x) = 1/(2 - x)$.

45–46 Find the limit.

45. $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sec x}{1 - \sin x}$

46. $\displaystyle\lim_{t \to 0} \frac{t^3}{\tan^3 2t}$

47–48 Find an equation of the tangent to the curve at the given point.

47. $y = 4 \sin^2 x$, $(\pi/6, 1)$

48. $y = \dfrac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1}$, $(0, -1)$

49–50 Find equations of the tangent line and normal line to the curve at the given point.

49. $y = \sqrt{1 + 4 \sin x}$, $(0, 1)$

50. $x^2 + 4xy + y^2 = 13$, $(2, 1)$

51. (a) If $f(x) = x\sqrt{5 - x}$, find $f'(x)$.
(b) Find equations of the tangent lines to the curve $y = x\sqrt{5 - x}$ at the points $(1, 2)$ and $(4, 4)$.

(c) Illustrate part (b) by graphing the curve and tangent lines on the same screen.

(d) Check to see that your answer to part (a) is reasonable by comparing the graphs of f and f'.

52. (a) If $f(x) = 4x - \tan x$, $-\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$, find f' and f''.

(b) Check to see that your answers to part (a) are reasonable by comparing the graphs of f, f', and f''.

53. At what points on the curve $y = \sin x + \cos x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$, is the tangent line horizontal?

54. Find the points on the ellipse $x^2 + 2y^2 = 1$ where the tangent line has slope 1.

55. Find a parabola $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ that passes through the point $(1, 4)$ and whose tangent lines at $x = -1$ and $x = 5$ have slopes 6 and -2, respectively.

56. How many tangent lines to the curve $y = x/(x + 1)$ pass through the point $(1, 2)$? At which points do these tangent lines touch the curve?

57. If $f(x) = (x - a)(x - b)(x - c)$, show that

$$\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = \frac{1}{x - a} + \frac{1}{x - b} + \frac{1}{x - c}$$

58. (a) By differentiating the double-angle formula

$$\cos 2x = \cos^2 x - \sin^2 x$$

obtain the double-angle formula for the sine function.

(b) By differentiating the addition formula

$$\sin(x + a) = \sin x \cos a + \cos x \sin a$$

obtain the addition formula for the cosine function.

59. Suppose that

$$f(1) = 2 \quad f'(1) = 3 \quad f(2) = 1 \quad f'(2) = 2$$
$$g(1) = 3 \quad g'(1) = 1 \quad g(2) = 1 \quad g'(2) = 4$$

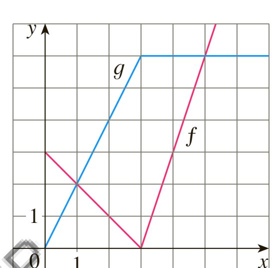
(a) If $S(x) = f(x) + g(x)$, find $S'(1)$.

(b) If $P(x) = f(x)g(x)$, find $P'(2)$.

(c) If $Q(x) = f(x)/g(x)$, find $Q'(1)$.

(d) If $C(x) = f(g(x))$, find $C'(2)$.

60. If f and g are the functions whose graphs are shown, let $P(x) = f(x)g(x)$, $Q(x) = f(x)/g(x)$, and $C(x) = f(g(x))$. Find (a) $P'(2)$, (b) $Q'(2)$, and (c) $C'(2)$.



61–68 Find f' in terms of g'.

61. $f(x) = x^2 g(x)$

62. $f(x) = g(x^2)$

63. $f(x) = [g(x)]^2$

64. $f(x) = x^a g(x^b)$

65. $f(x) = g(g(x))$

66. $f(x) = \sin(g(x))$

67. $f(x) = g(\sin x)$

68. $f(x) = g(\tan \sqrt{x})$

69–71 Find h' in terms of f' and g'.

69. $h(x) = \dfrac{f(x)g(x)}{f(x) + g(x)}$

70. $h(x) = \sqrt{\dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)}}$

71. $h(x) = f(g(\sin 4x))$

72. A particle moves along a horizontal line so that its coordinate at time t is $x = \sqrt{b^2 + c^2 t^2}$, $t \geqslant 0$, where b and c are positive constants.

(a) Find the velocity and acceleration functions.

(b) Show that the particle always moves in the positive direction.

73. A particle moves on a vertical line so that its coordinate at time t is $y = t^3 - 12t + 3$, $t \geqslant 0$.

(a) Find the velocity and acceleration functions.

(b) When is the particle moving upward and when is it moving downward?

(c) Find the distance that the particle travels in the time interval $0 \leqslant t \leqslant 3$.

(d) Graph the position, velocity, and acceleration functions for $0 \leqslant t \leqslant 3$.

(e) When is the particle speeding up? When is it slowing down?

74. The volume of a right circular cone is $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$, where r is the radius of the base and h is the height.

(a) Find the rate of change of the volume with respect to the height if the radius is constant.

(b) Find the rate of change of the volume with respect to the radius if the height is constant.

75. The mass of part of a wire is $x(1 + \sqrt{x})$ kilograms, where x is measured in meters from one end of the wire. Find the linear density of the wire when $x = 4$ m.

76. The cost, in dollars, of producing x units of a certain commodity is

$$C(x) = 920 + 2x - 0.02x^2 + 0.00007x^3$$

(a) Find the marginal cost function.

(b) Find $C'(100)$ and explain its meaning.

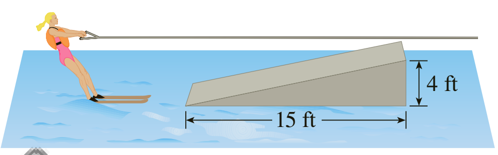
(c) Compare $C'(100)$ with the cost of producing the 101st item.

77. The volume of a cube is increasing at a rate of 10 cm^3/min. How fast is the surface area increasing when the length of an edge is 30 cm?

78. A paper cup has the shape of a cone with height 10 cm and radius 3 cm (at the top). If water is poured into the cup at a rate of 2 cm^3/s, how fast is the water level rising when the water is 5 cm deep?

79. A balloon is rising at a constant speed of 5 ft/s. A boy is cycling along a straight road at a speed of 15 ft/s. When he passes under the balloon, it is 45 ft above him. How fast is the distance between the boy and the balloon increasing 3 s later?

80. A waterskier skis over the ramp shown in the figure at a speed of 30 ft/s. How fast is she rising as she leaves the ramp?



81. The angle of elevation of the sun is decreasing at a rate of 0.25 rad/h. How fast is the shadow cast by a 400-ft-tall building increasing when the angle of elevation of the sun is $\pi/6$?

82. (a) Find the linear approximation to $f(x) = \sqrt{25 - x^2}$ near 3.
(b) Illustrate part (a) by graphing f and the linear approximation.
(c) For what values of x is the linear approximation accurate to within 0.1?

83. (a) Find the linearization of $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{1 + 3x}$ at $a = 0$. State the corresponding linear approximation and use it to give an approximate value for $\sqrt[3]{1.03}$.
(b) Determine the values of x for which the linear approximation given in part (a) is accurate to within 0.1.

84. Evaluate dy if $y = x^3 - 2x^2 + 1$, $x = 2$, and $dx = 0.2$.

85. A window has the shape of a square surmounted by a semicircle. The base of the window is measured as having width 60 cm with a possible error in measurement of 0.1 cm. Use differentials to estimate the maximum error possible in computing the area of the window.

86–88 Express the limit as a derivative and evaluate.

86. $\displaystyle \lim_{x \to 1} \frac{x^{17} - 1}{x - 1}$

87. $\displaystyle \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\sqrt[4]{16 + h} - 2}{h}$

88. $\displaystyle \lim_{\theta \to \pi/3} \frac{\cos\theta - 0.5}{\theta - \pi/3}$

89. Evaluate $\displaystyle \lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{1 + \tan x} - \sqrt{1 + \sin x}}{x^3}$.

90. Suppose f is a differentiable function such that $f(g(x)) = x$ and $f'(x) = 1 + [f(x)]^2$. Show that $g'(x) = 1/(1 + x^2)$.

91. Find $f'(x)$ if it is known that

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(2x)] = x^2$$

92. Show that the length of the portion of any tangent line to the astroid $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$ cut off by the coordinate axes is constant.

Problems Plus

Before you look at the example, cover up the solution and try it yourself first.

EXAMPLE How many lines are tangent to both of the parabolas $y = -1 - x^2$ and $y = 1 + x^2$? Find the coordinates of the points at which these tangents touch the parabolas.

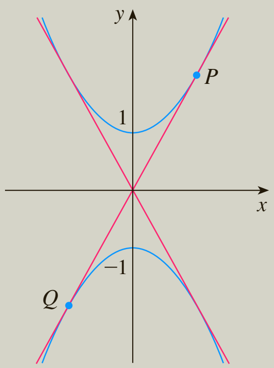


FIGURE 1

SOLUTION To gain insight into this problem, it is essential to draw a diagram. So we sketch the parabolas $y = 1 + x^2$ (which is the standard parabola $y = x^2$ shifted 1 unit upward) and $y = -1 - x^2$ (which is obtained by reflecting the first parabola about the x-axis). If we try to draw a line tangent to both parabolas, we soon discover that there are only two possibilities, as illustrated in Figure 1.

Let P be a point at which one of these tangents touches the upper parabola and let a be its x-coordinate. (The choice of notation for the unknown is important. Of course we could have used b or c or x_0 or x_1 instead of a. However, it's not advisable to use x in place of a because that x could be confused with the variable x in the equation of the parabola.) Then, since P lies on the parabola $y = 1 + x^2$, its y-coordinate must be $1 + a^2$. Because of the symmetry shown in Figure 1, the coordinates of the point Q where the tangent touches the lower parabola must be $(-a, -(1 + a^2))$.

To use the given information that the line is a tangent, we equate the slope of the line PQ to the slope of the tangent line at P. We have

$$m_{PQ} = \frac{1 + a^2 - (-1 - a^2)}{a - (-a)} = \frac{1 + a^2}{a}$$

If $f(x) = 1 + x^2$, then the slope of the tangent line at P is $f'(a) = 2a$. Thus the condition that we need to use is that

$$\frac{1 + a^2}{a} = 2a$$

Solving this equation, we get $1 + a^2 = 2a^2$, so $a^2 = 1$ and $a = \pm 1$. Therefore the points are $(1, 2)$ and $(-1, -2)$. By symmetry, the two remaining points are $(-1, 2)$ and $(1, -2)$. ■

PROBLEMS

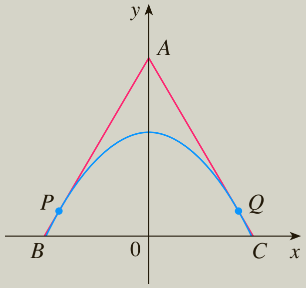


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 1

1. Find points P and Q on the parabola $y = 1 - x^2$ so that the triangle ABC formed by the x-axis and the tangent lines at P and Q is an equilateral triangle. (See the figure.)

2. Find the point where the curves $y = x^3 - 3x + 4$ and $y = 3(x^2 - x)$ are tangent to each other, that is, have a common tangent line. Illustrate by sketching both curves and the common tangent.

3. Show that the tangent lines to the parabola $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ at any two points with x-coordinates p and q must intersect at a point whose x-coordinate is halfway between p and q.

4. Show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{\sin^2 x}{1 + \cot x} + \frac{\cos^2 x}{1 + \tan x}\right) = -\cos 2x$$

5. If $f(x) = \lim_{t \to x} \dfrac{\sec t - \sec x}{t - x}$, find the value of $f'(\pi/4)$.

6. Find the values of the constants a and b such that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sqrt[3]{ax + b} - 2}{x} = \frac{5}{12}$$

7. Prove that $\dfrac{d^n}{dx^n}(\sin^4 x + \cos^4 x) = 4^{n-1}\cos(4x + n\pi/2)$.

8. If f is differentiable at a, where $a > 0$, evaluate the following limit in terms of $f'(a)$:

$$\lim_{x \to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{\sqrt{x} - \sqrt{a}}$$

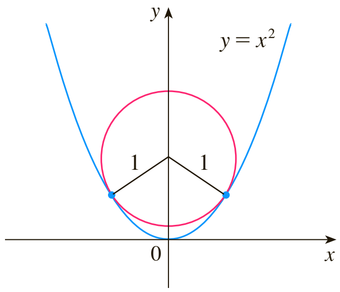


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 9

9. The figure shows a circle with radius 1 inscribed in the parabola $y = x^2$. Find the center of the circle.

10. Find all values of c such that the parabolas $y = 4x^2$ and $x = c + 2y^2$ intersect each other at right angles.

11. How many lines are tangent to both of the circles $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and $x^2 + (y - 3)^2 = 1$? At what points do these tangent lines touch the circles?

12. If $f(x) = \dfrac{x^{46} + x^{45} + 2}{1 + x}$, calculate $f^{(46)}(3)$. Express your answer using factorial notation: $n! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \cdots \cdot (n - 1) \cdot n$.

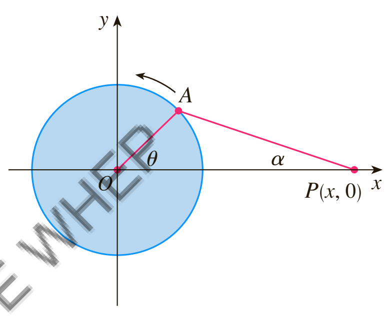


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 13

13. The figure shows a rotating wheel with radius 40 cm and a connecting rod AP with length 1.2 m. The pin P slides back and forth along the x-axis as the wheel rotates counterclockwise at a rate of 360 revolutions per minute.

(a) Find the angular velocity of the connecting rod, $d\alpha/dt$, in radians per second, when $\theta = \pi/3$.

(b) Express the distance $x = |OP|$ in terms of θ.

(c) Find an expression for the velocity of the pin P in terms of θ.

14. Tangent lines T_1 and T_2 are drawn at two points P_1 and P_2 on the parabola $y = x^2$ and they intersect at a point P. Another tangent line T is drawn at a point between P_1 and P_2; it intersects T_1 at Q_1 and T_2 at Q_2. Show that

$$\frac{|PQ_1|}{|PP_1|} + \frac{|PQ_2|}{|PP_2|} = 1$$

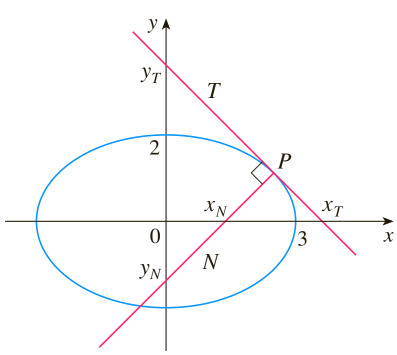


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 15

15. Let T and N be the tangent and normal lines to the ellipse $x^2/9 + y^2/4 = 1$ at any point P on the ellipse in the first quadrant. Let x_T and y_T be the x- and y-intercepts of T and x_N and y_N be the intercepts of N. As P moves along the ellipse in the first quadrant (but not on the axes), what values can x_T, y_T, x_N, and y_N take on? First try to guess the answers just by looking at the figure. Then use calculus to solve the problem and see how good your intuition is.

16. Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin(3 + x)^2 - \sin 9}{x}$.

17. (a) Use the identity for $\tan(x - y)$ (see Equation 14b in Appendix D) to show that if two lines L_1 and L_2 intersect at an angle α, then

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{m_2 - m_1}{1 + m_1 m_2}$$

where m_1 and m_2 are the slopes of L_1 and L_2, respectively.

(b) The **angle between the curves** C_1 and C_2 at a point of intersection P is defined to be the angle between the tangent lines to C_1 and C_2 at P (if these tangent lines exist). Use part (a) to find, correct to the nearest degree, the angle between each pair of curves at each point of intersection.

(i) $y = x^2$ and $y = (x - 2)^2$
(ii) $x^2 - y^2 = 3$ and $x^2 - 4x + y^2 + 3 = 0$

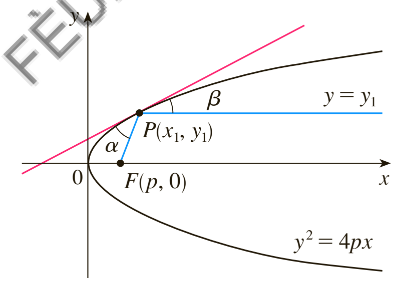


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 18

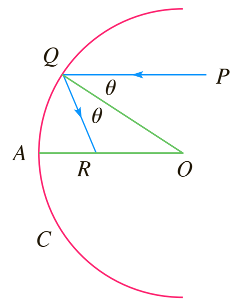


FIGURE FOR PROBLEM 19

18. Let $P(x_1, y_1)$ be a point on the parabola $y^2 = 4px$ with focus $F(p, 0)$. Let α be the angle between the parabola and the line segment FP, and let β be the angle between the horizontal line $y = y_1$ and the parabola as in the figure. Prove that $\alpha = \beta$. (Thus, by a principle of geometrical optics, light from a source placed at F will be reflected along a line parallel to the x-axis. This explains why *paraboloids,* the surfaces obtained by rotating parabolas about their axes, are used as the shape of some automobile headlights and mirrors for telescopes.)

19. Suppose that we replace the parabolic mirror of Problem 18 by a spherical mirror. Although the mirror has no focus, we can show the existence of an *approximate* focus. In the figure, C is a semicircle with center O. A ray of light coming in toward the mirror parallel to the axis along the line PQ will be reflected to the point R on the axis so that $\angle PQO = \angle OQR$ (the angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection). What happens to the point R as P is taken closer and closer to the axis?

20. If f and g are differentiable functions with $f(0) = g(0) = 0$ and $g'(0) \neq 0$, show that

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{f'(0)}{g'(0)}$$

21. Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{\sin(a + 2x) - 2\sin(a + x) + \sin a}{x^2}$.

22. Given an ellipse $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$, where $a \neq b$, find the equation of the set of all points from which there are two tangents to the curve whose slopes are (a) reciprocals and (b) negative reciprocals.

23. Find the two points on the curve $y = x^4 - 2x^2 - x$ that have a common tangent line.

24. Suppose that three points on the parabola $y = x^2$ have the property that their normal lines intersect at a common point. Show that the sum of their x-coordinates is 0.

25. A *lattice point* in the plane is a point with integer coordinates. Suppose that circles with radius r are drawn using all lattice points as centers. Find the smallest value of r such that any line with slope $\frac{2}{5}$ intersects some of these circles.

26. A cone of radius r centimeters and height h centimeters is lowered point first at a rate of 1 cm/s into a tall cylinder of radius R centimeters that is partially filled with water. How fast is the water level rising at the instant the cone is completely submerged?

27. A container in the shape of an inverted cone has height 16 cm and radius 5 cm at the top. It is partially filled with a liquid that oozes through the sides at a rate proportional to the area of the container that is in contact with the liquid. (The surface area of a cone is πrl, where r is the radius and l is the slant height.) If we pour the liquid into the container at a rate of 2 cm^3/min, then the height of the liquid decreases at a rate of 0.3 cm/min when the height is 10 cm. If our goal is to keep the liquid at a constant height of 10 cm, at what rate should we pour the liquid into the container?

CAS **28.** (a) The cubic function $f(x) = x(x - 2)(x - 6)$ has three distinct zeros: 0, 2, and 6. Graph f and its tangent lines at the *average* of each pair of zeros. What do you notice?
(b) Suppose the cubic function $f(x) = (x - a)(x - b)(x - c)$ has three distinct zeros: a, b, and c. Prove, with the help of a computer algebra system, that a tangent line drawn at the average of the zeros a and b intersects the graph of f at the third zero.

3 Applications of Differentiation

© Targn Pleiades / Shutterstock.com

When flying, some small birds—like the finch pictured here—alternate between flapping their wings and keeping them folded while gliding. In the project on page 271, we will investigate how frequently a bird should flap its wings in order to minimize the energy required.

WE HAVE ALREADY INVESTIGATED SOME of the applications of derivatives, but now that we know the differentiation rules we are in a better position to pursue the applications of differentiation in greater depth. Here we learn how derivatives affect the shape of a graph of a function and, in particular, how they help us locate maximum and minimum values of functions. Many practical problems require us to minimize a cost or maximize an area or somehow find the best possible outcome of a situation. In particular, we will be able to investigate the optimal shape of a can and to explain the location of rainbows in the sky.

3.1 Maximum and Minimum Values

Some of the most important applications of differential calculus are *optimization problems*, in which we are required to find the optimal (best) way of doing something. Here are examples of such problems that we will solve in this chapter:

- What is the shape of a can that minimizes manufacturing costs?
- What is the maximum acceleration of a space shuttle? (This is an important question to the astronauts who have to withstand the effects of acceleration.)
- What is the radius of a contracted windpipe that expels air most rapidly during a cough?
- At what angle should blood vessels branch so as to minimize the energy expended by the heart in pumping blood?

These problems can be reduced to finding the maximum or minimum values of a function. Let's first explain exactly what we mean by maximum and minimum values.

We see that the highest point on the graph of the function f shown in Figure 1 is the point $(3, 5)$. In other words, the largest value of f is $f(3) = 5$. Likewise, the smallest value is $f(6) = 2$. We say that $f(3) = 5$ is the *absolute maximum* of f and $f(6) = 2$ is the *absolute minimum*. In general, we use the following definition.

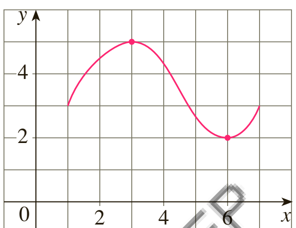


FIGURE 1

1 Definition Let c be a number in the domain D of a function f. Then $f(c)$ is the

- **absolute maximum** value of f on D if $f(c) \geqslant f(x)$ for all x in D.
- **absolute minimum** value of f on D if $f(c) \leqslant f(x)$ for all x in D.

An absolute maximum or minimum is sometimes called a **global** maximum or minimum. The maximum and minimum values of f are called **extreme values** of f.

Figure 2 shows the graph of a function f with absolute maximum at d and absolute minimum at a. Note that $(d, f(d))$ is the highest point on the graph and $(a, f(a))$ is the lowest point. In Figure 2, if we consider only values of x near b [for instance, if we restrict our attention to the interval (a, c)], then $f(b)$ is the largest of those values of $f(x)$ and is called a *local maximum value* of f. Likewise, $f(c)$ is called a *local minimum value* of f because $f(c) \leqslant f(x)$ for x near c [in the interval (b, d), for instance]. The function f also has a local minimum at e. In general, we have the following definition.

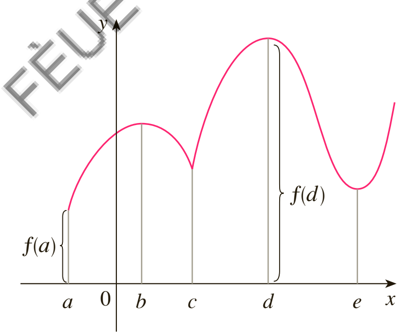


FIGURE 2
Abs min $f(a)$, abs max $f(d)$,
loc min $f(c), f(e)$, loc max $f(b), f(d)$

2 Definition The number $f(c)$ is a

- **local maximum** value of f if $f(c) \geqslant f(x)$ when x is near c.
- **local minimum** value of f if $f(c) \leqslant f(x)$ when x is near c.

In Definition 2 (and elsewhere), if we say that something is true **near** c, we mean that it is true on some open interval containing c. For instance, in Figure 3 we see that $f(4) = 5$ is a local minimum because it's the smallest value of f on the interval I. It's not the absolute minimum because $f(x)$ takes smaller values when x is near 12 (in the interval K, for instance). In fact $f(12) = 3$ is both a local minimum and the absolute minimum. Similarly, $f(8) = 7$ is a local maximum, but not the absolute maximum because f takes larger values near 1.

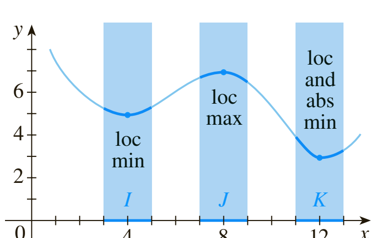


FIGURE 3

EXAMPLE 1 The function $f(x) = \cos x$ takes on its (local and absolute) maximum value of 1 infinitely many times, since $\cos 2n\pi = 1$ for any integer n and $-1 \leqslant \cos x \leqslant 1$ for all x. (See Figure 4.) Likewise, $\cos(2n + 1)\pi = -1$ is its minimum value, where n is any integer.

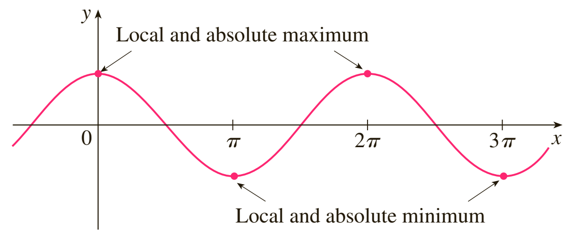


FIGURE 4
$y = \cos x$

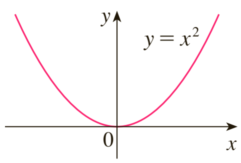


FIGURE 5
Mimimum value 0, no maximum

EXAMPLE 2 If $f(x) = x^2$, then $f(x) \geqslant f(0)$ because $x^2 \geqslant 0$ for all x. Therefore $f(0) = 0$ is the absolute (and local) minimum value of f. This corresponds to the fact that the origin is the lowest point on the parabola $y = x^2$. (See Figure 5.) However, there is no highest point on the parabola and so this function has no maximum value.

EXAMPLE 3 From the graph of the function $f(x) = x^3$, shown in Figure 6, we see that this function has neither an absolute maximum value nor an absolute minimum value. In fact, it has no local extreme values either.

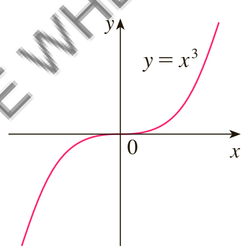


FIGURE 6
No mimimum, no maximum

EXAMPLE 4 The graph of the function

$$f(x) = 3x^4 - 16x^3 + 18x^2 \qquad -1 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$$

is shown in Figure 7. You can see that $f(1) = 5$ is a local maximum, whereas the absolute maximum is $f(-1) = 37$. (This absolute maximum is not a local maximum because it occurs at an endpoint.) Also, $f(0) = 0$ is a local minimum and $f(3) = -27$ is both a local and an absolute minimum. Note that f has neither a local nor an absolute maximum at $x = 4$.

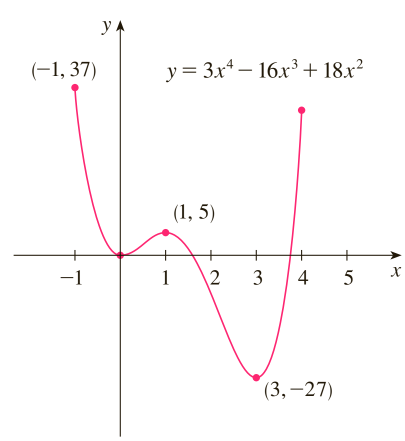


FIGURE 7

We have seen that some functions have extreme values, whereas others do not. The following theorem gives conditions under which a function is guaranteed to possess extreme values.

3 The Extreme Value Theorem If f is continuous on a closed interval $[a, b]$, then f attains an absolute maximum value $f(c)$ and an absolute minimum value $f(d)$ at some numbers c and d in $[a, b]$.

The Extreme Value Theorem is illustrated in Figure 8. Note that a function can attain an extreme value more than once. Although the Extreme Value Theorem is intuitively very plausible, it is difficult to prove and so we omit the proof.

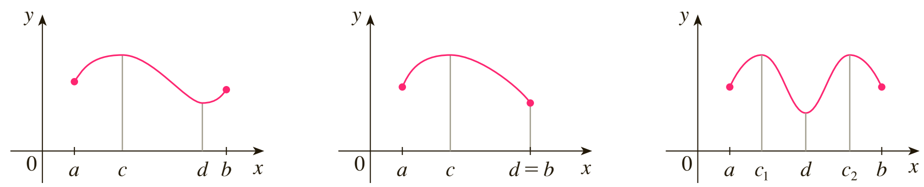


FIGURE 8
Functions continuous on a closed interval always attain extreme values.

Figures 9 and 10 show that a function need not possess extreme values if either hypothesis (continuity or closed interval) is omitted from the Extreme Value Theorem.

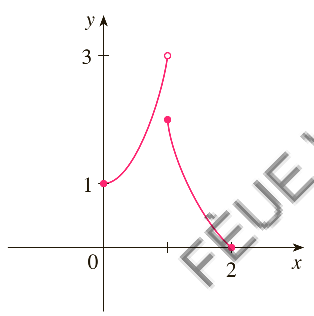


FIGURE 9
This function has minimum value $f(2) = 0$, but no maximum value.

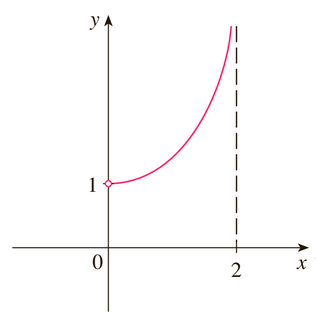


FIGURE 10
This continuous function g has no maximum or minimum.

The function f whose graph is shown in Figure 9 is defined on the closed interval $[0, 2]$ but has no maximum value. (Notice that the range of f is $[0, 3)$. The function takes on values arbitrarily close to 3, but never actually attains the value 3.) This does not contradict the Extreme Value Theorem because f is not continuous. [Nonetheless, a discontinuous function *could* have maximum and minimum values. See Exercise 13(b).]

The function g shown in Figure 10 is continuous on the open interval $(0, 2)$ but has neither a maximum nor a minimum value. [The range of g is $(1, \infty)$. The function takes on arbitrarily large values.] This does not contradict the Extreme Value Theorem because the interval $(0, 2)$ is not closed.

The Extreme Value Theorem says that a continuous function on a closed interval has a maximum value and a minimum value, but it does not tell us how to find these extreme values. Notice in Figure 8 that the absolute maximum and minimum values that are *between* a and b occur at local maximum or minimum values, so we start by looking for local extreme values.

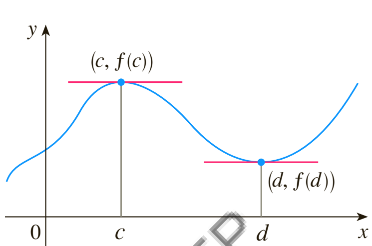


FIGURE 11

Figure 11 shows the graph of a function f with a local maximum at c and a local minimum at d. It appears that at the maximum and minimum points the tangent lines are horizontal and therefore each has slope 0. We know that the derivative is the slope of the tangent line, so it appears that $f'(c) = 0$ and $f'(d) = 0$. The following theorem says that this is always true for differentiable functions.

Fermat

Fermat's Theorem is named after Pierre Fermat (1601–1665), a French lawyer who took up mathematics as a hobby. Despite his amateur status, Fermat was one of the two inventors of analytic geometry (Descartes was the other). His methods for finding tangents to curves and maximum and minimum values (before the invention of limits and derivatives) made him a forerunner of Newton in the creation of differential calculus.

4 Fermat's Theorem If f has a local maximum or minimum at c, and if $f'(c)$ exists, then $f'(c) = 0$.

PROOF Suppose, for the sake of definiteness, that f has a local maximum at c. Then, according to Definition 2, $f(c) \geqslant f(x)$ if x is sufficiently close to c. This implies that if h is sufficiently close to 0, with h being positive or negative, then

$$f(c) \geqslant f(c + h)$$

and therefore

$$\boxed{5} \qquad f(c + h) - f(c) \leqslant 0$$

We can divide both sides of an inequality by a positive number. Thus, if $h > 0$ and h is sufficiently small, we have

$$\frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h} \leqslant 0$$

Taking the right-hand limit of both sides of this inequality (using Theorem 1.6.2), we get

$$\lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h} \leqslant \lim_{h \to 0^+} 0 = 0$$

But since $f'(c)$ exists, we have

$$f'(c) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0^+} \frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h}$$

and so we have shown that $f'(c) \leqslant 0$.

If $h < 0$, then the direction of the inequality (5) is reversed when we divide by h:

$$\frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h} \geqslant 0 \qquad h < 0$$

So, taking the left-hand limit, we have

$$f'(c) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h} = \lim_{h \to 0^-} \frac{f(c + h) - f(c)}{h} \geqslant 0$$

We have shown that $f'(c) \geqslant 0$ and also that $f'(c) \leqslant 0$. Since both of these inequalities must be true, the only possibility is that $f'(c) = 0$.

We have proved Fermat's Theorem for the case of a local maximum. The case of a local minimum can be proved in a similar manner, or we could use Exercise 70 to deduce it from the case we have just proved (see Exercise 71). ■

The following examples caution us against reading too much into Fermat's Theorem: We can't expect to locate extreme values simply by setting $f'(x) = 0$ and solving for x.

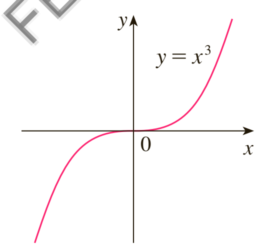


FIGURE 12
If $f(x) = x^3$, then $f'(0) = 0$, but f has no maximum or minimum.

EXAMPLE 5 If $f(x) = x^3$, then $f'(x) = 3x^2$, so $f'(0) = 0$. But f has no maximum or minimum at 0, as you can see from its graph in Figure 12. (Or observe that $x^3 > 0$ for $x > 0$ but $x^3 < 0$ for $x < 0$.) The fact that $f'(0) = 0$ simply means that the curve $y = x^3$ has a horizontal tangent at $(0, 0)$. Instead of having a maximum or minimum at $(0, 0)$, the curve crosses its horizontal tangent there. ■

EXAMPLE 6 The function $f(x) = |x|$ has its (local and absolute) minimum value at 0, but that value can't be found by setting $f'(x) = 0$ because, as was shown in Example 2.2.5, $f'(0)$ does not exist. (See Figure 13.) ■

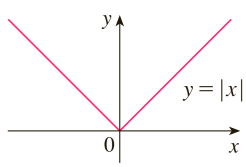


FIGURE 13
If $f(x) = |x|$, then $f(0) = 0$ is a minimum value, but $f'(0)$ does not exist.

WARNING Examples 5 and 6 show that we must be careful when using Fermat's Theorem. Example 5 demonstrates that even when $f'(c) = 0$ there need not be a maximum or minimum at c. (In other words, the converse of Fermat's Theorem is false in general.) Furthermore, there may be an extreme value even when $f'(c)$ does not exist (as in Example 6).

Fermat's Theorem does suggest that we should at least *start* looking for extreme values of f at the numbers c where $f'(c) = 0$ or where $f'(c)$ does not exist. Such numbers are given a special name.

6 Definition A **critical number** of a function f is a number c in the domain of f such that either $f'(c) = 0$ or $f'(c)$ does not exist.

EXAMPLE 7 Find the critical numbers of $f(x) = x^{3/5}(4 - x)$.

SOLUTION The Product Rule gives

$$f'(x) = x^{3/5}(-1) + (4 - x)\left(\tfrac{3}{5}x^{-2/5}\right) = -x^{3/5} + \frac{3(4 - x)}{5x^{2/5}}$$

$$= \frac{-5x + 3(4 - x)}{5x^{2/5}} = \frac{12 - 8x}{5x^{2/5}}$$

[The same result could be obtained by first writing $f(x) = 4x^{3/5} - x^{8/5}$.] Therefore $f'(x) = 0$ if $12 - 8x = 0$, that is, $x = \frac{3}{2}$, and $f'(x)$ does not exist when $x = 0$. Thus the critical numbers are $\frac{3}{2}$ and 0. ■

Figure 14 shows a graph of the function f in Example 7. It supports our answer because there is a horizontal tangent when $x = 1.5$ [where $f'(x) = 0$] and a vertical tangent when $x = 0$ [where $f'(x)$ is undefined].

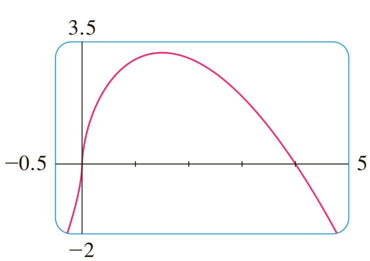


FIGURE 14

In terms of critical numbers, Fermat's Theorem can be rephrased as follows (compare Definition 6 with Theorem 4):

7 If f has a local maximum or minimum at c, then c is a critical number of f.

To find an absolute maximum or minimum of a continuous function on a closed interval, we note that either it is local [in which case it occurs at a critical number by (7)] or it occurs at an endpoint of the interval, as we see from the examples in Figure 8. Thus the following three-step procedure always works.

The Closed Interval Method To find the *absolute* maximum and minimum values of a continuous function f on a closed interval $[a, b]$:

1. Find the values of f at the critical numbers of f in (a, b).
2. Find the values of f at the endpoints of the interval.
3. The largest of the values from Steps 1 and 2 is the absolute maximum value; the smallest of these values is the absolute minimum value.

EXAMPLE 8 Find the absolute maximum and minimum values of the function

$$f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 1 \qquad -\tfrac{1}{2} \leqslant x \leqslant 4$$

SOLUTION Since f is continuous on $\left[-\frac{1}{2}, 4\right]$, we can use the Closed Interval Method:

$$f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 1$$

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 - 6x = 3x(x - 2)$$

Since $f'(x)$ exists for all x, the only critical numbers of f occur when $f'(x) = 0$, that is, $x = 0$ or $x = 2$. Notice that each of these critical numbers lies in the interval $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, 4\right)$. The values of f at these critical numbers are

$$f(0) = 1 \qquad f(2) = -3$$

The values of f at the endpoints of the interval are

$$f\left(-\tfrac{1}{2}\right) = \tfrac{1}{8} \qquad f(4) = 17$$

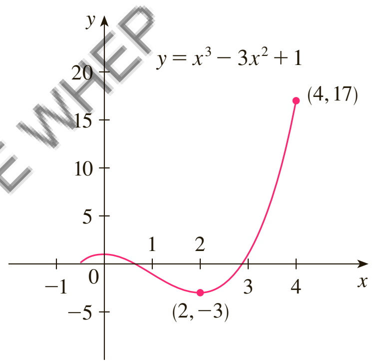


FIGURE 15

Comparing these four numbers, we see that the absolute maximum value is $f(4) = 17$ and the absolute minimum value is $f(2) = -3$.

Note that in this example the absolute maximum occurs at an endpoint, whereas the absolute minimum occurs at a critical number. The graph of f is sketched in Figure 15. ■

If you have a graphing calculator or a computer with graphing software, it is possible to estimate maximum and minimum values very easily. But, as the next example shows, calculus is needed to find the *exact* values.

EXAMPLE 9

(a) Use a graphing device to estimate the absolute minimum and maximum values of the function $f(x) = x - 2\sin x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$.

(b) Use calculus to find the exact minimum and maximum values.

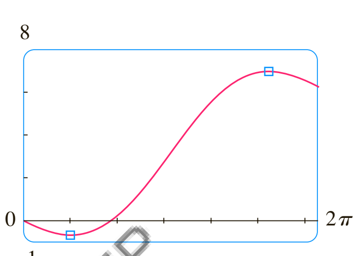


FIGURE 16

SOLUTION

(a) Figure 16 shows a graph of f in the viewing rectangle $[0, 2\pi]$ by $[-1, 8]$. By moving the cursor close to the maximum point, we see that the y-coordinates don't change very much in the vicinity of the maximum. The absolute maximum value is about 6.97 and it occurs when $x \approx 5.2$. Similarly, by moving the cursor close to the minimum point, we see that the absolute minimum value is about -0.68 and it occurs when $x \approx 1.0$. It is possible to get more accurate estimates by zooming in toward the maximum and minimum points (or using a built-in maximum or minimum feature), but instead let's use calculus.

(b) The function $f(x) = x - 2\sin x$ is continuous on $[0, 2\pi]$. Since $f'(x) = 1 - 2\cos x$, we have $f'(x) = 0$ when $\cos x = \frac{1}{2}$ and this occurs when $x = \pi/3$ or $5\pi/3$. The values of f at these critical numbers are

$$f(\pi/3) = \frac{\pi}{3} - 2\sin\frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{\pi}{3} - \sqrt{3} \approx -0.684853$$

and
$$f(5\pi/3) = \frac{5\pi}{3} - 2\sin\frac{5\pi}{3} = \frac{5\pi}{3} + \sqrt{3} \approx 6.968039$$

The values of f at the endpoints are

$$f(0) = 0 \qquad \text{and} \qquad f(2\pi) = 2\pi \approx 6.28$$

Comparing these four numbers and using the Closed Interval Method, we see that the absolute minimum value is $f(\pi/3) = \pi/3 - \sqrt{3}$ and the absolute maximum value is $f(5\pi/3) = 5\pi/3 + \sqrt{3}$. The values from part (a) serve as a check on our work. ■


NASA

EXAMPLE 10 The Hubble Space Telescope was deployed on April 24, 1990, by the space shuttle *Discovery*. A model for the velocity of the shuttle during this mission, from liftoff at $t = 0$ until the solid rocket boosters were jettisoned at $t = 126$ seconds, is given by

$$v(t) = 0.001302t^3 - 0.09029t^2 + 23.61t - 3.083$$

(in feet per second). Using this model, estimate the absolute maximum and minimum values of the *acceleration* of the shuttle between liftoff and the jettisoning of the boosters.

SOLUTION We are asked for the extreme values not of the given velocity function, but rather of the acceleration function. So we first need to differentiate to find the acceleration:

$$\begin{aligned} a(t) = v'(t) &= \frac{d}{dt}(0.001302t^3 - 0.09029t^2 + 23.61t - 3.083) \\ &= 0.003906t^2 - 0.18058t + 23.61 \end{aligned}$$

We now apply the Closed Interval Method to the continuous function a on the interval $0 \leqslant t \leqslant 126$. Its derivative is

$$a'(t) = 0.007812t - 0.18058$$

The only critical number occurs when $a'(t) = 0$:

$$t_1 = \frac{0.18058}{0.007812} \approx 23.12$$

Evaluating $a(t)$ at the critical number and at the endpoints, we have

$$a(0) = 23.61 \qquad a(t_1) \approx 21.52 \qquad a(126) \approx 62.87$$

So the maximum acceleration is about 62.87 ft/s^2 and the minimum acceleration is about 21.52 ft/s^2. ■

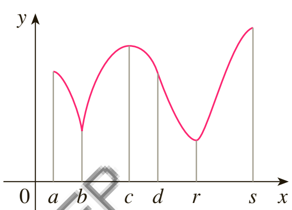
3.1 EXERCISES

1. Explain the difference between an absolute minimum and a local minimum.

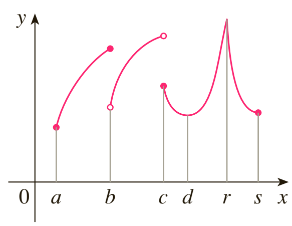
2. Suppose f is a continuous function defined on a closed interval $[a, b]$.
(a) What theorem guarantees the existence of an absolute maximum value and an absolute minimum value for f?
(b) What steps would you take to find those maximum and minimum values?

3–4 For each of the numbers a, b, c, d, r, and s, state whether the function whose graph is shown has an absolute maximum or minimum, a local maximum or minimum, or neither a maximum nor a minimum.

3.

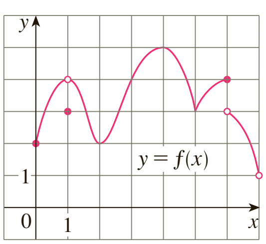


4.

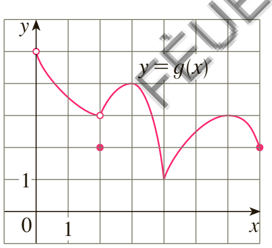


5–6 Use the graph to state the absolute and local maximum and minimum values of the function.

5.



6.



7–10 Sketch the graph of a function f that is continuous on $[1, 5]$ and has the given properties.

7. Absolute maximum at 5, absolute minimum at 2, local maximum at 3, local minima at 2 and 4

8. Absolute maximum at 4, absolute minimum at 5, local maximum at 2, local minimum at 3

9. Absolute minimum at 3, absolute maximum at 4, local maximum at 2

10. Absolute maximum at 2, absolute minimum at 5, 4 is a critical number but there is no local maximum or minimum there.

11. (a) Sketch the graph of a function that has a local maximum at 2 and is differentiable at 2.
(b) Sketch the graph of a function that has a local maximum at 2 and is continuous but not differentiable at 2.
(c) Sketch the graph of a function that has a local maximum at 2 and is not continuous at 2.

12. (a) Sketch the graph of a function on $[-1, 2]$ that has an absolute maximum but no local maximum.
(b) Sketch the graph of a function on $[-1, 2]$ that has a local maximum but no absolute maximum.

13. (a) Sketch the graph of a function on $[-1, 2]$ that has an absolute maximum but no absolute minimum.
(b) Sketch the graph of a function on $[-1, 2]$ that is discontinuous but has both an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum.

14. (a) Sketch the graph of a function that has two local maxima, one local minimum, and no absolute minimum.
(b) Sketch the graph of a function that has three local minima, two local maxima, and seven critical numbers.

15–28 Sketch the graph of f by hand and use your sketch to find the absolute and local maximum and minimum values of f. (Use the graphs and transformations of Sections 1.2 and 1.3.)

15. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}(3x - 1), \quad x \leqslant 3$

16. $f(x) = 2 - \frac{1}{3}x, \quad x \geqslant -2$

17. $f(x) = 1/x, \quad x \geqslant 1$

18. $f(x) = 1/x, \quad 1 < x < 3$

19. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad 0 \leqslant x < \pi/2$

20. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad 0 < x \leqslant \pi/2$

21. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad -\pi/2 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi/2$

22. $f(t) = \cos t, \quad -3\pi/2 \leqslant t \leqslant 3\pi/2$

23. $f(x) = 1 + (x + 1)^2, \quad -2 \leqslant x < 5$

24. $f(x) = |x|$

25. $f(x) = 1 - \sqrt{x}$

26. $f(x) = 1 - x^3$

27. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } -1 \leqslant x \leqslant 0 \\ 2 - 3x & \text{if } 0 < x \leqslant 1 \end{cases}$

28. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 1 & \text{if } 0 \leqslant x < 1 \\ 4 - 2x & \text{if } 1 \leqslant x \leqslant 3 \end{cases}$

29–42 Find the critical numbers of the function.

29. $f(x) = 4 + \frac{1}{3}x - \frac{1}{2}x^2$

30. $f(x) = x^3 + 6x^2 - 15x$

31. $f(x) = 2x^3 - 3x^2 - 36x$

32. $f(x) = 2x^3 + x^2 + 2x$

33. $g(t) = t^4 + t^3 + t^2 + 1$

34. $g(t) = |3t - 4|$

35. $g(y) = \dfrac{y - 1}{y^2 - y + 1}$

36. $h(p) = \dfrac{p - 1}{p^2 + 4}$

37. $h(t) = t^{3/4} - 2t^{1/4}$

38. $g(x) = \sqrt[3]{4 - x^2}$

39. $F(x) = x^{4/5}(x - 4)^2$

40. $g(\theta) = 4\theta - \tan\theta$

41. $f(\theta) = 2\cos\theta + \sin^2\theta$

42. $g(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$

43–44 A formula for the *derivative* of a function f is given. How many critical numbers does f have?

43. $f'(x) = 1 + \dfrac{210 \sin x}{x^2 - 6x + 10}$

44. $f'(x) = \dfrac{100\cos^2 x}{10 + x^2} - 1$

45–56 Find the absolute maximum and absolute minimum values of f on the given interval.

45. $f(x) = 12 + 4x - x^2$, $[0, 5]$

46. $f(x) = 5 + 54x - 2x^3$, $[0, 4]$

47. $f(x) = 2x^3 - 3x^2 - 12x + 1$, $[-2, 3]$

48. $f(x) = x^3 - 6x^2 + 5$, $[-3, 5]$

49. $f(x) = 3x^4 - 4x^3 - 12x^2 + 1$, $[-2, 3]$

50. $f(t) = (t^2 - 4)^3$, $[-2, 3]$

51. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{1}{x}$, $[0.2, 4]$

52. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 - x + 1}$, $[0, 3]$

53. $f(t) = t - \sqrt[3]{t}$, $[-1, 4]$

54. $f(t) = \dfrac{\sqrt{t}}{1 + t^2}$, $[0, 2]$

55. $f(t) = 2\cos t + \sin 2t$, $[0, \pi/2]$

56. $f(t) = t + \cot(t/2)$, $[\pi/4, 7\pi/4]$

57. If a and b are positive numbers, find the maximum value of $f(x) = x^a(1 - x)^b$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 1$.

58. Use a graph to estimate the critical numbers of $f(x) = |1 + 5x - x^3|$ correct to one decimal place.

59–62

(a) Use a graph to estimate the absolute maximum and minimum values of the function to two decimal places.

(b) Use calculus to find the exact maximum and minimum values.

59. $f(x) = x^5 - x^3 + 2$, $-1 \leqslant x \leqslant 1$

60. $f(x) = x^4 - 3x^3 + 3x^2 - x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$

61. $f(x) = x\sqrt{x - x^2}$

62. $f(x) = x - 2\cos x$, $-2 \leqslant x \leqslant 0$

63. Between 0°C and 30°C, the volume V (in cubic centimeters) of 1 kg of water at a temperature T is given approximately by the formula

$$V = 999.87 - 0.06426T + 0.0085043T^2 - 0.0000679T^3$$

Find the temperature at which water has its maximum density.

64. An object with weight W is dragged along a horizontal plane by a force acting along a rope attached to the object. If the rope makes an angle θ with the plane, then the magnitude of the force is

$$F = \frac{\mu W}{\mu \sin\theta + \cos\theta}$$

where μ is a positive constant called the *coefficient of friction* and where $0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant \pi/2$. Show that F is minimized when $\tan\theta = \mu$.

65. The water level, measured in feet above mean sea level, of Lake Lanier in Georgia, USA, during 2012 can be modeled by the function

$$L(t) = 0.01441t^3 - 0.4177t^2 + 2.703t + 1060.1$$

where t is measured in months since January 1, 2012. Estimate when the water level was highest during 2012.

66. On May 7, 1992, the space shuttle *Endeavour* was launched on mission STS-49, the purpose of which was to install a new perigee kick motor in an Intelsat communications satellite. The table gives the velocity data for the shuttle between liftoff and the jettisoning of the solid rocket boosters.

(a) Use a graphing calculator or computer to find the cubic polynomial that best models the velocity of the shuttle for the time interval $t \in [0, 125]$. Then graph this polynomial.

(b) Find a model for the acceleration of the shuttle and use it to estimate the maximum and minimum values of the acceleration during the first 125 seconds.

Event	Time (s)	Velocity (ft/s)
Launch	0	0
Begin roll maneuver	10	185
End roll maneuver	15	319
Throttle to 89%	20	447
Throttle to 67%	32	742
Throttle to 104%	59	1325
Maximum dynamic pressure	62	1445
Solid rocket booster separation	125	4151

67. When a foreign object lodged in the trachea (windpipe) forces a person to cough, the diaphragm thrusts upward causing an increase in pressure in the lungs. This is accompanied by a contraction of the trachea, making a narrower channel for the expelled air to flow through. For a given amount of air to escape in a fixed time, it must move faster through the narrower channel than the wider one. The greater the velocity of the airstream, the greater the force on the foreign object. X rays show that the radius of the circular tracheal tube contracts to about two-thirds of its normal radius during a cough. According to a mathematical model of coughing, the velocity v of the airstream is related to the radius r of the trachea by the equation

$$v(r) = k(r_0 - r)r^2 \qquad \tfrac{1}{2}r_0 \leqslant r \leqslant r_0$$

where k is a constant and r_0 is the normal radius of the trachea. The restriction on r is due to the fact that the tracheal wall stiffens under pressure and a contraction greater than $\frac{1}{2}r_0$ is prevented (otherwise the person would suffocate).

(a) Determine the value of r in the interval $\left[\frac{1}{2}r_0, r_0\right]$ at which v has an absolute maximum. How does this compare with experimental evidence?

(b) What is the absolute maximum value of v on the interval?

(c) Sketch the graph of v on the interval $[0, r_0]$.

68. Show that 5 is a critical number of the function

$$g(x) = 2 + (x - 5)^3$$

but g does not have a local extreme value at 5.

69. Prove that the function

$$f(x) = x^{101} + x^{51} + x + 1$$

has neither a local maximum nor a local minimum.

70. If f has a local minimum value at c, show that the function $g(x) = -f(x)$ has a local maximum value at c.

71. Prove Fermat's Theorem for the case in which f has a local minimum at c.

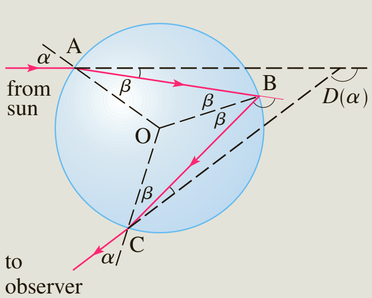
72. A cubic function is a polynomial of degree 3; that is, it has the form $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, where $a \neq 0$.

(a) Show that a cubic function can have two, one, or no critical number(s). Give examples and sketches to illustrate the three possibilities.

(b) How many local extreme values can a cubic function have?

APPLIED PROJECT THE CALCULUS OF RAINBOWS

Rainbows are created when raindrops scatter sunlight. They have fascinated mankind since ancient times and have inspired attempts at scientific explanation since the time of Aristotle. In this project we use the ideas of Descartes and Newton to explain the shape, location, and colors of rainbows.

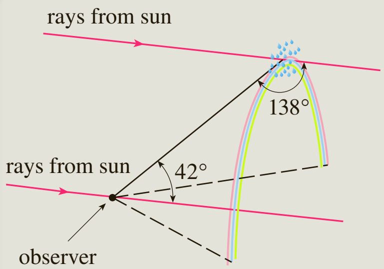


Formation of the primary rainbow

1. The figure shows a ray of sunlight entering a spherical raindrop at A. Some of the light is reflected, but the line AB shows the path of the part that enters the drop. Notice that the light is refracted toward the normal line AO and in fact Snell's Law says that $\sin\alpha = k\sin\beta$, where α is the angle of incidence, β is the angle of refraction, and $k \approx \frac{4}{3}$ is the index of refraction for water. At B some of the light passes through the drop and is refracted into the air, but the line BC shows the part that is reflected. (The angle of incidence equals the angle of reflection.) When the ray reaches C, part of it is reflected, but for the time being we are more interested in the part that leaves the raindrop at C. (Notice that it is refracted away from the normal line.) The *angle of deviation* $D(\alpha)$ is the amount of clockwise rotation that the ray has undergone during this three-stage process. Thus

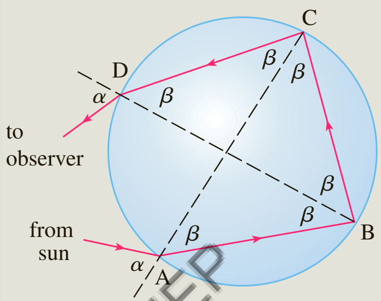
$$D(\alpha) = (\alpha - \beta) + (\pi - 2\beta) + (\alpha - \beta) = \pi + 2\alpha - 4\beta$$

Show that the minimum value of the deviation is $D(\alpha) \approx 138°$ and occurs when $\alpha \approx 59.4°$.



The significance of the minimum deviation is that when $\alpha \approx 59.4°$ we have $D'(\alpha) \approx 0$, so $\Delta D/\Delta\alpha \approx 0$. This means that many rays with $\alpha \approx 59.4°$ become deviated by approximately the same amount. It is the *concentration* of rays coming from near the direction of minimum deviation that creates the brightness of the primary rainbow. The figure at the left shows that the angle of elevation from the observer up to the highest point on the rainbow is $180° - 138° = 42°$. (This angle is called the *rainbow angle.*)

2. Problem 1 explains the location of the primary rainbow, but how do we explain the colors? Sunlight comprises a range of wavelengths, from the red range through orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. As Newton discovered in his prism experiments of 1666, the index of refraction is different for each color. (The effect is called *dispersion.*) For red light the refractive index is $k \approx 1.3318$, whereas for violet light it is $k \approx 1.3435$. By repeating the calculation of Problem 1 for these values of k, show that the rainbow angle is about 42.3° for the red bow and 40.6° for the violet bow. So the rainbow really consists of seven individual bows corresponding to the seven colors.



Formation of the secondary rainbow

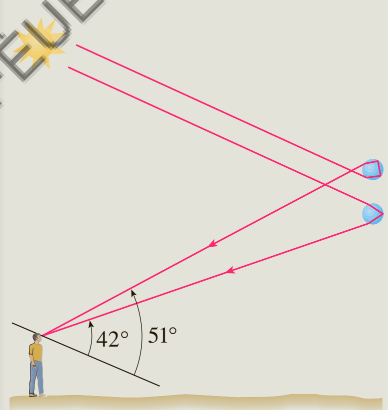
3. Perhaps you have seen a fainter secondary rainbow above the primary bow. That results from the part of a ray that enters a raindrop and is refracted at A, reflected twice (at B and C), and refracted as it leaves the drop at D (see the figure at the left). This time the deviation angle $D(\alpha)$ is the total amount of counterclockwise rotation that the ray undergoes in this four-stage process. Show that

$$D(\alpha) = 2\alpha - 6\beta + 2\pi$$

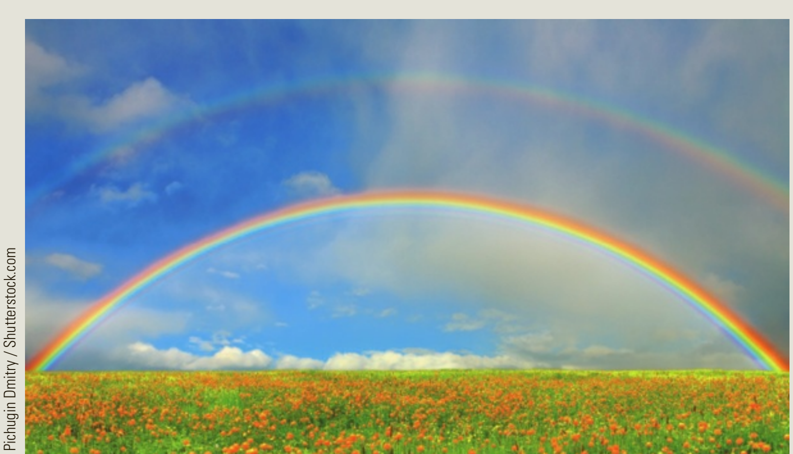
and $D(\alpha)$ has a minimum value when

$$\cos\alpha = \sqrt{\frac{k^2 - 1}{8}}$$

Taking $k = \frac{4}{3}$, show that the minimum deviation is about 129° and so the rainbow angle for the secondary rainbow is about 51°, as shown in the figure at the left.



4. Show that the colors in the secondary rainbow appear in the opposite order from those in the primary rainbow.



© Pichugin Dmitry / Shutterstock.com

3.2 The Mean Value Theorem

We will see that many of the results of this chapter depend on one central fact, which is called the Mean Value Theorem. But to arrive at the Mean Value Theorem we first need the following result.

Rolle

Rolle's Theorem was first published in 1691 by the French mathematician Michel Rolle (1652–1719) in a book entitled *Méthode pour resoudre les Egalitez*. He was a vocal critic of the methods of his day and attacked calculus as being a "collection of ingenious fallacies." Later, however, he became convinced of the essential correctness of the methods of calculus.

Rolle's Theorem Let f be a function that satisfies the following three hypotheses:

1. f is continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$.
2. f is differentiable on the open interval (a, b).
3. $f(a) = f(b)$

Then there is a number c in (a, b) such that $f'(c) = 0$.

Before giving the proof let's take a look at the graphs of some typical functions that satisfy the three hypotheses. Figure 1 shows the graphs of four such functions. In each case it appears that there is at least one point $(c, f(c))$ on the graph where the tangent is horizontal and therefore $f'(c) = 0$. Thus Rolle's Theorem is plausible.

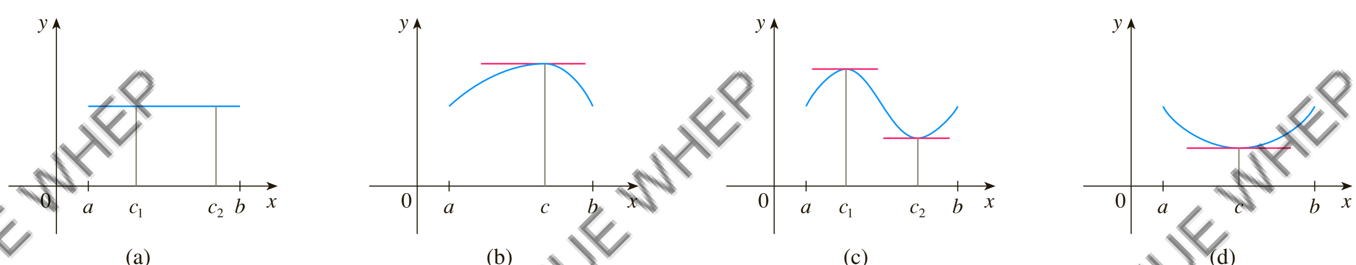


FIGURE 1

PROOF There are three cases:

PS Take cases

CASE I $f(x) = k$**, a constant**
Then $f'(x) = 0$, so the number c can be taken to be *any* number in (a, b).

CASE II $f(x) > f(a)$ **for some** x **in** (a, b) [as in Figure 1(b) or (c)]
By the Extreme Value Theorem (which we can apply by hypothesis 1), f has a maximum value somewhere in $[a, b]$. Since $f(a) = f(b)$, it must attain this maximum value at a number c in the open interval (a, b). Then f has a *local* maximum at c and, by hypothesis 2, f is differentiable at c. Therefore $f'(c) = 0$ by Fermat's Theorem.

CASE III $f(x) < f(a)$ **for some** x **in** (a, b) [as in Figure 1(c) or (d)]
By the Extreme Value Theorem, f has a minimum value in $[a, b]$ and, since $f(a) = f(b)$, it attains this minimum value at a number c in (a, b). Again $f'(c) = 0$ by Fermat's Theorem. ■

EXAMPLE 1 Let's apply Rolle's Theorem to the position function $s = f(t)$ of a moving object. If the object is in the same place at two different instants $t = a$ and $t = b$, then $f(a) = f(b)$. Rolle's Theorem says that there is some instant of time $t = c$ between a and b when $f'(c) = 0$; that is, the velocity is 0. (In particular, you can see that this is true when a ball is thrown directly upward.) ■

EXAMPLE 2 Prove that the equation $x^3 + x - 1 = 0$ has exactly one real root.

SOLUTION First we use the Intermediate Value Theorem (1.8.10) to show that a root exists. Let $f(x) = x^3 + x - 1$. Then $f(0) = -1 < 0$ and $f(1) = 1 > 0$. Since f is a

Figure 2 shows a graph of the function $f(x) = x^3 + x - 1$ discussed in Example 2. Rolle's Theorem shows that, no matter how much we enlarge the viewing rectangle, we can never find a second x-intercept.

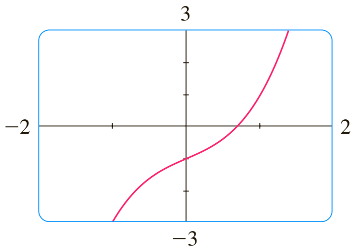


FIGURE 2

polynomial, it is continuous, so the Intermediate Value Theorem states that there is a number c between 0 and 1 such that $f(c) = 0$. Thus the given equation has a root.

To show that the equation has no other real root, we use Rolle's Theorem and argue by contradiction. Suppose that it had two roots a and b. Then $f(a) = 0 = f(b)$ and, since f is a polynomial, it is differentiable on (a, b) and continuous on $[a, b]$. Thus, by Rolle's Theorem, there is a number c between a and b such that $f'(c) = 0$. But

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 + 1 \geqslant 1 \qquad \text{for all } x$$

(since $x^2 \geqslant 0$) so $f'(x)$ can never be 0. This gives a contradiction. Therefore the equation can't have two real roots. ■

Our main use of Rolle's Theorem is in proving the following important theorem, which was first stated by another French mathematician, Joseph-Louis Lagrange.

The Mean Value Theorem is an example of what is called an existence theorem. Like the Intermediate Value Theorem, the Extreme Value Theorem, and Rolle's Theorem, it guarantees that there *exists* a number with a certain property, but it doesn't tell us how to find the number.

The Mean Value Theorem Let f be a function that satisfies the following hypotheses:

1. f is continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$.
2. f is differentiable on the open interval (a, b).

Then there is a number c in (a, b) such that

$$\boxed{1} \qquad f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\boxed{2} \qquad f(b) - f(a) = f'(c)(b - a)$$

Before proving this theorem, we can see that it is reasonable by interpreting it geometrically. Figures 3 and 4 show the points $A(a, f(a))$ and $B(b, f(b))$ on the graphs of two differentiable functions. The slope of the secant line AB is

$$\boxed{3} \qquad m_{AB} = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

which is the same expression as on the right side of Equation 1. Since $f'(c)$ is the slope of the tangent line at the point $(c, f(c))$, the Mean Value Theorem, in the form given by Equation 1, says that there is at least one point $P(c, f(c))$ on the graph where the slope of the tangent line is the same as the slope of the secant line AB. In other words, there is a point P where the tangent line is parallel to the secant line AB. (Imagine a line far away that stays parallel to AB while moving toward AB until it touches the graph for the first time.)

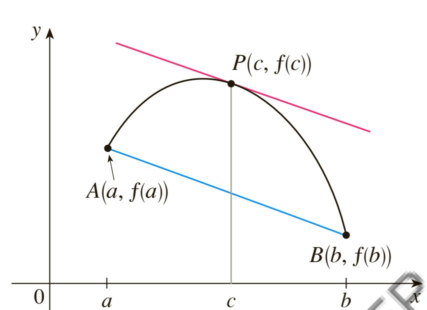


FIGURE 3

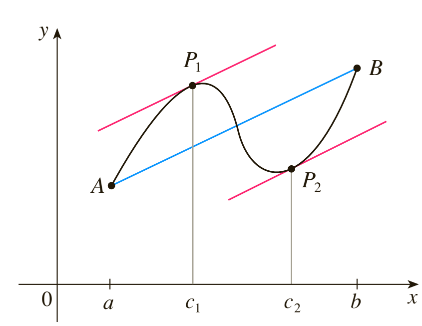


FIGURE 4

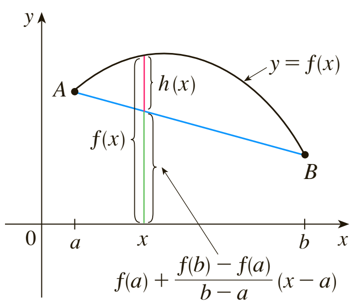


FIGURE 5

PROOF We apply Rolle's Theorem to a new function h defined as the difference between f and the function whose graph is the secant line AB. Using Equation 3 and the point-slope equation of a line, we see that the equation of the line AB can be written as

$$y - f(a) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a)$$

or as

$$y = f(a) + \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a)$$

So, as shown in Figure 5,

$$\boxed{4} \qquad h(x) = f(x) - f(a) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(x - a)$$

Lagrange and the Mean Value Theorem

The Mean Value Theorem was first formulated by Joseph-Louis Lagrange (1736–1813), born in Italy of a French father and an Italian mother. He was a child prodigy and became a professor in Turin at the tender age of 19. Lagrange made great contributions to number theory, theory of functions, theory of equations, and analytical and celestial mechanics. In particular, he applied calculus to the analysis of the stability of the solar system. At the invitation of Frederick the Great, he succeeded Euler at the Berlin Academy and, when Frederick died, Lagrange accepted King Louis XVI's invitation to Paris, where he was given apartments in the Louvre and became a professor at the Ecole Polytechnique. Despite all the trappings of luxury and fame, he was a kind and quiet man, living only for science.

First we must verify that h satisfies the three hypotheses of Rolle's Theorem.

1. The function h is continuous on $[a, b]$ because it is the sum of f and a first-degree polynomial, both of which are continuous.
2. The function h is differentiable on (a, b) because both f and the first-degree polynomial are differentiable. In fact, we can compute h' directly from Equation 4:

$$h'(x) = f'(x) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

(Note that $f(a)$ and $[f(b) - f(a)]/(b - a)$ are constants.)

3. $$h(a) = f(a) - f(a) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(a - a) = 0$$

$$h(b) = f(b) - f(a) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(b - a)$$

$$= f(b) - f(a) - [f(b) - f(a)] = 0$$

Therefore $h(a) = h(b)$.

Since h satisfies the hypotheses of Rolle's Theorem, that theorem says there is a number c in (a, b) such that $h'(c) = 0$. Therefore

$$0 = h'(c) = f'(c) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

and so

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

■

EXAMPLE 3 To illustrate the Mean Value Theorem with a specific function, let's consider $f(x) = x^3 - x$, $a = 0$, $b = 2$. Since f is a polynomial, it is continuous and differentiable for all x, so it is certainly continuous on $[0, 2]$ and differentiable on $(0, 2)$. Therefore, by the Mean Value Theorem, there is a number c in $(0, 2)$ such that

$$f(2) - f(0) = f'(c)(2 - 0)$$

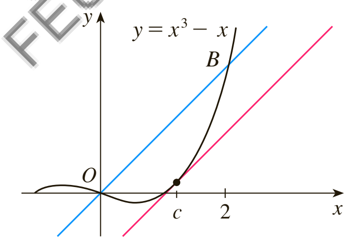


FIGURE 6

Now $f(2) = 6$, $f(0) = 0$, and $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 1$, so this equation becomes

$$6 = (3c^2 - 1)2 = 6c^2 - 2$$

which gives $c^2 = \frac{4}{3}$, that is, $c = \pm 2/\sqrt{3}$. But c must lie in $(0, 2)$, so $c = 2/\sqrt{3}$. Figure 6 illustrates this calculation: The tangent line at this value of c is parallel to the secant line OB. ■

EXAMPLE 4 If an object moves in a straight line with position function $s = f(t)$, then the average velocity between $t = a$ and $t = b$ is

$$\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

and the velocity at $t = c$ is $f'(c)$. Thus the Mean Value Theorem (in the form of Equation 1) tells us that at some time $t = c$ between a and b the instantaneous velocity $f'(c)$ is equal to that average velocity. For instance, if a car traveled 180 km in 2 hours, then the speedometer must have read 90 km/h at least once.

In general, the Mean Value Theorem can be interpreted as saying that there is a number at which the instantaneous rate of change is equal to the average rate of change over an interval. ■

The main significance of the Mean Value Theorem is that it enables us to obtain information about a function from information about its derivative. The next example provides an instance of this principle.

EXAMPLE 5 Suppose that $f(0) = -3$ and $f'(x) \leqslant 5$ for all values of x. How large can $f(2)$ possibly be?

SOLUTION We are given that f is differentiable (and therefore continuous) everywhere. In particular, we can apply the Mean Value Theorem on the interval $[0, 2]$. There exists a number c such that

$$f(2) - f(0) = f'(c)(2 - 0)$$

so

$$f(2) = f(0) + 2f'(c) = -3 + 2f'(c)$$

We are given that $f'(x) \leqslant 5$ for all x, so in particular we know that $f'(c) \leqslant 5$. Multiplying both sides of this inequality by 2, we have $2f'(c) \leqslant 10$, so

$$f(2) = -3 + 2f'(c) \leqslant -3 + 10 = 7$$

The largest possible value for $f(2)$ is 7. ■

The Mean Value Theorem can be used to establish some of the basic facts of differential calculus. One of these basic facts is the following theorem. Others will be found in the following sections.

5 Theorem If $f'(x) = 0$ for all x in an interval (a, b), then f is constant on (a, b).

PROOF Let x_1 and x_2 be any two numbers in (a, b) with $x_1 < x_2$. Since f is differentiable on (a, b), it must be differentiable on (x_1, x_2) and continuous on $[x_1, x_2]$. By applying the Mean Value Theorem to f on the interval $[x_1, x_2]$, we get a number c such that $x_1 < c < x_2$ and

$$f(x_2) - f(x_1) = f'(c)(x_2 - x_1) \tag{6}$$

Since $f'(x) = 0$ for all x, we have $f'(c) = 0$, and so Equation 6 becomes

$$f(x_2) - f(x_1) = 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad f(x_2) = f(x_1)$$

Therefore f has the same value at *any* two numbers x_1 and x_2 in (a, b). This means that f is constant on (a, b). ■

Corollary 7 says that if two functions have the same derivatives on an interval, then their graphs must be vertical translations of each other there. In other words, the graphs have the same shape, but could be shifted up or down.

7 Corollary If $f'(x) = g'(x)$ for all x in an interval (a, b), then $f - g$ is constant on (a, b); that is, $f(x) = g(x) + c$ where c is a constant.

PROOF Let $F(x) = f(x) - g(x)$. Then

$$F'(x) = f'(x) - g'(x) = 0$$

for all x in (a, b). Thus, by Theorem 5, F is constant; that is, $f - g$ is constant. ■

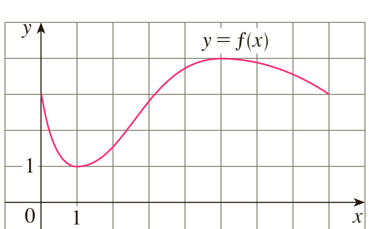
NOTE Care must be taken in applying Theorem 5. Let

$$f(x) = \frac{x}{|x|} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

The domain of f is $D = \{x \mid x \neq 0\}$ and $f'(x) = 0$ for all x in D. But f is obviously not a constant function. This does not contradict Theorem 5 because D is not an interval. Notice that f is constant on the interval $(0, \infty)$ and also on the interval $(-\infty, 0)$.

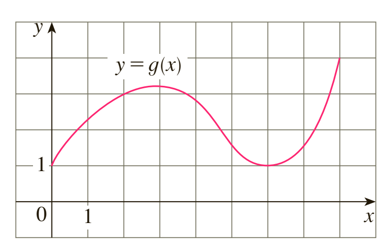
3.2 EXERCISES

1. The graph of a function f is shown. Verify that f satisfies the hypotheses of Rolle's Theorem on the interval $[0, 8]$. Then estimate the value(s) of c that satisfy the conclusion of Rolle's Theorem on that interval.



2. Draw the graph of a function defined on $[0, 8]$ such that $f(0) = f(8) = 3$ and the function does not satisfy the conclusion of Rolle's Theorem on $[0, 8]$.

3. The graph of a function g is shown.



(a) Verify that g satisfies the hypotheses of the Mean Value Theorem on the interval $[0, 8]$.
(b) Estimate the value(s) of c that satisfy the conclusion of the Mean Value Theorem on the interval $[0, 8]$.
(c) Estimate the value(s) of c that satisfy the conclusion of the Mean Value Theorem on the interval $[2, 6]$.

4. Draw the graph of a function that is continuous on $[0, 8]$ where $f(0) = 1$ and $f(8) = 4$ and that does not satisfy the conclusion of the Mean Value Theorem on $[0, 8]$.

5–8 Verify that the function satisfies the three hypotheses of Rolle's Theorem on the given interval. Then find all numbers c that satisfy the conclusion of Rolle's Theorem.

5. $f(x) = 2x^2 - 4x + 5, \quad [-1, 3]$

6. $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 - 4x + 2, \quad [-2, 2]$

7. $f(x) = \sin(x/2), \quad [\pi/2, 3\pi/2]$

8. $f(x) = x + 1/x, \quad \left[\frac{1}{2}, 2\right]$

---

9. Let $f(x) = 1 - x^{2/3}$. Show that $f(-1) = f(1)$ but there is no number c in $(-1, 1)$ such that $f'(c) = 0$. Why does this not contradict Rolle's Theorem?

10. Let $f(x) = \tan x$. Show that $f(0) = f(\pi)$ but there is no number c in $(0, \pi)$ such that $f'(c) = 0$. Why does this not contradict Rolle's Theorem?

11–14 Verify that the function satisfies the hypotheses of the Mean Value Theorem on the given interval. Then find all numbers c that satisfy the conclusion of the Mean Value Theorem.

11. $f(x) = 2x^2 - 3x + 1, \quad [0, 2]$

12. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x + 2, \quad [-2, 2]$

13. $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}, \quad [0, 1]$

14. $f(x) = 1/x, \quad [1, 3]$

15–16 Find the number c that satisfies the conclusion of the Mean Value Theorem on the given interval. Graph the function, the secant line through the endpoints, and the tangent line at $(c, f(c))$. Are the secant line and the tangent line parallel?

15. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad [0, 4]$

16. $f(x) = x^3 - 2x, \quad [-2, 2]$

---

17. Let $f(x) = (x - 3)^{-2}$. Show that there is no value of c in $(1, 4)$ such that $f(4) - f(1) = f'(c)(4 - 1)$. Why does this not contradict the Mean Value Theorem?

18. Let $f(x) = 2 - |2x - 1|$. Show that there is no value of c such that $f(3) - f(0) = f'(c)(3 - 0)$. Why does this not contradict the Mean Value Theorem?

19–20 Show that the equation has exactly one real root.

19. $2x + \cos x = 0$

20. $2x - 1 - \sin x = 0$

---

21. Show that the equation $x^3 - 15x + c = 0$ has at most one root in the interval $[-2, 2]$.

22. Show that the equation $x^4 + 4x + c = 0$ has at most two real roots.

23. (a) Show that a polynomial of degree 3 has at most three real roots.
(b) Show that a polynomial of degree n has at most n real roots.

24. (a) Suppose that f is differentiable on $\mathbb{R}$ and has two roots. Show that f' has at least one root.
(b) Suppose f is twice differentiable on $\mathbb{R}$ and has three roots. Show that f'' has at least one real root.
(c) Can you generalize parts (a) and (b)?

25. If $f(1) = 10$ and $f'(x) \geqslant 2$ for $1 \leqslant x \leqslant 4$, how small can $f(4)$ possibly be?

26. Suppose that $3 \leqslant f'(x) \leqslant 5$ for all values of x. Show that $18 \leqslant f(8) - f(2) \leqslant 30$.

27. Does there exist a function f such that $f(0) = -1$, $f(2) = 4$, and $f'(x) \leqslant 2$ for all x?

28. Suppose that f and g are continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b). Suppose also that $f(a) = g(a)$ and $f'(x) < g'(x)$ for $a < x < b$. Prove that $f(b) < g(b)$. [*Hint:* Apply the Mean Value Theorem to the function $h = f - g$.]

29. Show that $\sin x < x$ if $0 < x < 2\pi$.

30. Suppose f is an odd function and is differentiable everywhere. Prove that for every positive number b, there exists a number c in $(-b, b)$ such that $f'(c) = f(b)/b$.

31. Use the Mean Value Theorem to prove the inequality

$$|\sin a - \sin b| \leqslant |a - b| \qquad \text{for all } a \text{ and } b$$

32. If $f'(x) = c$ (c a constant) for all x, use Corollary 7 to show that $f(x) = cx + d$ for some constant d.

33. Let $f(x) = 1/x$ and

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{x} & \text{if } x > 0 \\[2ex] 1 + \dfrac{1}{x} & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Show that $f'(x) = g'(x)$ for all x in their domains. Can we conclude from Corollary 7 that $f - g$ is constant?

34. At 2:00 PM a car's speedometer reads 30 mi/h. At 2:10 PM it reads 50 mi/h. Show that at some time between 2:00 and 2:10 the acceleration is exactly 120 mi/h^2.

35. Two runners start a race at the same time and finish in a tie. Prove that at some time during the race they have the same speed. [*Hint:* Consider $f(t) = g(t) - h(t)$, where g and h are the position functions of the two runners.]

36. A number a is called a **fixed point** of a function f if $f(a) = a$. Prove that if $f'(x) \neq 1$ for all real numbers x, then f has at most one fixed point.

3.3 How Derivatives Affect the Shape of a Graph

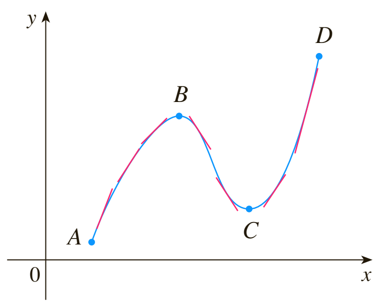


FIGURE 1

Many of the applications of calculus depend on our ability to deduce facts about a function f from information concerning its derivatives. Because $f'(x)$ represents the slope of the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $(x, f(x))$, it tells us the direction in which the curve proceeds at each point. So it is reasonable to expect that information about $f'(x)$ will provide us with information about $f(x)$.

What Does f' Say About f?

To see how the derivative of f can tell us where a function is increasing or decreasing, look at Figure 1. (Increasing functions and decreasing functions were defined in Section 1.1.) Between A and B and between C and D, the tangent lines have positive slope and so $f'(x) > 0$. Between B and C, the tangent lines have negative slope and so $f'(x) < 0$. Thus it appears that f increases when $f'(x)$ is positive and decreases when $f'(x)$ is negative. To prove that this is always the case, we use the Mean Value Theorem.

Let's abbreviate the name of this test to the I/D Test.

Increasing/Decreasing Test

(a) If $f'(x) > 0$ on an interval, then f is increasing on that interval.

(b) If $f'(x) < 0$ on an interval, then f is decreasing on that interval.

PROOF

(a) Let x_1 and x_2 be any two numbers in the interval with $x_1 < x_2$. According to the definition of an increasing function (page 19), we have to show that $f(x_1) < f(x_2)$.

Because we are given that $f'(x) > 0$, we know that f is differentiable on $[x_1, x_2]$. So, by the Mean Value Theorem, there is a number c between x_1 and x_2 such that

$$\boxed{1} \qquad f(x_2) - f(x_1) = f'(c)(x_2 - x_1)$$

Now $f'(c) > 0$ by assumption and $x_2 - x_1 > 0$ because $x_1 < x_2$. Thus the right side of Equation 1 is positive, and so

$$f(x_2) - f(x_1) > 0 \qquad \text{or} \qquad f(x_1) < f(x_2)$$

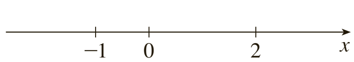
This shows that f is increasing.

Part (b) is proved similarly. ■

EXAMPLE 1 Find where the function $f(x) = 3x^4 - 4x^3 - 12x^2 + 5$ is increasing and where it is decreasing.

SOLUTION We start by differentiating f:

$$f'(x) = 12x^3 - 12x^2 - 24x = 12x(x-2)(x+1)$$



To use the I/D Test we have to know where $f'(x) > 0$ and where $f'(x) < 0$. To solve these inequalities we first find where $f'(x) = 0$, namely, at $x = 0$, 2, and -1. These are the critical numbers of f, and they divide the domain into four intervals (see the number line at the left). Within each interval, $f'(x)$ must be always positive or always negative. (See Examples 3 and 4 in Appendix A.) We can determine which is the case for each interval from the signs of the three factors of $f'(x)$, namely, $12x$, $x - 2$, and $x + 1$, as shown in the following chart. A plus sign indicates that the given expression is positive, and a minus sign indicates that it is negative. The last column of the chart gives the conclusion based on the I/D Test. For instance, $f'(x) < 0$ for $0 < x < 2$, so f is decreasing on $(0, 2)$. (It would also be true to say that f is decreasing on the closed interval $[0, 2]$.)

Interval	$12x$	$x - 2$	$x + 1$	$f'(x)$	f
$x < -1$	$-$	$-$	$-$	$-$	decreasing on $(-\infty, -1)$
$-1 < x < 0$	$-$	$-$	$+$	$+$	increasing on $(-1, 0)$
$0 < x < 2$	$+$	$-$	$+$	$-$	decreasing on $(0, 2)$
$x > 2$	$+$	$+$	$+$	$+$	increasing on $(2, \infty)$

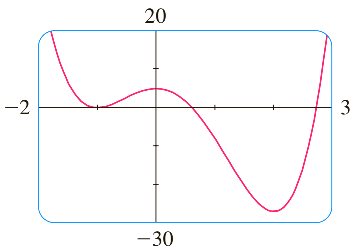


FIGURE 2

The graph of f shown in Figure 2 confirms the information in the chart. ■

Local Extreme Values

Recall from Section 3.1 that if f has a local maximum or minimum at c, then c must be a critical number of f (by Fermat's Theorem), but not every critical number gives rise to a maximum or a minimum. We therefore need a test that will tell us whether or not f has a local maximum or minimum at a critical number.

You can see from Figure 2 that $f(0) = 5$ is a local maximum value of f because f increases on $(-1, 0)$ and decreases on $(0, 2)$. Or, in terms of derivatives, $f'(x) > 0$ for $-1 < x < 0$ and $f'(x) < 0$ for $0 < x < 2$. In other words, the sign of $f'(x)$ changes from positive to negative at 0. This observation is the basis of the following test.

The First Derivative Test Suppose that c is a critical number of a continuous function f.

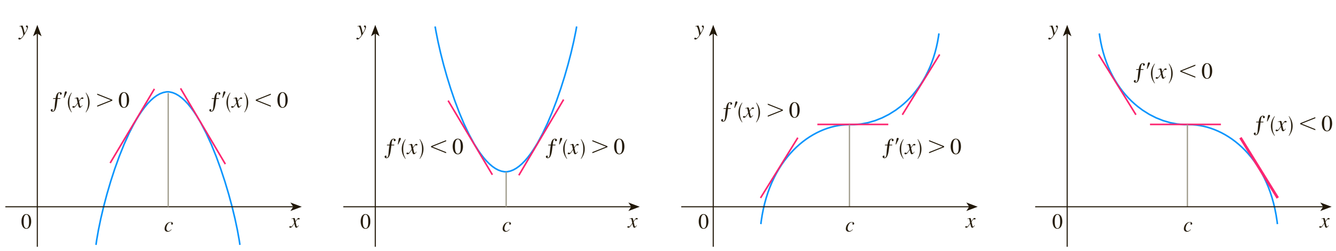
(a) If f' changes from positive to negative at c, then f has a local maximum at c.

(b) If f' changes from negative to positive at c, then f has a local minimum at c.

(c) If f' is positive to the left and right of c, or negative to the left and right of c, then f has no local maximum or minimum at c.

The First Derivative Test is a consequence of the I/D Test. In part (a), for instance, since the sign of $f'(x)$ changes from positive to negative at c, f is increasing to the left of c and decreasing to the right of c. It follows that f has a local maximum at c.

It is easy to remember the First Derivative Test by visualizing diagrams such as those in Figure 3.



(a) Local maximum (b) Local minimum (c) No maximum or minimum (d) No maximum or minimum

FIGURE 3

EXAMPLE 2 Find the local minimum and maximum values of the function f in Example 1.

SOLUTION From the chart in the solution to Example 1 we see that $f'(x)$ changes from negative to positive at -1, so $f(-1) = 0$ is a local minimum value by the First Derivative Test. Similarly, f' changes from negative to positive at 2, so $f(2) = -27$ is also a local minimum value. As noted previously, $f(0) = 5$ is a local maximum value because $f'(x)$ changes from positive to negative at 0. ■

EXAMPLE 3 Find the local maximum and minimum values of the function

$$g(x) = x + 2 \sin x \qquad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$$

SOLUTION As in Example 1, we start by finding the critical numbers. The derivative is

$$g'(x) = 1 + 2 \cos x$$

so $g'(x) = 0$ when $\cos x = -\frac{1}{2}$. The solutions of this equation are $2\pi/3$ and $4\pi/3$. Because g is differentiable everywhere, the only critical numbers are $2\pi/3$ and $4\pi/3$. We split the domain into intervals according to the critical numbers. Within each interval, $g'(x)$ is either always positive or always negative and so we analyze g in the following chart.

The $+$ signs in the chart come from the fact that $g'(x) > 0$ when $\cos x > -\frac{1}{2}$. From the graph of $y = \cos x$, this is true in the indicated intervals.

Interval	$g'(x) = 1 + 2 \cos x$	g
$0 < x < 2\pi/3$	$+$	increasing on $(0, 2\pi/3)$
$2\pi/3 < x < 4\pi/3$	$-$	decreasing on $(2\pi/3, 4\pi/3)$
$4\pi/3 < x < 2\pi$	$+$	increasing on $(4\pi/3, 2\pi)$

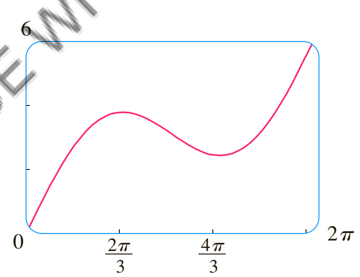


FIGURE 4
$g(x) = x + 2 \sin x$

Because $g'(x)$ changes from positive to negative at $2\pi/3$, the First Derivative Test tells us that there is a local maximum at $2\pi/3$ and the local maximum value is

$$g(2\pi/3) = \frac{2\pi}{3} + 2 \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} = \frac{2\pi}{3} + 2\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right) = \frac{2\pi}{3} + \sqrt{3} \approx 3.83$$

Likewise, $g'(x)$ changes from negative to positive at $4\pi/3$ and so

$$g(4\pi/3) = \frac{4\pi}{3} + 2 \sin \frac{4\pi}{3} = \frac{4\pi}{3} + 2\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right) = \frac{4\pi}{3} - \sqrt{3} \approx 2.46$$

is a local minimum value. The graph of g in Figure 4 supports our conclusion. ■

What Does f'' Say About f?

Figure 5 shows the graphs of two increasing functions on (a, b). Both graphs join point A to point B but they look different because they bend in different directions. How can we distinguish between these two types of behavior?

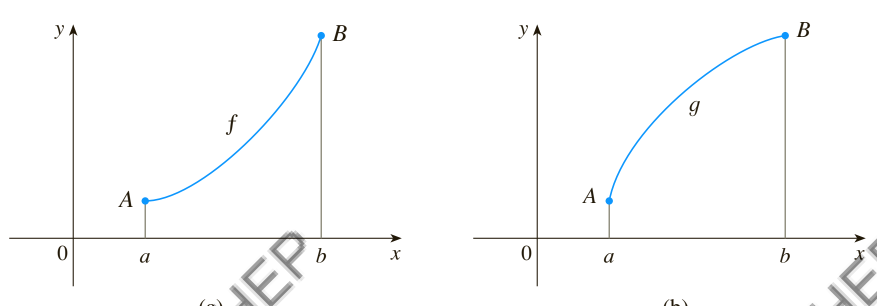
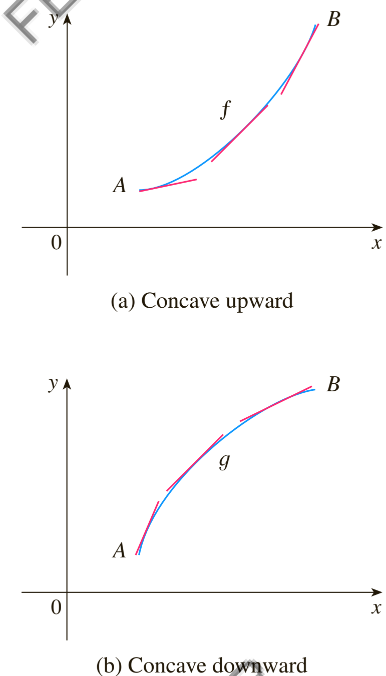


FIGURE 5



(a) Concave upward

(b) Concave downward

FIGURE 6

In Figure 6 tangents to these curves have been drawn at several points. In (a) the curve lies above the tangents and f is called *concave upward* on (a, b). In (b) the curve lies below the tangents and g is called *concave downward* on (a, b).

> **Definition** If the graph of f lies above all of its tangents on an interval I, then it is called **concave upward** on I. If the graph of f lies below all of its tangents on I, it is called **concave downward** on I.

Figure 7 shows the graph of a function that is concave upward (abbreviated CU) on the intervals (b, c), (d, e), and (e, p) and concave downward (CD) on the intervals (a, b), (c, d), and (p, q).

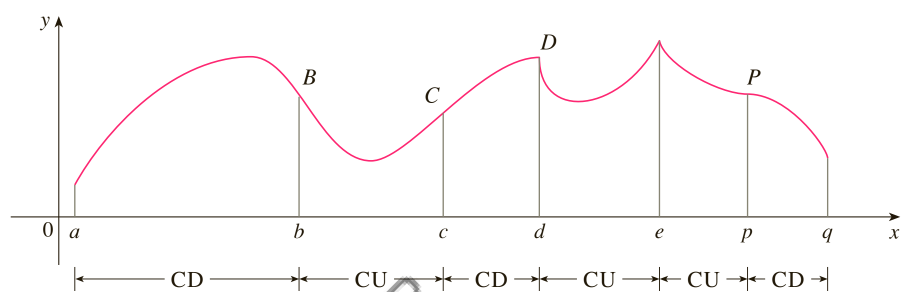


FIGURE 7

Let's see how the second derivative helps determine the intervals of concavity. Looking at Figure 6(a), you can see that, going from left to right, the slope of the tangent increases. This means that the derivative f' is an increasing function and therefore its derivative f'' is positive. Likewise, in Figure 6(b) the slope of the tangent decreases from left to right, so f' decreases and therefore f'' is negative. This reasoning can be reversed and suggests that the following theorem is true. A proof is given in Appendix F with the help of the Mean Value Theorem.

> **Concavity Test**
>
> (a) If $f''(x) > 0$ for all x in I, then the graph of f is concave upward on I.
>
> (b) If $f''(x) < 0$ for all x in I, then the graph of f is concave downward on I.

EXAMPLE 4 Figure 8 shows a population graph for Cyprian honeybees raised in an apiary. How does the rate of population increase change over time? When is this rate highest? Over what intervals is P concave upward or concave downward?

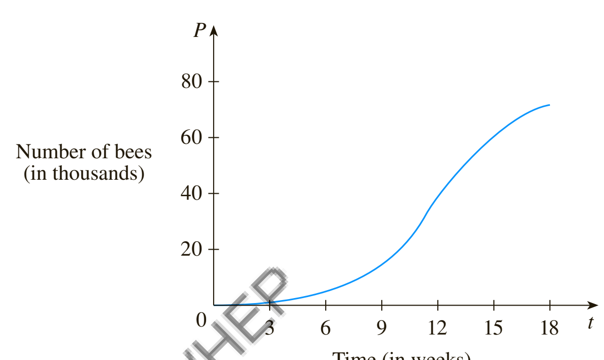


FIGURE 8

SOLUTION By looking at the slope of the curve as t increases, we see that the rate of increase of the population is initially very small, then gets larger until it reaches a maximum at about $t = 12$ weeks, and decreases as the population begins to level off. As the population approaches its maximum value of about 75,000 (called the *carrying capacity*), the rate of increase, $P'(t)$, approaches 0. The curve appears to be concave upward on $(0, 12)$ and concave downward on $(12, 18)$. ■

In Example 4, the population curve changed from concave upward to concave downward at approximately the point (12, 38,000). This point is called an *inflection point* of the curve. The significance of this point is that the rate of population increase has its maximum value there. In general, an inflection point is a point where a curve changes its direction of concavity.

Definition A point P on a curve $y = f(x)$ is called an **inflection point** if f is continuous there and the curve changes from concave upward to concave downward or from concave downward to concave upward at P.

For instance, in Figure 7, B, C, D, and P are the points of inflection. Notice that if a curve has a tangent at a point of inflection, then the curve crosses its tangent there.

In view of the Concavity Test, there is a point of inflection at any point where the second derivative changes sign.

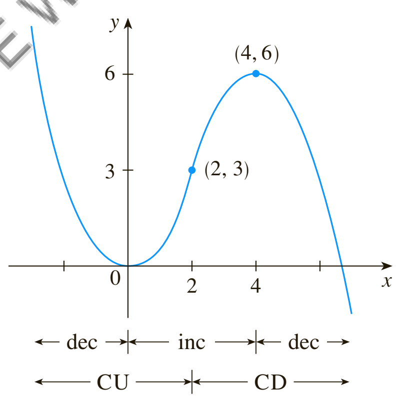


FIGURE 9

EXAMPLE 5 Sketch a possible graph of a function f that satisfies the following conditions:

(i) $f(0) = 0, \quad f(2) = 3, \quad f(4) = 6, \quad f'(0) = f'(4) = 0$

(ii) $f'(x) > 0$ for $0 < x < 4, \quad f'(x) < 0$ for $x < 0$ and for $x > 4$

(iii) $f''(x) > 0$ for $x < 2, \quad f''(x) < 0$ for $x > 2$

SOLUTION Condition (i) tells us that the graph has horizontal tangents at the points $(0, 0)$ and $(4, 6)$. Condition (ii) says that f is increasing on the interval $(0, 4)$ and decreasing on the intervals $(-\infty, 0)$ and $(4, \infty)$. It follows from the I/D Test that $f(0) = 0$ is a local minimum and $f(4) = 6$ is a local maximum.

Condition (iii) says that the graph is concave upward on the interval $(-\infty, 2)$ and concave downward on $(2, \infty)$. Because the curve changes from concave upward to concave downward when $x = 2$, the point $(2, 3)$ is an inflection point.

We use this information to sketch the graph of f in Figure 9. Notice that we made the curve bend upward when $x < 2$ and bend downward when $x > 2$. ■

Another application of the second derivative is the following test for identifying local maximum and minimum values. It is a consequence of the Concavity Test and serves as an alternative to the First Derivative Test.

The Second Derivative Test Suppose f'' is continuous near c.

(a) If $f'(c) = 0$ and $f''(c) > 0$, then f has a local minimum at c.

(b) If $f'(c) = 0$ and $f''(c) < 0$, then f has a local maximum at c.

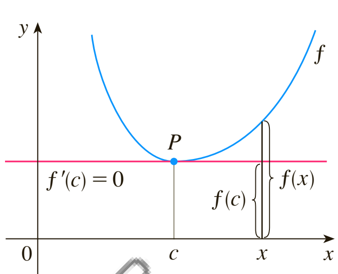


FIGURE 10
$f''(c) > 0$, f is concave upward

For instance, part (a) is true because $f''(x) > 0$ near c and so f is concave upward near c. This means that the graph of f lies *above* its horizontal tangent at c and so f has a local minimum at c. (See Figure 10.)

EXAMPLE 6 Discuss the curve $y = x^4 - 4x^3$ with respect to concavity, points of inflection, and local maxima and minima. Use this information to sketch the curve.

SOLUTION If $f(x) = x^4 - 4x^3$, then

$$f'(x) = 4x^3 - 12x^2 = 4x^2(x - 3)$$

$$f''(x) = 12x^2 - 24x = 12x(x - 2)$$

To find the critical numbers we set $f'(x) = 0$ and obtain $x = 0$ and $x = 3$. (Note that f' is a polynomial and hence defined everywhere.) To use the Second Derivative Test we evaluate f'' at these critical numbers:

$$f''(0) = 0 \qquad f''(3) = 36 > 0$$

Since $f'(3) = 0$ and $f''(3) > 0$, $f(3) = -27$ is a local minimum. [In fact, the expression for $f'(x)$ shows that f decreases to the left of 3 and increases to the right of 3.] Since $f''(0) = 0$, the Second Derivative Test gives no information about the critical number 0. But since $f'(x) < 0$ for $x < 0$ and also for $0 < x < 3$, the First Derivative Test tells us that f does not have a local maximum or minimum at 0.

Since $f''(x) = 0$ when $x = 0$ or 2, we divide the real line into intervals with these numbers as endpoints and complete the following chart.

Interval	$f''(x) = 12x(x - 2)$	Concavity
$(-\infty, 0)$	+	upward
$(0, 2)$	−	downward
$(2, \infty)$	+	upward

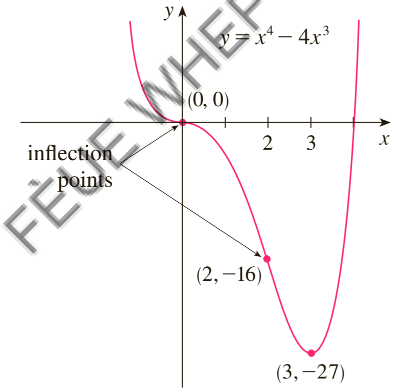


FIGURE 11

The point $(0, 0)$ is an inflection point since the curve changes from concave upward to concave downward there. Also $(2, -16)$ is an inflection point since the curve changes from concave downward to concave upward there.

Using the local minimum, the intervals of concavity, and the inflection points, we sketch the curve in Figure 11. ■

NOTE The Second Derivative Test is inconclusive when $f''(c) = 0$. In other words, at such a point there might be a maximum, there might be a minimum, or there might be neither (as in Example 6). This test also fails when $f''(c)$ does not exist. In such cases the First Derivative Test must be used. In fact, even when both tests apply, the First Derivative Test is often the easier one to use.

EXAMPLE 7 Sketch the graph of the function $f(x) = x^{2/3}(6 - x)^{1/3}$.

SOLUTION Calculation of the first two derivatives gives

Use the differentiation rules to check these calculations.

$$f'(x) = \frac{4 - x}{x^{1/3}(6 - x)^{2/3}} \qquad f''(x) = \frac{-8}{x^{4/3}(6 - x)^{5/3}}$$

Since $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = 4$ and $f'(x)$ does not exist when $x = 0$ or $x = 6$, the critical numbers are 0, 4, and 6.

Interval	$4 - x$	$x^{1/3}$	$(6 - x)^{2/3}$	$f'(x)$	f
$x < 0$	$+$	$-$	$+$	$-$	decreasing on $(-\infty, 0)$
$0 < x < 4$	$+$	$+$	$+$	$+$	increasing on $(0, 4)$
$4 < x < 6$	$-$	$+$	$+$	$-$	decreasing on $(4, 6)$
$x > 6$	$-$	$+$	$+$	$-$	decreasing on $(6, \infty)$

TEC In Module 3.3 you can practice using information about f', f'', and asymptotes to determine the shape of the graph of f.

Try reproducing the graph in Figure 12 with a graphing calculator or computer. Some machines produce the complete graph, some produce only the portion to the right of the y-axis, and some produce only the portion between $x = 0$ and $x = 6$. For an explanation and cure, see Example 7 in "Graphing Calculators and Computers" at www.stewartcalculus.com. An equivalent expression that gives the correct graph is

$$y = (x^2)^{1/3} \cdot \frac{6 - x}{|6 - x|} |6 - x|^{1/3}$$

To find the local extreme values we use the First Derivative Test. Since f' changes from negative to positive at 0, $f(0) = 0$ is a local minimum. Since f' changes from positive to negative at 4, $f(4) = 2^{5/3}$ is a local maximum. The sign of f' does not change at 6, so there is no minimum or maximum there. (The Second Derivative Test could be used at 4 but not at 0 or 6 since f'' does not exist at either of these numbers.)

Looking at the expression for $f''(x)$ and noting that $x^{4/3} \geqslant 0$ for all x, we have $f''(x) < 0$ for $x < 0$ and for $0 < x < 6$ and $f''(x) > 0$ for $x > 6$. So f is concave downward on $(-\infty, 0)$ and $(0, 6)$ and concave upward on $(6, \infty)$, and the only inflection point is $(6, 0)$. The graph is sketched in Figure 12. Note that the curve has vertical tangents at $(0, 0)$ and $(6, 0)$ because $|f'(x)| \to \infty$ as $x \to 0$ and as $x \to 6$.

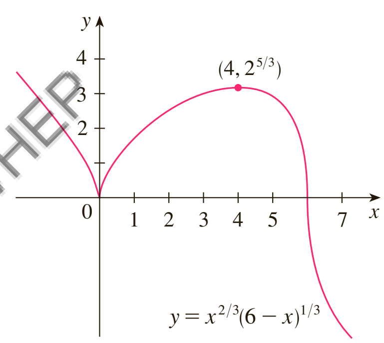
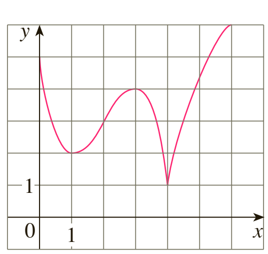


FIGURE 12 ■

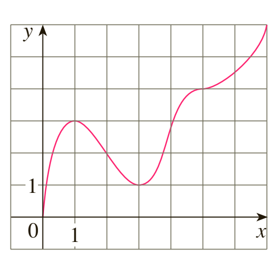
3.3 EXERCISES

1–2 Use the given graph of f to find the following.
(a) The open intervals on which f is increasing.
(b) The open intervals on which f is decreasing.
(c) The open intervals on which f is concave upward.
(d) The open intervals on which f is concave downward.
(e) The coordinates of the points of inflection.

1.



2.

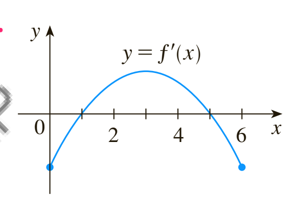


3. Suppose you are given a formula for a function f.
(a) How do you determine where f is increasing or decreasing?
(b) How do you determine where the graph of f is concave upward or concave downward?
(c) How do you locate inflection points?

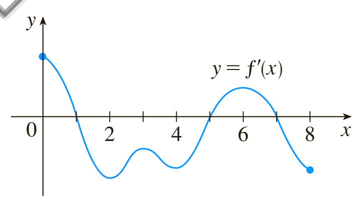
4. (a) State the First Derivative Test.
(b) State the Second Derivative Test. Under what circumstances is it inconclusive? What do you do if it fails?

5–6 The graph of the *derivative* f' of a function f is shown.
(a) On what intervals is f increasing or decreasing?
(b) At what values of x does f have a local maximum or minimum?

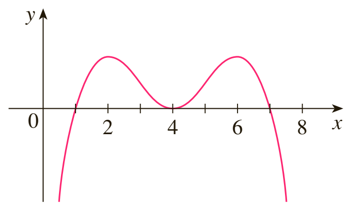
5.



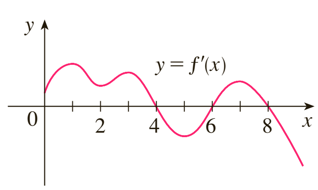
6.



7. In each part state the x-coordinates of the inflection points of f. Give reasons for your answers.
(a) The curve is the graph of f.
(b) The curve is the graph of f'.
(c) The curve is the graph of f''.



8. The graph of the first derivative f' of a function f is shown.
(a) On what intervals is f increasing? Explain.
(b) At what values of x does f have a local maximum or minimum? Explain.
(c) On what intervals is f concave upward or concave downward? Explain.
(d) What are the x-coordinates of the inflection points of f? Why?



9–14
(a) Find the intervals on which f is increasing or decreasing.
(b) Find the local maximum and minimum values of f.
(c) Find the intervals of concavity and the inflection points.

9. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 - 9x + 4$

10. $f(x) = 2x^3 - 9x^2 + 12x - 3$

11. $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^2 + 3$

12. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + 1}$

13. $f(x) = \sin x + \cos x, \quad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$

14. $f(x) = \cos^2 x - 2\sin x, \quad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$

15–17 Find the local maximum and minimum values of f using both the First and Second Derivative Tests. Which method do you prefer?

15. $f(x) = 1 + 3x^2 - 2x^3$

16. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x - 1}$

17. $f(x) = \sqrt{x} - \sqrt[4]{x}$

18. (a) Find the critical numbers of $f(x) = x^4(x - 1)^3$.
(b) What does the Second Derivative Test tell you about the behavior of f at these critical numbers?
(c) What does the First Derivative Test tell you?

19. Suppose f'' is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$.
(a) If $f'(2) = 0$ and $f''(2) = -5$, what can you say about f?
(b) If $f'(6) = 0$ and $f''(6) = 0$, what can you say about f?

20–27 Sketch the graph of a function that satisfies all of the given conditions.

20. (a) $f'(x) < 0$ and $f''(x) < 0$ for all x
(b) $f'(x) > 0$ and $f''(x) > 0$ for all x

21. (a) $f'(x) > 0$ and $f''(x) < 0$ for all x
(b) $f'(x) < 0$ and $f''(x) > 0$ for all x

22. Vertical asymptote $x = 0$, $\quad f'(x) > 0$ if $x < -2$,
$f'(x) < 0$ if $x > -2$ $(x \neq 0)$,
$f''(x) < 0$ if $x < 0$, $\quad f''(x) > 0$ if $x > 0$

23. $f'(0) = f'(2) = f'(4) = 0$,
$f'(x) > 0$ if $x < 0$ or $2 < x < 4$,
$f'(x) < 0$ if $0 < x < 2$ or $x > 4$,
$f''(x) > 0$ if $1 < x < 3$, $\quad f''(x) < 0$ if $x < 1$ or $x > 3$

24. $f'(x) > 0$ for all $x \neq 1$, $\quad$ vertical asymptote $x = 1$,
$f''(x) > 0$ if $x < 1$ or $x > 3$, $\quad f''(x) < 0$ if $1 < x < 3$

25. $f'(5) = 0$, $\quad f'(x) < 0$ when $x < 5$,
$f'(x) > 0$ when $x > 5$, $\quad f''(2) = 0$, $\quad f''(8) = 0$,
$f''(x) < 0$ when $x < 2$ or $x > 8$,
$f''(x) > 0$ for $2 < x < 8$

26. $f'(0) = f'(4) = 0$, $\quad f'(x) = 1$ if $x < -1$,
$f'(x) > 0$ if $0 < x < 2$,
$f'(x) < 0$ if $-1 < x < 0$ or $2 < x < 4$ or $x > 4$,
$\lim_{x \to 2^-} f'(x) = \infty$, $\quad \lim_{x \to 2^+} f'(x) = -\infty$,
$f''(x) > 0$ if $-1 < x < 2$ or $2 < x < 4$,
$f''(x) < 0$ if $x > 4$

27. $f(0) = f'(0) = f'(2) = f'(4) = f'(6) = 0$,
$f'(x) > 0$ if $0 < x < 2$ or $4 < x < 6$,
$f'(x) < 0$ if $2 < x < 4$ or $x > 6$,
$f''(x) > 0$ if $0 < x < 1$ or $3 < x < 5$,
$f''(x) < 0$ if $1 < x < 3$ or $x > 5$, $\quad f(-x) = f(x)$

28. Suppose $f(3) = 2$, $f'(3) = \frac{1}{2}$, and $f'(x) > 0$ and $f''(x) < 0$ for all x.
(a) Sketch a possible graph for f.
(b) How many solutions does the equation $f(x) = 0$ have? Why?
(c) Is it possible that $f'(2) = \frac{1}{3}$? Why?

29. Suppose f is a continuous function where $f(x) > 0$ for all x, $f(0) = 4$, $\quad f'(x) > 0$ if $x < 0$ or $x > 2$, $\quad f'(x) < 0$ if $0 < x < 2$, $\quad f''(-1) = f''(1) = 0$, $\quad f''(x) > 0$ if $x < -1$ or $x > 1$, $\quad f''(x) < 0$ if $-1 < x < 1$.
(a) Can f have an absolute maximum? If so, sketch a possible graph of f. If not, explain why.

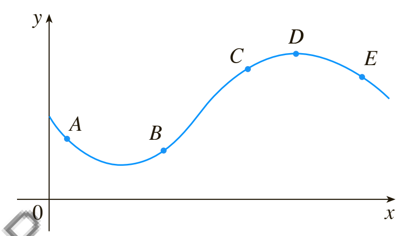
(b) Can f have an absolute minimum? If so, sketch a possible graph of f. If not, explain why.
(c) Sketch a possible graph for f that does *not* achieve an absolute minimum.

30. The graph of a function $y = f(x)$ is shown. At which point(s) are the following true?

(a) $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ and $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ are both positive.

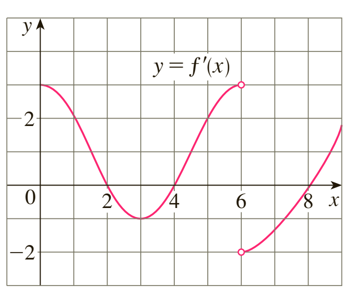
(b) $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ and $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ are both negative.

(c) $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ is negative but $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ is positive.

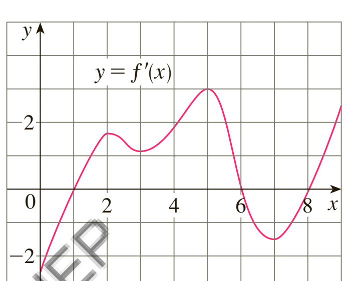


31–32 The graph of the derivative f' of a continuous function f is shown.
(a) On what intervals is f increasing? Decreasing?
(b) At what values of x does f have a local maximum? Local minimum?
(c) On what intervals is f concave upward? Concave downward?
(d) State the x-coordinate(s) of the point(s) of inflection.
(e) Assuming that $f(0) = 0$, sketch a graph of f.

31.



32.



33–44
(a) Find the intervals of increase or decrease.
(b) Find the local maximum and minimum values.
(c) Find the intervals of concavity and the inflection points.
(d) Use the information from parts (a)–(c) to sketch the graph. Check your work with a graphing device if you have one.

33. $f(x) = x^3 - 12x + 2$

34. $f(x) = 36x + 3x^2 - 2x^3$

35. $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^4 - 4x^2 + 3$

36. $g(x) = 200 + 8x^3 + x^4$

37. $h(x) = (x + 1)^5 - 5x - 2$

38. $h(x) = 5x^3 - 3x^5$

39. $F(x) = x\sqrt{6 - x}$

40. $G(x) = 5x^{2/3} - 2x^{5/3}$

41. $C(x) = x^{1/3}(x + 4)$

42. $f(x) = 2\sqrt{x} - 4x^2$

43. $f(\theta) = 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta, \quad 0 \leqslant \theta \leqslant 2\pi$

44. $S(x) = x - \sin x, \quad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 4\pi$

45. Suppose the derivative of a function f is $f'(x) = (x + 1)^2(x - 3)^5(x - 6)^4$. On what interval is f increasing?

46. Use the methods of this section to sketch the curve $y = x^3 - 3a^2x + 2a^3$, where a is a positive constant. What do the members of this family of curves have in common? How do they differ from each other?

47–48
(a) Use a graph of f to estimate the maximum and minimum values. Then find the exact values.
(b) Estimate the value of x at which f increases most rapidly. Then find the exact value.

47. $f(x) = \dfrac{x + 1}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}$

48. $f(x) = x + 2\cos x, \quad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$

49–50
(a) Use a graph of f to give a rough estimate of the intervals of concavity and the coordinates of the points of inflection.
(b) Use a graph of f'' to give better estimates.

49. $f(x) = \sin 2x + \sin 4x, \quad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$

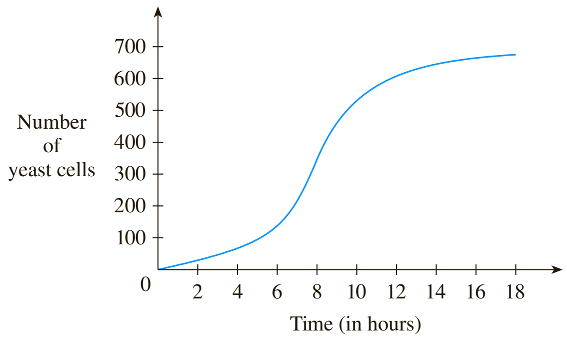
50. $f(x) = (x - 1)^2(x + 1)^3$

CAS **51–52** Estimate the intervals of concavity to one decimal place by using a computer algebra system to compute and graph f''.

51. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4 + x^3 + 1}{\sqrt{x^2 + x + 1}}$

52. $f(x) = \dfrac{(x + 1)^3(x^2 + 5)}{(x^3 + 1)(x^2 + 4)}$

53. A graph of a population of yeast cells in a new laboratory culture as a function of time is shown.
(a) Describe how the rate of population increase varies.
(b) When is this rate highest?
(c) On what intervals is the population function concave upward or downward?
(d) Estimate the coordinates of the inflection point.



54. In an episode of *The Simpsons* television show, Homer reads from a newspaper and announces "Here's good news! According to this eye-catching article, SAT scores are declining at a slower rate." Interpret Homer's statement in terms of a function and its first and second derivatives.

55. The president announces that the national deficit is increasing, but at a decreasing rate. Interpret this statement in terms of a function and its first and second derivatives.

56. Let $f(t)$ be the temperature at time t where you live and suppose that at time $t = 3$ you feel uncomfortably hot. How do you feel about the given data in each case?
(a) $f'(3) = 2, \quad f''(3) = 4$
(b) $f'(3) = 2, \quad f''(3) = -4$
(c) $f'(3) = -2, \quad f''(3) = 4$
(d) $f'(3) = -2, \quad f''(3) = -4$

57. Let $K(t)$ be a measure of the knowledge you gain by studying for a test for t hours. Which do you think is larger, $K(8) - K(7)$ or $K(3) - K(2)$? Is the graph of K concave upward or concave downward? Why?

58. Coffee is being poured into the mug shown in the figure at a constant rate (measured in volume per unit time). Sketch a rough graph of the depth of the coffee in the mug as a function of time. Account for the shape of the graph in terms of concavity. What is the significance of the inflection point?

59. Find a cubic function

$$f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$$

that has a local maximum value of 3 at $x = -2$ and a local minimum value of 0 at $x = 1$.

60. Show that the curve

$$y = \frac{1 + x}{1 + x^2}$$

has three points of inflection and they all lie on one straight line.

61. (a) If the function $f(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx$ has the local minimum value $-\frac{2}{9}\sqrt{3}$ at $x = 1/\sqrt{3}$, what are the values of a and b?
(b) Which of the tangent lines to the curve in part (a) has the smallest slope?

62. For what values of a and b is $(2, 2.5)$ an inflection point of the curve $x^2y + ax + by = 0$? What additional inflection points does the curve have?

63. Show that the inflection points of the curve $y = x \sin x$ lie on the curve $y^2(x^2 + 4) = 4x^2$.

64–66 Assume that all of the functions are twice differentiable and the second derivatives are never 0.

64. (a) If f and g are concave upward on I, show that $f + g$ is concave upward on I.
(b) If f is positive and concave upward on I, show that the function $g(x) = [f(x)]^2$ is concave upward on I.

65. (a) If f and g are positive, increasing, concave upward functions on I, show that the product function fg is concave upward on I.
(b) Show that part (a) remains true if f and g are both decreasing.
(c) Suppose f is increasing and g is decreasing. Show, by giving three examples, that fg may be concave upward, concave downward, or linear. Why doesn't the argument in parts (a) and (b) work in this case?

66. Suppose f and g are both concave upward on $(-\infty, \infty)$. Under what condition on f will the composite function $h(x) = f(g(x))$ be concave upward?

---

67. Show that $\tan x > x$ for $0 < x < \pi/2$. [*Hint:* Show that $f(x) = \tan x - x$ is increasing on $(0, \pi/2)$.]

68. Prove that, for all $x > 1$,

$$2\sqrt{x} > 3 - \frac{1}{x}$$

69. Show that a cubic function (a third-degree polynomial) always has exactly one point of inflection. If its graph has three x-intercepts x_1, x_2, and x_3, show that the x-coordinate of the inflection point is $(x_1 + x_2 + x_3)/3$.

70. For what values of c does the polynomial $P(x) = x^4 + cx^3 + x^2$ have two inflection points? One inflection point? None? Illustrate by graphing P for several values of c. How does the graph change as c decreases?

71. Prove that if $(c, f(c))$ is a point of inflection of the graph of f and f'' exists in an open interval that contains c, then $f''(c) = 0$. [*Hint:* Apply the First Derivative Test and Fermat's Theorem to the function $g = f'$.]

72. Show that if $f(x) = x^4$, then $f''(0) = 0$, but $(0, 0)$ is not an inflection point of the graph of f.

73. Show that the function $g(x) = x|x|$ has an inflection point at $(0, 0)$ but $g''(0)$ does not exist.

74. Suppose that f''' is continuous and $f'(c) = f''(c) = 0$, but $f'''(c) > 0$. Does f have a local maximum or minimum at c? Does f have a point of inflection at c?

75. Suppose f is differentiable on an interval I and $f'(x) > 0$ for all numbers x in I except for a single number c. Prove that f is increasing on the entire interval I.

76. For what values of c is the function

$$f(x) = cx + \frac{1}{x^2 + 3}$$

increasing on $(-\infty, \infty)$?

77. The three cases in the First Derivative Test cover the situations one commonly encounters but do not exhaust all possibilities. Consider the functions f, g, and h whose values at 0 are all 0 and, for $x \neq 0$,

$$f(x) = x^4 \sin\frac{1}{x} \qquad g(x) = x^4\left(2 + \sin\frac{1}{x}\right)$$

$$h(x) = x^4\left(-2 + \sin\frac{1}{x}\right)$$

(a) Show that 0 is a critical number of all three functions but their derivatives change sign infinitely often on both sides of 0.

(b) Show that f has neither a local maximum nor a local minimum at 0, g has a local minimum, and h has a local maximum.

3.4 Limits at Infinity; Horizontal Asymptotes

In Sections 1.5 and 1.7 we investigated infinite limits and vertical asymptotes. There we let x approach a number and the result was that the values of y became arbitrarily large (positive or negative). In this section we let x become arbitrarily large (positive or negative) and see what happens to y. We will find it very useful to consider this so-called *end behavior* when sketching graphs.

Let's begin by investigating the behavior of the function f defined by

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1}$$

as x becomes large. The table at the left gives values of this function correct to six decimal places, and the graph of f has been drawn by a computer in Figure 1.

x	$f(x)$
0	−1
±1	0
±2	0.600000
±3	0.800000
±4	0.882353
±5	0.923077
±10	0.980198
±50	0.999200
±100	0.999800
±1000	0.999998

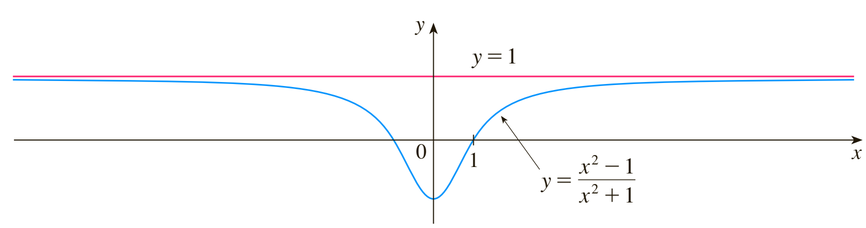


FIGURE 1

As x grows larger and larger you can see that the values of $f(x)$ get closer and closer to 1. (The graph of f approaches the horizontal line $y = 1$ as we look to the right.) In fact, it seems that we can make the values of $f(x)$ as close as we like to 1 by taking x sufficiently large. This situation is expressed symbolically by writing

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1} = 1$$

In general, we use the notation

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$$

to indicate that the values of $f(x)$ approach L as x becomes larger and larger.

> **1 Intuitive Definition of a Limit at Infinity** Let f be a function defined on some interval (a, ∞). Then
>
> $$\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$$
>
> means that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily close to L by requiring x to be sufficiently large.

Another notation for $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$ is

$$f(x) \to L \quad \text{as} \quad x \to \infty$$

The symbol ∞ does not represent a number. Nonetheless, the expression $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$ is often read as

"the limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches infinity, is L"

or "the limit of $f(x)$, as x becomes infinite, is L"

or "the limit of $f(x)$, as x increases without bound, is L"

The meaning of such phrases is given by Definition 1. A more precise definition, similar to the ε, δ definition of Section 1.7, is given at the end of this section.

Geometric illustrations of Definition 1 are shown in Figure 2. Notice that there are many ways for the graph of f to approach the line $y = L$ (which is called a *horizontal asymptote*) as we look to the far right of each graph.

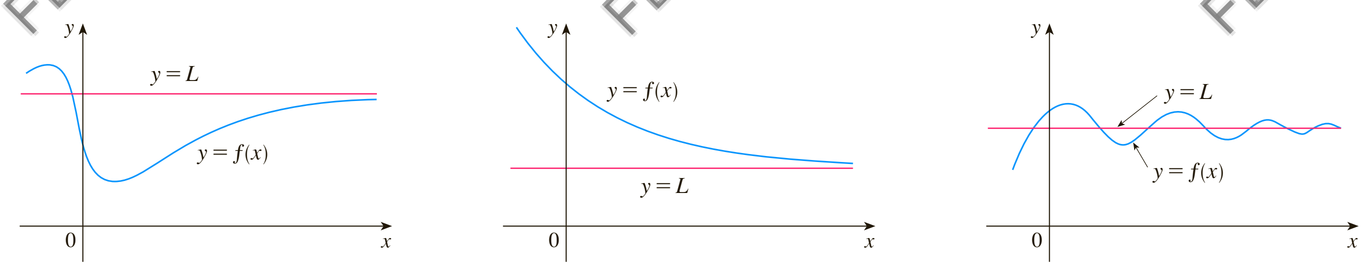


FIGURE 2
Examples illustrating $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$

Referring back to Figure 1, we see that for numerically large negative values of x, the values of $f(x)$ are close to 1. By letting x decrease through negative values without bound, we can make $f(x)$ as close to 1 as we like. This is expressed by writing

$$\lim_{x\to-\infty} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1} = 1$$

The general definition is as follows.

> **2 Definition** Let f be a function defined on some interval $(-\infty, a)$. Then
>
> $$\lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x) = L$$
>
> means that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily close to L by requiring x to be sufficiently large negative.

Again, the symbol $-\infty$ does not represent a number, but the expression $\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = L$ is often read as

"the limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches negative infinity, is L"

Definition 2 is illustrated in Figure 3. Notice that the graph approaches the line $y = L$ as we look to the far left of each graph.

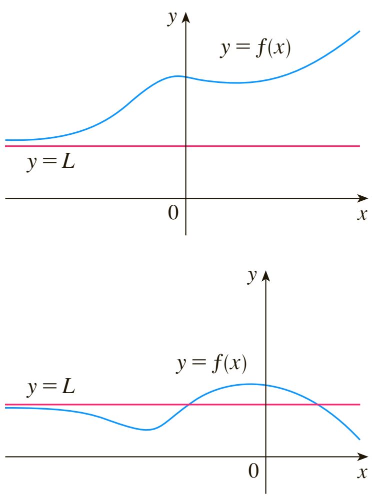


FIGURE 3
Examples illustrating $\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = L$

> **3 Definition** The line $y = L$ is called a **horizontal asymptote** of the curve $y = f(x)$ if either
>
> $$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = L \qquad \text{or} \qquad \lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = L$$

For instance, the curve illustrated in Figure 1 has the line $y = 1$ as a horizontal asymptote because

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1} = 1$$

The curve $y = f(x)$ sketched in Figure 4 has both $y = -1$ and $y = 2$ as horizontal asymptotes because

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = -1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = 2$$

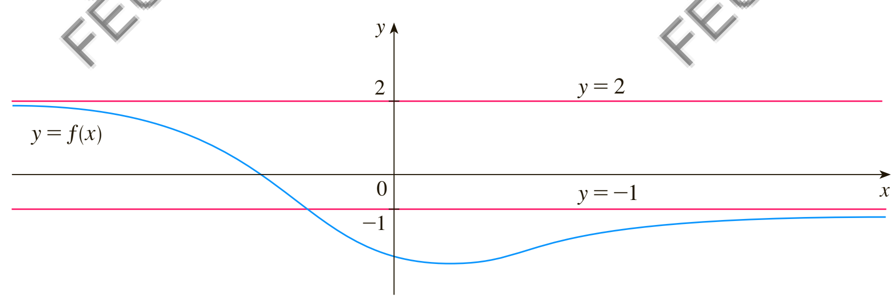


FIGURE 4

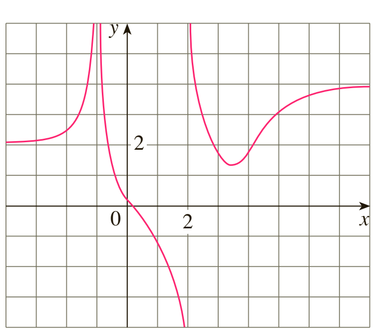


FIGURE 5

EXAMPLE 1 Find the infinite limits, limits at infinity, and asymptotes for the function f whose graph is shown in Figure 5.

SOLUTION We see that the values of $f(x)$ become large as $x \to -1$ from both sides, so

$$\lim_{x \to -1} f(x) = \infty$$

Notice that $f(x)$ becomes large negative as x approaches 2 from the left, but large positive as x approaches 2 from the right. So

$$\lim_{x \to 2^-} f(x) = -\infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 2^+} f(x) = \infty$$

Thus both of the lines $x = -1$ and $x = 2$ are vertical asymptotes.

As x becomes large, it appears that $f(x)$ approaches 4. But as x decreases through negative values, $f(x)$ approaches 2. So

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = 4 \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = 2$$

This means that both $y = 4$ and $y = 2$ are horizontal asymptotes. ■

EXAMPLE 2 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x}$ and $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to -\infty} \frac{1}{x}$.

SOLUTION Observe that when x is large, $1/x$ is small. For instance,

$$\frac{1}{100} = 0.01 \qquad \frac{1}{10{,}000} = 0.0001 \qquad \frac{1}{1{,}000{,}000} = 0.000001$$

In fact, by taking x large enough, we can make $1/x$ as close to 0 as we please. Therefore, according to Definition 1, we have

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0$$

Similar reasoning shows that when x is large negative, $1/x$ is small negative, so we also have

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0$$

It follows that the line $y = 0$ (the x-axis) is a horizontal asymptote of the curve $y = 1/x$. (This is an equilateral hyperbola; see Figure 6.) ■

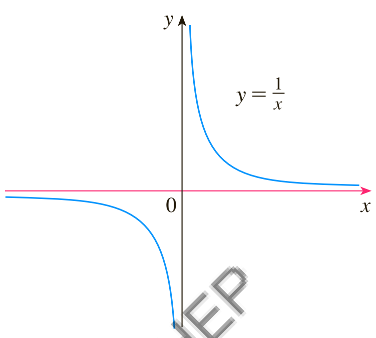


FIGURE 6
$\displaystyle\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0, \quad \lim_{x \to -\infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0$

Most of the Limit Laws that were given in Section 1.6 also hold for limits at infinity. It can be proved that *the Limit Laws listed in Section 1.6 (with the exception of Laws 9 and 10) are also valid if "$x \to a$" is replaced by "$x \to \infty$" or "$x \to -\infty$."* In particular, if we combine Laws 6 and 11 with the results of Example 2, we obtain the following important rule for calculating limits.

4 Theorem If $r > 0$ is a rational number, then

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x^r} = 0$$

If $r > 0$ is a rational number such that x^r is defined for all x, then

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} \frac{1}{x^r} = 0$$

EXAMPLE 3 Evaluate

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{3x^2 - x - 2}{5x^2 + 4x + 1}$$

and indicate which properties of limits are used at each stage.

SOLUTION As x becomes large, both numerator and denominator become large, so it isn't obvious what happens to their ratio. We need to do some preliminary algebra.

To evaluate the limit at infinity of any rational function, we first divide both the numerator and denominator by the highest power of x that occurs in the denominator. (We may assume that $x \neq 0$, since we are interested only in large values of x.) In this case the highest power of x in the denominator is x^2, so we have

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{3x^2 - x - 2}{5x^2 + 4x + 1} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\dfrac{3x^2 - x - 2}{x^2}}{\dfrac{5x^2 + 4x + 1}{x^2}} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{3 - \dfrac{1}{x} - \dfrac{2}{x^2}}{5 + \dfrac{4}{x} + \dfrac{1}{x^2}}$$

$$= \frac{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty}\left(3 - \dfrac{1}{x} - \dfrac{2}{x^2}\right)}{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty}\left(5 + \dfrac{4}{x} + \dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)} \qquad \text{(by Limit Law 5)}$$

$$= \frac{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} 3 - \lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{1}{x} - 2 \lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{1}{x^2}}{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} 5 + 4 \lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{1}{x} + \lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{1}{x^2}} \qquad \text{(by 1, 2, and 3)}$$

$$= \frac{3 - 0 - 0}{5 + 0 + 0} \qquad \text{(by 7 and Theorem 4)}$$

$$= \frac{3}{5}$$

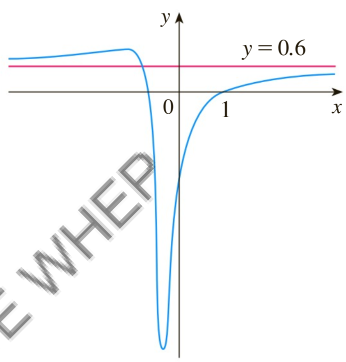


FIGURE 7

$$y = \frac{3x^2 - x - 2}{5x^2 + 4x + 1}$$

A similar calculation shows that the limit as $x \to -\infty$ is also $\frac{3}{5}$. Figure 7 illustrates the results of these calculations by showing how the graph of the given rational function approaches the horizontal asymptote $y = \frac{3}{5} = 0.6$. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Find the horizontal and vertical asymptotes of the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \frac{\sqrt{2x^2 + 1}}{3x - 5}$$

SOLUTION Dividing both numerator and denominator by x and using the properties of limits, we have

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\sqrt{2x^2 + 1}}{3x - 5} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\dfrac{\sqrt{2x^2 + 1}}{x}}{\dfrac{3x - 5}{x}} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\sqrt{\dfrac{2x^2 + 1}{x^2}}}{\dfrac{3x - 5}{x}} \qquad \left(\text{since } \sqrt{x^2} = x \text{ for } x > 0\right)$$

$$= \frac{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \sqrt{2 + \dfrac{1}{x^2}}}{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty}\left(3 - \dfrac{5}{x}\right)} = \frac{\sqrt{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} 2 + \lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{1}{x^2}}}{\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} 3 - 5 \lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{1}{x}} = \frac{\sqrt{2 + 0}}{3 - 5 \cdot 0} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$$

Therefore the line $y = \sqrt{2}/3$ is a horizontal asymptote of the graph of f.

In computing the limit as $x \to -\infty$, we must remember that for $x < 0$, we have $\sqrt{x^2} = |x| = -x$. So when we divide the numerator by x, for $x < 0$ we get

$$\frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{x} = \frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{-\sqrt{x^2}} = -\sqrt{\frac{2x^2+1}{x^2}} = -\sqrt{2+\frac{1}{x^2}}$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{3x-5} = \lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{-\sqrt{2+\dfrac{1}{x^2}}}{3-\dfrac{5}{x}} = \frac{-\sqrt{2+\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{1}{x^2}}}{3-5\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{1}{x}} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$$

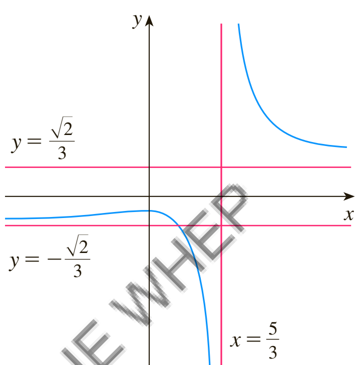


FIGURE 8
$$y = \frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{3x-5}$$

Thus the line $y = -\sqrt{2}/3$ is also a horizontal asymptote.

A vertical asymptote is likely to occur when the denominator, $3x - 5$, is 0, that is, when $x = \frac{5}{3}$. If x is close to $\frac{5}{3}$ and $x > \frac{5}{3}$, then the denominator is close to 0 and $3x - 5$ is positive. The numerator $\sqrt{2x^2+1}$ is always positive, so $f(x)$ is positive. Therefore

$$\lim_{x\to(5/3)^+}\frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{3x-5} = \infty$$

(Notice that the numerator does *not* approach 0 as $x \to 5/3$.)

If x is close to $\frac{5}{3}$ but $x < \frac{5}{3}$, then $3x - 5 < 0$ and so $f(x)$ is large negative. Thus

$$\lim_{x\to(5/3)^-}\frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{3x-5} = -\infty$$

The vertical asymptote is $x = \frac{5}{3}$. All three asymptotes are shown in Figure 8. ■

EXAMPLE 5 Compute $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty}\left(\sqrt{x^2+1} - x\right)$.

SOLUTION Because both $\sqrt{x^2+1}$ and x are large when x is large, it's difficult to see what happens to their difference, so we use algebra to rewrite the function. We first multiply numerator and denominator by the conjugate radical:

We can think of the given function as having a denominator of 1.

$$\lim_{x\to\infty}\left(\sqrt{x^2+1} - x\right) = \lim_{x\to\infty}\left(\sqrt{x^2+1} - x\right)\cdot\frac{\sqrt{x^2+1}+x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}+x}$$

$$= \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{(x^2+1)-x^2}{\sqrt{x^2+1}+x} = \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}+x}$$

Notice that the denominator of this last expression $\left(\sqrt{x^2+1}+x\right)$ becomes large as $x \to \infty$ (it's bigger than x). So

$$\lim_{x\to\infty}\left(\sqrt{x^2+1} - x\right) = \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}+x} = 0$$

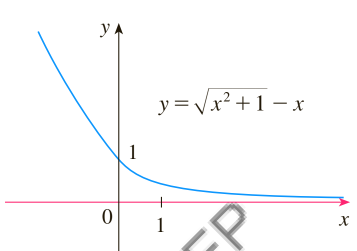


FIGURE 9

Figure 9 illustrates this result. ■

EXAMPLE 6 Evaluate $\lim_{x \to \infty} \sin \dfrac{1}{x}$.

PS The problem-solving strategy for Example 6 is *introducing something extra* (see page 98). Here, the something extra, the auxiliary aid, is the new variable t.

SOLUTION If we let $t = 1/x$, then $t \to 0^+$ as $x \to \infty$. Therefore

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \sin \frac{1}{x} = \lim_{t \to 0^+} \sin t = 0$$

(See Exercise 73.) ■

EXAMPLE 7 Evaluate $\lim_{x \to \infty} \sin x$.

SOLUTION As x increases, the values of $\sin x$ oscillate between 1 and -1 infinitely often and so they don't approach any definite number. Thus $\lim_{x \to \infty} \sin x$ does not exist. ■

Infinite Limits at Infinity

The notation

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = \infty$$

is used to indicate that the values of $f(x)$ become large as x becomes large. Similar meanings are attached to the following symbols:

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = \infty \qquad \lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = -\infty \qquad \lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = -\infty$$

EXAMPLE 8 Find $\lim_{x \to \infty} x^3$ and $\lim_{x \to -\infty} x^3$.

SOLUTION When x becomes large, x^3 also becomes large. For instance,

$$10^3 = 1000 \qquad 100^3 = 1{,}000{,}000 \qquad 1000^3 = 1{,}000{,}000{,}000$$

In fact, we can make x^3 as big as we like by requiring x to be large enough. Therefore we can write

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} x^3 = \infty$$

Similarly, when x is large negative, so is x^3. Thus

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} x^3 = -\infty$$

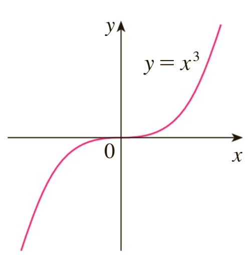


FIGURE 10
$\lim_{x \to \infty} x^3 = \infty$, $\lim_{x \to -\infty} x^3 = -\infty$

These limit statements can also be seen from the graph of $y = x^3$ in Figure 10. ■

EXAMPLE 9 Find $\lim_{x \to \infty} (x^2 - x)$.

SOLUTION It would be **wrong** to write

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} (x^2 - x) = \lim_{x \to \infty} x^2 - \lim_{x \to \infty} x = \infty - \infty$$

The Limit Laws can't be applied to infinite limits because ∞ is not a number ($\infty - \infty$ can't be defined). However, we *can* write

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} (x^2 - x) = \lim_{x \to \infty} x(x - 1) = \infty$$

because both x and $x - 1$ become arbitrarily large and so their product does too. ■

EXAMPLE 10 Find $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^2 + x}{3 - x}$.

SOLUTION As in Example 3, we divide the numerator and denominator by the highest power of x in the denominator, which is just x:

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^2 + x}{3 - x} = \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x + 1}{\dfrac{3}{x} - 1} = -\infty$$

because $x + 1 \to \infty$ and $3/x - 1 \to 0 - 1 = -1$ as $x \to \infty$. ■

The next example shows that by using infinite limits at infinity, together with intercepts, we can get a rough idea of the graph of a polynomial without computing derivatives.

EXAMPLE 11 Sketch the graph of $y = (x - 2)^4(x + 1)^3(x - 1)$ by finding its intercepts and its limits as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$.

SOLUTION The y-intercept is $f(0) = (-2)^4(1)^3(-1) = -16$ and the x-intercepts are found by setting $y = 0$: $x = 2, -1, 1$. Notice that since $(x - 2)^4$ is never negative, the function doesn't change sign at 2; thus the graph doesn't cross the x-axis at 2. The graph crosses the axis at -1 and 1.

When x is large positive, all three factors are large, so

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} (x - 2)^4(x + 1)^3(x - 1) = \infty$$

When x is large negative, the first factor is large positive and the second and third factors are both large negative, so

$$\lim_{x\to-\infty} (x - 2)^4(x + 1)^3(x - 1) = \infty$$

Combining this information, we give a rough sketch of the graph in Figure 11. ■

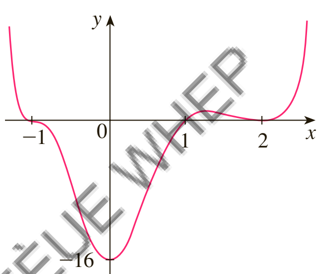


FIGURE 11
$y = (x - 2)^4(x + 1)^3(x - 1)$

Precise Definitions

Definition 1 can be stated precisely as follows.

> **5 Precise Definition of a Limit at Infinity** Let f be a function defined on some interval (a, ∞). Then
>
> $$\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$$
>
> means that for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a corresponding number N such that
>
> $$\text{if} \quad x > N \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

In words, this says that the values of $f(x)$ can be made arbitrarily close to L (within a distance ε, where ε is any positive number) by requiring x to be sufficiently large (larger than N, where N depends on ε). Graphically it says that by keeping x large enough (larger than some number N) we can make the graph of f lie between the given horizontal lines $y = L - \varepsilon$ and $y = L + \varepsilon$ as in Figure 12. This must be true no matter how small we choose ε.

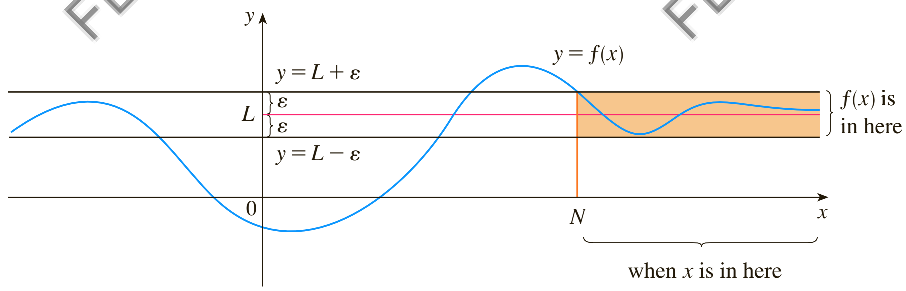


FIGURE 12
$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = L$

Figure 13 shows that if a smaller value of ε is chosen, then a larger value of N may be required.

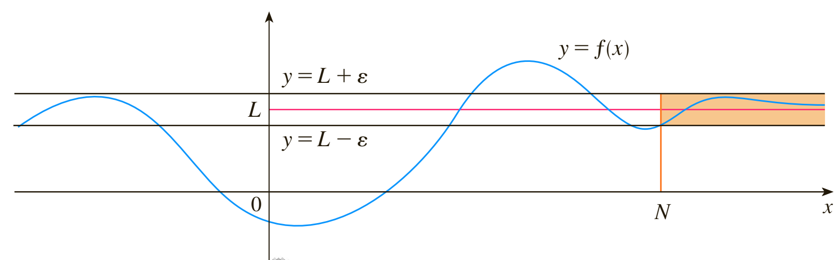


FIGURE 13
$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = L$

Similarly, a precise version of Definition 2 is given by Definition 6, which is illustrated in Figure 14.

6 Definition Let f be a function defined on some interval $(-\infty, a)$. Then

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = L$$

means that for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there is a corresponding number N such that

$$\text{if} \quad x < N \quad \text{then} \quad |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

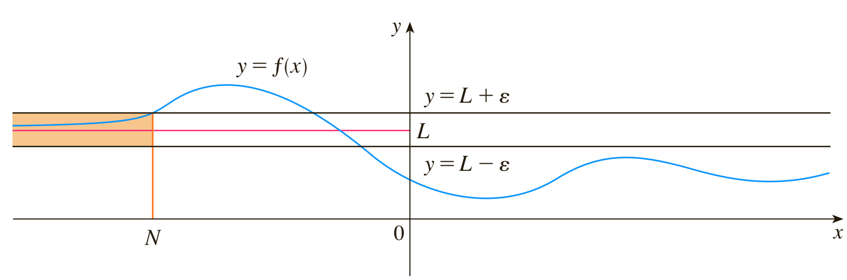


FIGURE 14
$\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = L$

In Example 3 we calculated that

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{3x^2 - x - 2}{5x^2 + 4x + 1} = \frac{3}{5}$$

In the next example we use a graphing device to relate this statement to Definition 5 with $L = \frac{3}{5} = 0.6$ and $\varepsilon = 0.1$.

TEC In Module 1.7/3.4 you can explore the precise definition of a limit both graphically and numerically.

EXAMPLE 12 Use a graph to find a number N such that

$$\text{if} \quad x > N \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| \frac{3x^2 - x - 2}{5x^2 + 4x + 1} - 0.6 \right| < 0.1$$

SOLUTION We rewrite the given inequality as

$$0.5 < \frac{3x^2 - x - 2}{5x^2 + 4x + 1} < 0.7$$

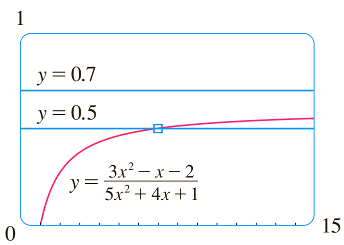


FIGURE 15

We need to determine the values of x for which the given curve lies between the horizontal lines $y = 0.5$ and $y = 0.7$. So we graph the curve and these lines in Figure 15. Then we use the cursor to estimate that the curve crosses the line $y = 0.5$ when $x \approx 6.7$. To the right of this number it seems that the curve stays between the lines $y = 0.5$ and $y = 0.7$. Rounding up to be safe, we can say that

$$\text{if} \quad x > 7 \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| \frac{3x^2 - x - 2}{5x^2 + 4x + 1} - 0.6 \right| < 0.1$$

In other words, for $\varepsilon = 0.1$ we can choose $N = 7$ (or any larger number) in Definition 5. ■

EXAMPLE 13 Use Definition 5 to prove that $\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0$.

SOLUTION Given $\varepsilon > 0$, we want to find N such that

$$\text{if} \quad x > N \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| \frac{1}{x} - 0 \right| < \varepsilon$$

In computing the limit we may assume that $x > 0$. Then $1/x < \varepsilon \iff x > 1/\varepsilon$. Let's choose $N = 1/\varepsilon$. So

$$\text{if} \quad x > N = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \qquad \text{then} \qquad \left| \frac{1}{x} - 0 \right| = \frac{1}{x} < \varepsilon$$

Therefore, by Definition 5,

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0$$

Figure 16 illustrates the proof by showing some values of ε and the corresponding values of N.

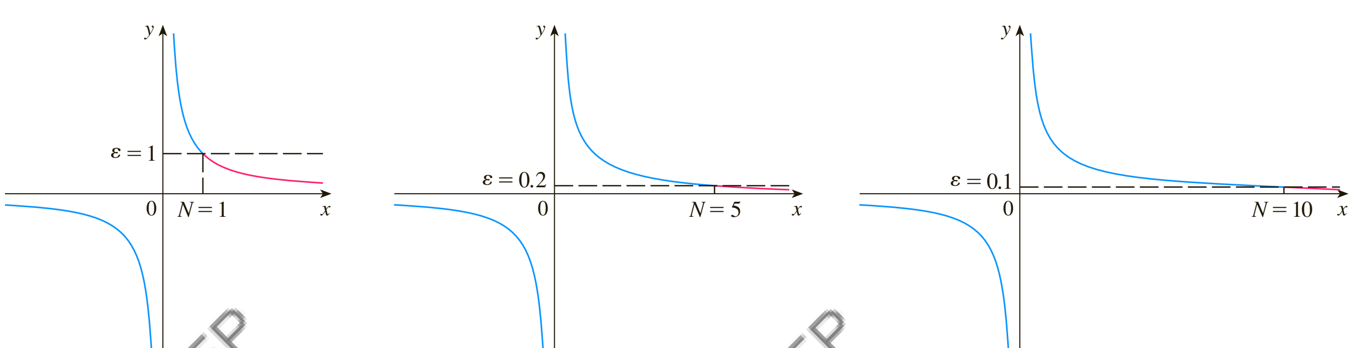


FIGURE 16 ■

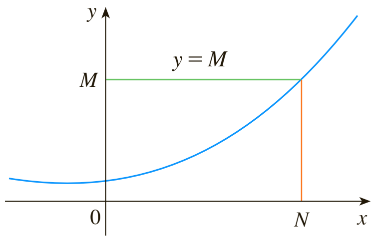


FIGURE 17
$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = \infty$

Finally we note that an infinite limit at infinity can be defined as follows. The geometric illustration is given in Figure 17.

7 Definition of an Infinite Limit at Infinity Let f be a function defined on some interval (a, ∞). Then

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = \infty$$

means that for every positive number M there is a corresponding positive number N such that

$$\text{if} \quad x > N \qquad \text{then} \qquad f(x) > M$$

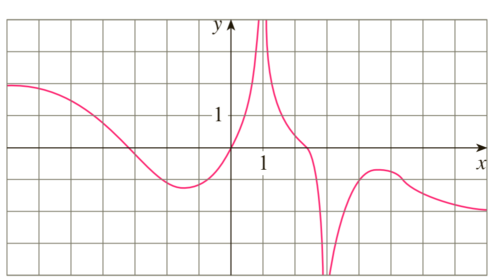
Similar definitions apply when the symbol ∞ is replaced by $-\infty$. (See Exercise 74.)

3.4 EXERCISES

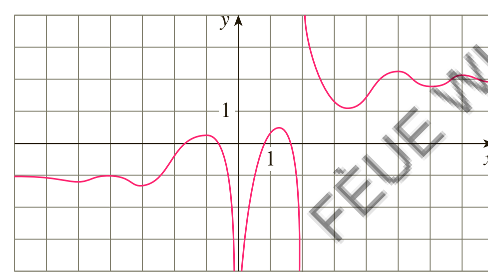
1. Explain in your own words the meaning of each of the following.
(a) $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = 5$ (b) $\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = 3$

2. (a) Can the graph of $y = f(x)$ intersect a vertical asymptote? Can it intersect a horizontal asymptote? Illustrate by sketching graphs.
(b) How many horizontal asymptotes can the graph of $y = f(x)$ have? Sketch graphs to illustrate the possibilities.

3. For the function f whose graph is given, state the following.
(a) $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x \to 1} f(x)$ (d) $\lim_{x \to 3} f(x)$
(e) The equations of the asymptotes



4. For the function g whose graph is given, state the following.
(a) $\lim_{x \to \infty} g(x)$ (b) $\lim_{x \to -\infty} g(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x \to 0} g(x)$ (d) $\lim_{x \to 2^-} g(x)$
(e) $\lim_{x \to 2^+} g(x)$ (f) The equations of the asymptotes



5. Guess the value of the limit

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{x^2}{2^x}$$

by evaluating the function $f(x) = x^2/2^x$ for $x = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 20, 50$, and 100. Then use a graph of f to support your guess.

6. (a) Use a graph of

$$f(x) = \left(1 - \frac{2}{x}\right)^x$$

to estimate the value of $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x)$ correct to two decimal places.
(b) Use a table of values of $f(x)$ to estimate the limit to four decimal places.

7–8 Evaluate the limit and justify each step by indicating the appropriate properties of limits.

7. $\lim_{x \to \infty} \dfrac{2x^2 - 7}{5x^2 + x - 3}$ **8.** $\lim_{x \to \infty} \sqrt{\dfrac{9x^3 + 8x - 4}{3 - 5x + x^3}}$

9–32 Find the limit or show that it does not exist.

9. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{3x-2}{2x+1}$

10. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1-x^2}{x^3-x+1}$

11. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} \frac{x-2}{x^2+1}$

12. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} \frac{4x^3+6x^2-2}{2x^3-4x+5}$

13. $\displaystyle\lim_{t\to\infty} \frac{\sqrt{t}+t^2}{2t-t^2}$

14. $\displaystyle\lim_{t\to\infty} \frac{t-t\sqrt{t}}{2t^{3/2}+3t-5}$

15. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{(2x^2+1)^2}{(x-1)^2(x^2+x)}$

16. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^4+1}}$

17. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\sqrt{1+4x^6}}{2-x^3}$

18. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} \frac{\sqrt{1+4x^6}}{2-x^3}$

19. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\sqrt{x+3x^2}}{4x-1}$

20. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x+3x^2}{4x-1}$

21. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(\sqrt{9x^2+x}-3x\right)$

22. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} \left(\sqrt{4x^2+3x}+2x\right)$

23. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(\sqrt{x^2+ax}-\sqrt{x^2+bx}\right)$

24. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \cos x$

25. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^4-3x^2+x}{x^3-x+2}$

26. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \sqrt{x^2+1}$

27. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} (x^2+2x^7)$

28. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} \frac{1+x^6}{x^4+1}$

29. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \left(x-\sqrt{x}\right)$

30. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} (x^2-x^4)$

31. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} x\sin\frac{1}{x}$

32. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \sqrt{x}\sin\frac{1}{x}$

33. (a) Estimate the value of

$$\lim_{x\to-\infty} \left(\sqrt{x^2+x+1}+x\right)$$

by graphing the function $f(x)=\sqrt{x^2+x+1}+x$.

(b) Use a table of values of $f(x)$ to guess the value of the limit.

(c) Prove that your guess is correct.

34. (a) Use a graph of

$$f(x)=\sqrt{3x^2+8x+6}-\sqrt{3x^2+3x+1}$$

to estimate the value of $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x)$ to one decimal place.

(b) Use a table of values of $f(x)$ to estimate the limit to four decimal places.

(c) Find the exact value of the limit.

35–40 Find the horizontal and vertical asymptotes of each curve. If you have a graphing device, check your work by graphing the curve and estimating the asymptotes.

35. $y=\dfrac{5+4x}{x+3}$

36. $y=\dfrac{2x^2+1}{3x^2+2x-1}$

37. $y=\dfrac{2x^2+x-1}{x^2+x-2}$

38. $y=\dfrac{1+x^4}{x^2-x^4}$

39. $y=\dfrac{x^3-x}{x^2-6x+5}$

40. $y=\dfrac{x-9}{\sqrt{4x^2+3x+2}}$

41. Estimate the horizontal asymptote of the function

$$f(x)=\frac{3x^3+500x^2}{x^3+500x^2+100x+2000}$$

by graphing f for $-10 \leqslant x \leqslant 10$. Then calculate the equation of the asymptote by evaluating the limit. How do you explain the discrepancy?

42. (a) Graph the function

$$f(x)=\frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{3x-5}$$

How many horizontal and vertical asymptotes do you observe? Use the graph to estimate the values of the limits

$$\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{3x-5} \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{\sqrt{2x^2+1}}{3x-5}$$

(b) By calculating values of $f(x)$, give numerical estimates of the limits in part (a).

(c) Calculate the exact values of the limits in part (a). Did you get the same value or different values for these two limits? [In view of your answer to part (a), you might have to check your calculation for the second limit.]

43. Let P and Q be polynomials. Find

$$\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$$

if the degree of P is (a) less than the degree of Q and (b) greater than the degree of Q.

44. Make a rough sketch of the curve $y=x^n$ (n an integer) for the following five cases:

(i) $n=0$ (ii) $n>0$, n odd
(iii) $n>0$, n even (iv) $n<0$, n odd
(v) $n<0$, n even

Then use these sketches to find the following limits.

(a) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to0^+} x^n$ (b) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to0^-} x^n$

(c) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} x^n$ (d) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} x^n$

45. Find a formula for a function f that satisfies the following conditions:

$$\lim_{x\to\pm\infty} f(x) = 0, \quad \lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = -\infty, \quad f(2) = 0,$$
$$\lim_{x\to 3^-} f(x) = \infty, \quad \lim_{x\to 3^+} f(x) = -\infty$$

46. Find a formula for a function that has vertical asymptotes $x = 1$ and $x = 3$ and horizontal asymptote $y = 1$.

47. A function f is a ratio of quadratic functions and has a vertical asymptote $x = 4$ and just one x-intercept, $x = 1$. It is known that f has a removable discontinuity at $x = -1$ and $\lim_{x\to -1} f(x) = 2$. Evaluate

(a) $f(0)$ (b) $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x)$

48–51 Find the horizontal asymptotes of the curve and use them, together with concavity and intervals of increase and decrease, to sketch the curve.

48. $y = \dfrac{1 + 2x^2}{1 + x^2}$

49. $y = \dfrac{1 - x}{1 + x}$

50. $y = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}$

51. $y = \dfrac{x}{x^2 + 1}$

52–56 Find the limits as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$. Use this information, together with intercepts, to give a rough sketch of the graph as in Example 11.

52. $y = 2x^3 - x^4$

53. $y = x^4 - x^6$

54. $y = x^3(x + 2)^2(x - 1)$

55. $y = (3 - x)(1 + x)^2(1 - x)^4$

56. $y = x^2(x^2 - 1)^2(x + 2)$

57–60 Sketch the graph of a function that satisfies all of the given conditions.

57. $f'(2) = 0, \quad f(2) = -1, \quad f(0) = 0,$
$f'(x) < 0$ if $0 < x < 2, \quad f'(x) > 0$ if $x > 2,$
$f''(x) < 0$ if $0 \leqslant x < 1$ or if $x > 4,$
$f''(x) > 0$ if $1 < x < 4, \quad \lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = 1,$
$f(-x) = f(x)$ for all x

58. $f'(2) = 0, \quad f'(0) = 1, \quad f'(x) > 0$ if $0 < x < 2,$
$f'(x) < 0$ if $x > 2, \quad f''(x) < 0$ if $0 < x < 4,$
$f''(x) > 0$ if $x > 4, \quad \lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = 0,$
$f(-x) = -f(x)$ for all x

59. $f(1) = f'(1) = 0, \quad \lim_{x\to 2^+} f(x) = \infty, \quad \lim_{x\to 2^-} f(x) = -\infty,$
$\lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = -\infty, \quad \lim_{x\to -\infty} f(x) = \infty, \quad \lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = 0,$
$f''(x) > 0$ for $x > 2, \quad f''(x) < 0$ for $x < 0$ and for $0 < x < 2$

60. $g(0) = 0, \quad g''(x) < 0$ for $x \neq 0, \quad \lim_{x\to -\infty} g(x) = \infty,$
$\lim_{x\to\infty} g(x) = -\infty, \quad \lim_{x\to 0^-} g'(x) = -\infty,$
$\lim_{x\to 0^+} g'(x) = \infty$

61. (a) Use the Squeeze Theorem to evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{\sin x}{x}$.

(b) Graph $f(x) = (\sin x)/x$. How many times does the graph cross the asymptote?

62. By the *end behavior* of a function we mean the behavior of its values as $x \to \infty$ and as $x \to -\infty$.

(a) Describe and compare the end behavior of the functions

$$P(x) = 3x^5 - 5x^3 + 2x \qquad Q(x) = 3x^5$$

by graphing both functions in the viewing rectangles $[-2, 2]$ by $[-2, 2]$ and $[-10, 10]$ by $[-10{,}000, 10{,}000]$.

(b) Two functions are said to have the *same end behavior* if their ratio approaches 1 as $x \to \infty$. Show that P and Q have the same end behavior.

63. Find $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x)$ if

$$\frac{4x - 1}{x} < f(x) < \frac{4x^2 + 3x}{x^2}$$

for all $x > 5$.

64. (a) A tank contains 5000 L of pure water. Brine that contains 30 g of salt per liter of water is pumped into the tank at a rate of 25 L/min. Show that the concentration of salt after t minutes (in grams per liter) is

$$C(t) = \frac{30t}{200 + t}$$

(b) What happens to the concentration as $t \to \infty$?

65. Use a graph to find a number N such that

$$\text{if} \quad x > N \quad \text{then} \quad \left| \frac{3x^2 + 1}{2x^2 + x + 1} - 1.5 \right| < 0.05$$

66. For the limit

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1 - 3x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}} = -3$$

illustrate Definition 5 by finding values of N that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.1$ and $\varepsilon = 0.05$.

67. For the limit

$$\lim_{x\to -\infty} \frac{1 - 3x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}} = 3$$

illustrate Definition 6 by finding values of N that correspond to $\varepsilon = 0.1$ and $\varepsilon = 0.05$.

68. For the limit

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{3x}{\sqrt{x-3}} = \infty$$

illustrate Definition 7 by finding a value of N that corresponds to $M = 100$.

69. (a) How large do we have to take x so that $1/x^2 < 0.0001$?

(b) Taking $r = 2$ in Theorem 4, we have the statement

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{x^2} = 0$$

Prove this directly using Definition 5.

70. (a) How large do we have to take x so that $1/\sqrt{x} < 0.0001$?

(b) Taking $r = \frac{1}{2}$ in Theorem 4, we have the statement

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} = 0$$

Prove this directly using Definition 5.

71. Use Definition 6 to prove that $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to -\infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0$.

72. Prove, using Definition 7, that $\displaystyle\lim_{x \to \infty} x^3 = \infty$.

73. (a) Prove that

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = \lim_{t \to 0^+} f(1/t)$$

and

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = \lim_{t \to 0^-} f(1/t)$$

if these limits exist.

(b) Use part (a) and Exercise 61 to find

$$\lim_{x \to 0^+} x \sin \frac{1}{x}$$

74. Formulate a precise definition of

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = -\infty$$

Then use your definition to prove that

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} (1 + x^3) = -\infty$$

3.5 Summary of Curve Sketching

So far we have been concerned with some particular aspects of curve sketching: domain, range, symmetry, limits, continuity, and vertical asymptotes in Chapter 1; derivatives and tangents in Chapter 2; and extreme values, intervals of increase and decrease, concavity, points of inflection, and horizontal asymptotes in this chapter. It is now time to put all of this information together to sketch graphs that reveal the important features of functions.

You might ask: Why don't we just use a graphing calculator or computer to graph a curve? Why do we need to use calculus?

It's true that current technology is capable of producing very accurate graphs. But even the best graphing devices have to be used intelligently. It is easy to arrive at a misleading graph, or to miss important details of a curve, when relying solely on technology. (See "Graphing Calculators and Computers" at *www.stewartcalculus.com*, especially Examples 1, 3, 4, and 5. See also Section 3.6.) The use of calculus enables us to discover the most interesting aspects of graphs and in many cases to calculate maximum and minimum points and inflection points *exactly* instead of approximately.

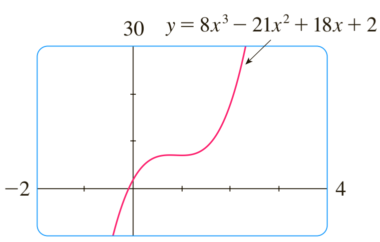


FIGURE 1

For instance, Figure 1 shows the graph of $f(x) = 8x^3 - 21x^2 + 18x + 2$. At first glance it seems reasonable: it has the same shape as cubic curves like $y = x^3$, and it appears to have no maximum or minimum point. But if you compute the derivative, you will see that there is a maximum when $x = 0.75$ and a minimum when $x = 1$. Indeed, if we zoom in to this portion of the graph, we see that behavior exhibited in Figure 2. Without calculus, we could easily have overlooked it.

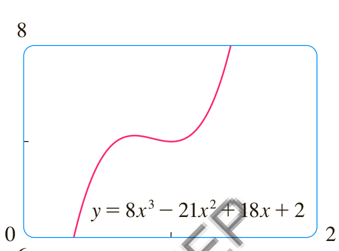


FIGURE 2

In the next section we will graph functions by using the interaction between calculus and graphing devices. In this section we draw graphs by first considering the following information. We don't assume that you have a graphing device, but if you do have one you should use it as a check on your work.

Guidelines for Sketching a Curve

The following checklist is intended as a guide to sketching a curve $y = f(x)$ by hand. Not every item is relevant to every function. (For instance, a given curve might not have an asymptote or possess symmetry.) But the guidelines provide all the information you need to make a sketch that displays the most important aspects of the function.

A. Domain It's often useful to start by determining the domain D of f, that is, the set of values of x for which $f(x)$ is defined.

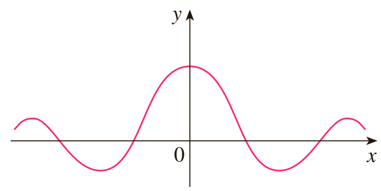
B. Intercepts The y-intercept is $f(0)$ and this tells us where the curve intersects the y-axis. To find the x-intercepts, we set $y = 0$ and solve for x. (You can omit this step if the equation is difficult to solve.)

C. Symmetry

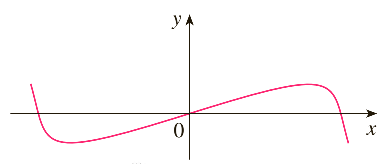
(i) If $f(-x) = f(x)$ for all x in D, that is, the equation of the curve is unchanged when x is replaced by $-x$, then f is an **even function** and the curve is symmetric about the y-axis. This means that our work is cut in half. If we know what the curve looks like for $x \geqslant 0$, then we need only reflect about the y-axis to obtain the complete curve [see Figure 3(a)]. Here are some examples: $y = x^2$, $y = x^4$, $y = |x|$, and $y = \cos x$.

(ii) If $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for all x in D, then f is an **odd function** and the curve is symmetric about the origin. Again we can obtain the complete curve if we know what it looks like for $x \geqslant 0$. [Rotate 180° about the origin; see Figure 3(b).] Some simple examples of odd functions are $y = x$, $y = x^3$, $y = x^5$, and $y = \sin x$.

(iii) If $f(x + p) = f(x)$ for all x in D, where p is a positive constant, then f is called a **periodic function** and the smallest such number p is called the **period**. For instance, $y = \sin x$ has period 2π and $y = \tan x$ has period π. If we know what the graph looks like in an interval of length p, then we can use translation to sketch the entire graph (see Figure 4).



(a) Even function: reflectional symmetry



(b) Odd function: rotational symmetry

FIGURE 3

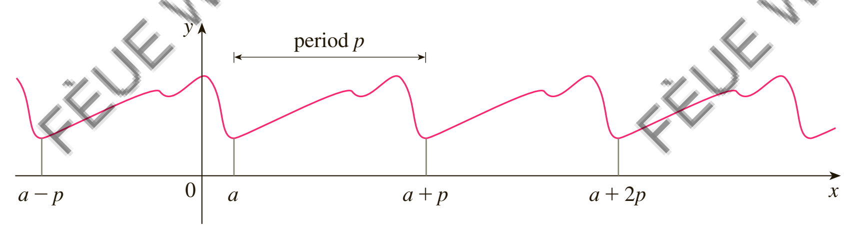


FIGURE 4
Periodic function: translational symmetry

D. Asymptotes

(i) *Horizontal Asymptotes.* Recall from Section 3.4 that if either $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$ or $\lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x) = L$, then the line $y = L$ is a horizontal asymptote of the curve $y = f(x)$. If it turns out that $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = \infty$ (or $-\infty$), then we do not have an asymptote to the right, but this fact is still useful information for sketching the curve.

(ii) *Vertical Asymptotes.* Recall from Section 1.5 that the line $x = a$ is a vertical asymptote if at least one of the following statements is true:

$$\boxed{1} \qquad \lim_{x\to a^+} f(x) = \infty \qquad \lim_{x\to a^-} f(x) = \infty$$

$$\lim_{x\to a^+} f(x) = -\infty \qquad \lim_{x\to a^-} f(x) = -\infty$$

(For rational functions you can locate the vertical asymptotes by equating the denominator to 0 after canceling any common factors. But for other functions this method does not apply.) Furthermore, in sketching the curve it is very useful to know exactly which of the statements in (1) is true. If $f(a)$ is not defined but a is an endpoint of the domain of f, then you should compute $\lim_{x\to a^-} f(x)$ or $\lim_{x\to a^+} f(x)$, whether or not this limit is infinite.

(iii) *Slant Asymptotes.* These are discussed at the end of this section.

E. Intervals of Increase or Decrease Use the I/D Test. Compute $f'(x)$ and find the intervals on which $f'(x)$ is positive (f is increasing) and the intervals on which $f'(x)$ is negative (f is decreasing).

F. Local Maximum and Minimum Values Find the critical numbers of f [the numbers c where $f'(c) = 0$ or $f'(c)$ does not exist]. Then use the First Derivative Test. If f' changes from positive to negative at a critical number c, then $f(c)$ is a local maximum. If f' changes from negative to positive at c, then $f(c)$ is a local minimum. Although it is usually preferable to use the First Derivative Test, you can use the Second Derivative Test if $f'(c) = 0$ and $f''(c) \neq 0$. Then $f''(c) > 0$ implies that $f(c)$ is a local minimum, whereas $f''(c) < 0$ implies that $f(c)$ is a local maximum.

G. Concavity and Points of Inflection Compute $f''(x)$ and use the Concavity Test. The curve is concave upward where $f''(x) > 0$ and concave downward where $f''(x) < 0$. Inflection points occur where the direction of concavity changes.

H. Sketch the Curve Using the information in items A–G, draw the graph. Sketch the asymptotes as dashed lines. Plot the intercepts, maximum and minimum points, and inflection points. Then make the curve pass through these points, rising and falling according to E, with concavity according to G, and approaching the asymptotes. If additional accuracy is desired near any point, you can compute the value of the derivative there. The tangent indicates the direction in which the curve proceeds.

EXAMPLE 1 Use the guidelines to sketch the curve $y = \dfrac{2x^2}{x^2 - 1}$.

A. The domain is

$$\{x \mid x^2 - 1 \neq 0\} = \{x \mid x \neq \pm 1\} = (-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$$

B. The x- and y-intercepts are both 0.

C. Since $f(-x) = f(x)$, the function f is even. The curve is symmetric about the y-axis.

D.
$$\lim_{x \to \pm\infty} \frac{2x^2}{x^2 - 1} = \lim_{x \to \pm\infty} \frac{2}{1 - 1/x^2} = 2$$

Therefore the line $y = 2$ is a horizontal asymptote.

Since the denominator is 0 when $x = \pm 1$, we compute the following limits:

$$\lim_{x \to 1^+} \frac{2x^2}{x^2 - 1} = \infty \qquad \lim_{x \to 1^-} \frac{2x^2}{x^2 - 1} = -\infty$$

$$\lim_{x \to -1^+} \frac{2x^2}{x^2 - 1} = -\infty \qquad \lim_{x \to -1^-} \frac{2x^2}{x^2 - 1} = \infty$$

Therefore the lines $x = 1$ and $x = -1$ are vertical asymptotes. This information about limits and asymptotes enables us to draw the preliminary sketch in Figure 5, showing the parts of the curve near the asymptotes.

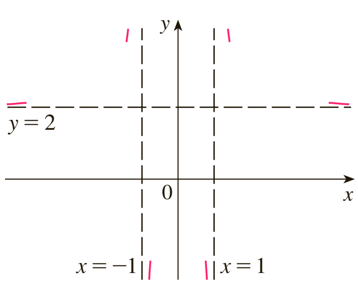


FIGURE 5
Preliminary sketch

We have shown the curve approaching its horizontal asymptote from above in Figure 5. This is confirmed by the intervals of increase and decrease.

E.
$$f'(x) = \frac{(x^2 - 1)(4x) - 2x^2 \cdot 2x}{(x^2 - 1)^2} = \frac{-4x}{(x^2 - 1)^2}$$

Since $f'(x) > 0$ when $x < 0$ ($x \neq -1$) and $f'(x) < 0$ when $x > 0$ ($x \neq 1$), f is increasing on $(-\infty, -1)$ and $(-1, 0)$ and decreasing on $(0, 1)$ and $(1, \infty)$.

F. The only critical number is $x = 0$. Since f' changes from positive to negative at 0, $f(0) = 0$ is a local maximum by the First Derivative Test.

G. $$f''(x) = \frac{(x^2 - 1)^2(-4) + 4x \cdot 2(x^2 - 1)2x}{(x^2 - 1)^4} = \frac{12x^2 + 4}{(x^2 - 1)^3}$$

Since $12x^2 + 4 > 0$ for all x, we have

$$f''(x) > 0 \iff x^2 - 1 > 0 \iff |x| > 1$$

and $f''(x) < 0 \iff |x| < 1$. Thus the curve is concave upward on the intervals $(-\infty, -1)$ and $(1, \infty)$ and concave downward on $(-1, 1)$. It has no point of inflection since 1 and -1 are not in the domain of f.

H. Using the information in E–G, we finish the sketch in Figure 6. ■

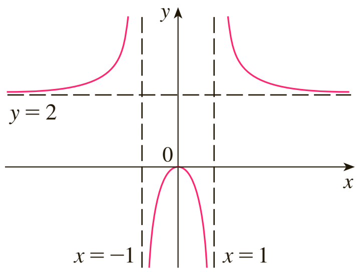


FIGURE 6
Finished sketch of $y = \dfrac{2x^2}{x^2 - 1}$

EXAMPLE 2 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{\sqrt{x + 1}}$.

A. Domain $= \{x \mid x + 1 > 0\} = \{x \mid x > -1\} = (-1, \infty)$

B. The x- and y-intercepts are both 0.

C. Symmetry: None

D. Since

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x + 1}} = \infty$$

there is no horizontal asymptote. Since $\sqrt{x + 1} \to 0$ as $x \to -1^+$ and $f(x)$ is always positive, we have

$$\lim_{x \to -1^+} \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x + 1}} = \infty$$

and so the line $x = -1$ is a vertical asymptote.

E. $$f'(x) = \frac{\sqrt{x + 1}\,(2x) - x^2 \cdot 1/\left(2\sqrt{x + 1}\right)}{x + 1} = \frac{3x^2 + 4x}{2(x + 1)^{3/2}} = \frac{x(3x + 4)}{2(x + 1)^{3/2}}$$

We see that $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = 0$ (notice that $-\frac{4}{3}$ is not in the domain of f), so the only critical number is 0. Since $f'(x) < 0$ when $-1 < x < 0$ and $f'(x) > 0$ when $x > 0$, f is decreasing on $(-1, 0)$ and increasing on $(0, \infty)$.

F. Since $f'(0) = 0$ and f' changes from negative to positive at 0, $f(0) = 0$ is a local (and absolute) minimum by the First Derivative Test.

G. $$f''(x) = \frac{2(x + 1)^{3/2}(6x + 4) - (3x^2 + 4x)3(x + 1)^{1/2}}{4(x + 1)^3} = \frac{3x^2 + 8x + 8}{4(x + 1)^{5/2}}$$

Note that the denominator is always positive. The numerator is the quadratic $3x^2 + 8x + 8$, which is always positive because its discriminant is $b^2 - 4ac = -32$, which is negative, and the coefficient of x^2 is positive. Thus $f''(x) > 0$ for all x in the domain of f, which means that f is concave upward on $(-1, \infty)$ and there is no point of inflection.

H. The curve is sketched in Figure 7. ■

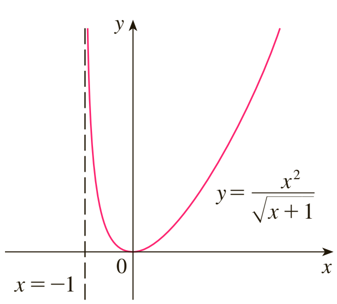


FIGURE 7

EXAMPLE 3 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \dfrac{\cos x}{2 + \sin x}$.

A. The domain is $\mathbb{R}$.

B. The y-intercept is $f(0) = \frac{1}{2}$. The x-intercepts occur when $\cos x = 0$, that is, $x = (\pi/2) + n\pi$, where n is an integer.

C. f is neither even nor odd, but $f(x + 2\pi) = f(x)$ for all x and so f is periodic and has period 2π. Thus, in what follows, we need to consider only $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$ and then extend the curve by translation in part H.

D. Asymptotes: None

E.
$$f'(x) = \frac{(2 + \sin x)(-\sin x) - \cos x\,(\cos x)}{(2 + \sin x)^2} = -\frac{2\sin x + 1}{(2 + \sin x)^2}$$

The denominator is always positive, so $f'(x) > 0$ when $2\sin x + 1 < 0 \iff \sin x < -\frac{1}{2} \iff 7\pi/6 < x < 11\pi/6$. So f is increasing on $(7\pi/6, 11\pi/6)$ and decreasing on $(0, 7\pi/6)$ and $(11\pi/6, 2\pi)$.

F. From part E and the First Derivative Test, we see that the local minimum value is $f(7\pi/6) = -1/\sqrt{3}$ and the local maximum value is $f(11\pi/6) = 1/\sqrt{3}$.

G. If we use the Quotient Rule again and simplify, we get

$$f''(x) = -\frac{2\cos x\,(1 - \sin x)}{(2 + \sin x)^3}$$

Because $(2 + \sin x)^3 > 0$ and $1 - \sin x \geqslant 0$ for all x, we know that $f''(x) > 0$ when $\cos x < 0$, that is, $\pi/2 < x < 3\pi/2$. So f is concave upward on $(\pi/2, 3\pi/2)$ and concave downward on $(0, \pi/2)$ and $(3\pi/2, 2\pi)$. The inflection points are $(\pi/2, 0)$ and $(3\pi/2, 0)$.

H. The graph of the function restricted to $0 \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$ is shown in Figure 8. Then we extend it, using periodicity, to the complete graph in Figure 9.

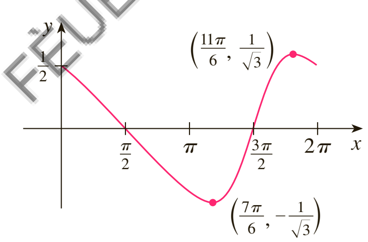


FIGURE 8

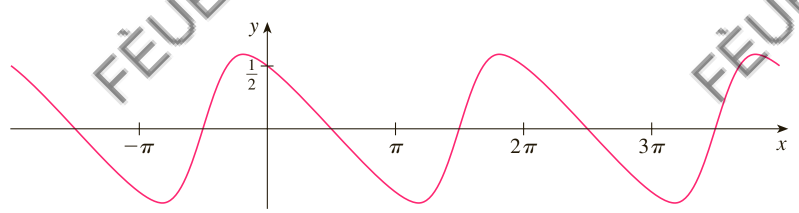


FIGURE 9

Slant Asymptotes

Some curves have asymptotes that are *oblique*, that is, neither horizontal nor vertical. If

$$\lim_{x \to \infty} [f(x) - (mx + b)] = 0$$

where $m \neq 0$, then the line $y = mx + b$ is called a **slant asymptote** because the vertical distance between the curve $y = f(x)$ and the line $y = mx + b$ approaches 0, as in Figure 10. (A similar situation exists if we let $x \to -\infty$.) For rational functions, slant asymptotes occur when the degree of the numerator is one more than the degree of the denominator. In such a case the equation of the slant asymptote can be found by long division as in the following example.

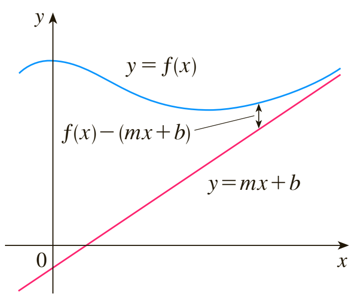


FIGURE 10

EXAMPLE 4 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3}{x^2 + 1}$.

A. The domain is $\mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$.
B. The x- and y-intercepts are both 0.
C. Since $f(-x) = -f(x)$, f is odd and its graph is symmetric about the origin.
D. Since $x^2 + 1$ is never 0, there is no vertical asymptote. Since $f(x) \to \infty$ as $x \to \infty$ and $f(x) \to -\infty$ as $x \to -\infty$, there is no horizontal asymptote. But long division gives

$$f(x) = \frac{x^3}{x^2 + 1} = x - \frac{x}{x^2 + 1}$$

This equation suggests that $y = x$ is a candidate for a slant asymptote. In fact,

$$f(x) - x = -\frac{x}{x^2 + 1} = -\frac{\dfrac{1}{x}}{1 + \dfrac{1}{x^2}} \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad x \to \pm\infty$$

So the line $y = x$ is a slant asymptote.

E.
$$f'(x) = \frac{(x^2 + 1)(3x^2) - x^3 \cdot 2x}{(x^2 + 1)^2} = \frac{x^2(x^2 + 3)}{(x^2 + 1)^2}$$

Since $f'(x) > 0$ for all x (except 0), f is increasing on $(-\infty, \infty)$.
F. Although $f'(0) = 0$, f' does not change sign at 0, so there is no local maximum or minimum.
G.
$$f''(x) = \frac{(x^2 + 1)^2(4x^3 + 6x) - (x^4 + 3x^2) \cdot 2(x^2 + 1)2x}{(x^2 + 1)^4} = \frac{2x(3 - x^2)}{(x^2 + 1)^3}$$

Since $f''(x) = 0$ when $x = 0$ or $x = \pm\sqrt{3}$, we set up the following chart:

Interval	x	$3 - x^2$	$(x^2 + 1)^3$	$f''(x)$	f
$x < -\sqrt{3}$	$-$	$-$	$+$	$+$	CU on $(-\infty, -\sqrt{3})$
$-\sqrt{3} < x < 0$	$-$	$+$	$+$	$-$	CD on $(-\sqrt{3}, 0)$
$0 < x < \sqrt{3}$	$+$	$+$	$+$	$+$	CU on $(0, \sqrt{3})$
$x > \sqrt{3}$	$+$	$-$	$+$	$-$	CD on $(\sqrt{3}, \infty)$

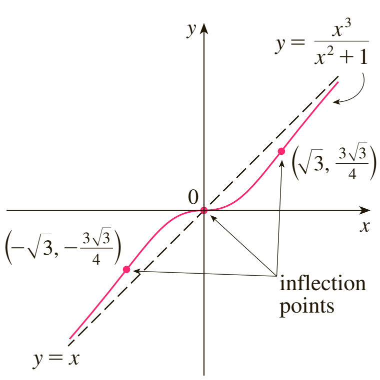


FIGURE 11

The points of inflection are $\left(-\sqrt{3}, -\frac{3}{4}\sqrt{3}\right)$, $(0, 0)$, and $\left(\sqrt{3}, \frac{3}{4}\sqrt{3}\right)$.
H. The graph of f is sketched in Figure 11. ■

3.5 EXERCISES

1–40 Use the guidelines of this section to sketch the curve.

1. $y = x^3 + 3x^2$

2. $y = 2 + 3x^2 - x^3$

3. $y = x^4 - 4x$

4. $y = x^4 - 8x^2 + 8$

5. $y = x(x - 4)^3$

6. $y = x^5 - 5x$

7. $y = \frac{1}{5}x^5 - \frac{8}{3}x^3 + 16x$

8. $y = (4 - x^2)^5$

9. $y = \dfrac{x}{x - 1}$

10. $y = \dfrac{x^2 + 5x}{25 - x^2}$

11. $y = \dfrac{x - x^2}{2 - 3x + x^2}$

12. $y = 1 + \dfrac{1}{x} + \dfrac{1}{x^2}$

13. $y = \dfrac{x}{x^2 - 4}$

14. $y = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 4}$

15. $y = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2 + 3}$

16. $y = \dfrac{(x - 1)^2}{x^2 + 1}$

17. $y = \dfrac{x - 1}{x^2}$

18. $y = \dfrac{x}{x^3 - 1}$

19. $y = \dfrac{x^3}{x^3 + 1}$

20. $y = \dfrac{x^3}{x - 2}$

21. $y = (x - 3)\sqrt{x}$

22. $y = (x - 4)\sqrt[3]{x}$

23. $y = \sqrt{x^2 + x - 2}$

24. $y = \sqrt{x^2 + x} - x$

25. $y = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}$

26. $y = x\sqrt{2 - x^2}$

27. $y = \dfrac{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x}$

28. $y = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$

29. $y = x - 3x^{1/3}$

30. $y = x^{5/3} - 5x^{2/3}$

31. $y = \sqrt[3]{x^2 - 1}$

32. $y = \sqrt[3]{x^3 + 1}$

33. $y = \sin^3 x$

34. $y = x + \cos x$

35. $y = x \tan x, \quad -\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$

36. $y = 2x - \tan x, \quad -\pi/2 < x < \pi/2$

37. $y = \sin x + \sqrt{3} \cos x, \quad -2\pi \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$

38. $y = \csc x - 2 \sin x, \quad 0 < x < \pi$

39. $y = \dfrac{\sin x}{1 + \cos x}$

40. $y = \dfrac{\sin x}{2 + \cos x}$

41. In the theory of relativity, the mass of a particle is

$$m = \frac{m_0}{\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}}$$

where m_0 is the rest mass of the particle, m is the mass when the particle moves with speed v relative to the observer, and c is the speed of light. Sketch the graph of m as a function of v.

42. In the theory of relativity, the energy of a particle is

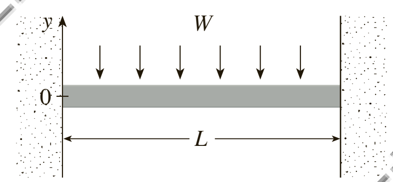
$$E = \sqrt{m_0^2 c^4 + h^2 c^2/\lambda^2}$$

where m_0 is the rest mass of the particle, λ is its wave length, and h is Planck's constant. Sketch the graph of E as a function of λ. What does the graph say about the energy?

43. The figure shows a beam of length L embedded in concrete walls. If a constant load W is distributed evenly along its length, the beam takes the shape of the deflection curve

$$y = -\frac{W}{24EI}x^4 + \frac{WL}{12EI}x^3 - \frac{WL^2}{24EI}x^2$$

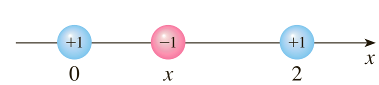
where E and I are positive constants. (E is Young's modulus of elasticity and I is the moment of inertia of a cross-section of the beam.) Sketch the graph of the deflection curve.



44. Coulomb's Law states that the force of attraction between two charged particles is directly proportional to the product of the charges and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them. The figure shows particles with charge 1 located at positions 0 and 2 on a coordinate line and a particle with charge -1 at a position x between them. It follows from Coulomb's Law that the net force acting on the middle particle is

$$F(x) = -\frac{k}{x^2} + \frac{k}{(x - 2)^2} \qquad 0 < x < 2$$

where k is a positive constant. Sketch the graph of the net force function. What does the graph say about the force?



45–48 Find an equation of the slant asymptote. Do not sketch the curve.

45. $y = \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{x + 1}$

46. $y = \dfrac{4x^3 - 10x^2 - 11x + 1}{x^2 - 3x}$

47. $y = \dfrac{2x^3 - 5x^2 + 3x}{x^2 - x - 2}$ **48.** $y = \dfrac{-6x^4 + 2x^3 + 3}{2x^3 - x}$

49–54 Use the guidelines of this section to sketch the curve. In guideline D find an equation of the slant asymptote.

49. $y = \dfrac{x^2}{x - 1}$ **50.** $y = \dfrac{1 + 5x - 2x^2}{x - 2}$

51. $y = \dfrac{x^3 + 4}{x^2}$ **52.** $y = \dfrac{x^3}{(x + 1)^2}$

53. $y = \dfrac{2x^3 + x^2 + 1}{x^2 + 1}$ **54.** $y = \dfrac{(x + 1)^3}{(x - 1)^2}$

55. Show that the curve $y = \sqrt{4x^2 + 9}$ has two slant asymptotes: $y = 2x$ and $y = -2x$. Use this fact to help sketch the curve.

56. Show that the curve $y = \sqrt{x^2 + 4x}$ has two slant asymptotes: $y = x + 2$ and $y = -x - 2$. Use this fact to help sketch the curve.

57. Show that the lines $y = (b/a)x$ and $y = -(b/a)x$ are slant asymptotes of the hyperbola

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

58. Let $f(x) = (x^3 + 1)/x$. Show that

$$\lim_{x \to \pm\infty} [f(x) - x^2] = 0$$

This shows that the graph of f approaches the graph of $y = x^2$, and we say that the curve $y = f(x)$ is *asymptotic* to the parabola $y = x^2$. Use this fact to help sketch the graph of f.

59. Discuss the asymptotic behavior of

$$f(x) = \frac{x^4 + 1}{x}$$

in the same manner as in Exercise 58. Then use your results to help sketch the graph of f.

60. Use the asymptotic behavior of $f(x) = \cos x + 1/x^2$ to sketch its graph without going through the curve-sketching procedure of this section.

3.6 Graphing with Calculus *and* Calculators

You may want to read "Graphing Calculators and Computers" at *www.stewartcalculus.com* if you haven't already. In particular, it explains how to avoid some of the pitfalls of graphing devices by choosing appropriate viewing rectangles.

The method we used to sketch curves in the preceding section was a culmination of much of our study of differential calculus. The graph was the final object that we produced. In this section our point of view is completely different. Here we *start* with a graph produced by a graphing calculator or computer and then we refine it. We use calculus to make sure that we reveal all the important aspects of the curve. And with the use of graphing devices we can tackle curves that would be far too complicated to consider without technology. The theme is the *interaction* between calculus and calculators.

EXAMPLE 1 Graph the polynomial $f(x) = 2x^6 + 3x^5 + 3x^3 - 2x^2$. Use the graphs of f' and f'' to estimate all maximum and minimum points and intervals of concavity.

SOLUTION If we specify a domain but not a range, many graphing devices will deduce a suitable range from the values computed. Figure 1 shows the plot from one such device if we specify that $-5 \leqslant x \leqslant 5$. Although this viewing rectangle is useful for showing that the asymptotic behavior (or end behavior) is the same as for $y = 2x^6$, it is obviously hiding some finer detail. So we change to the viewing rectangle $[-3, 2]$ by $[-50, 100]$ shown in Figure 2.

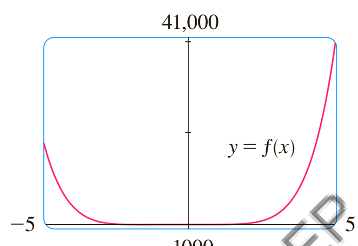


FIGURE 1

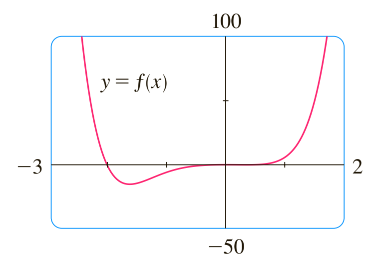


FIGURE 2

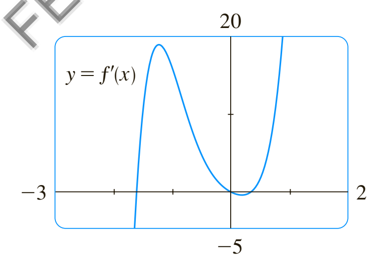


FIGURE 3

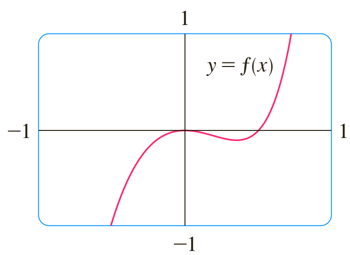


FIGURE 4

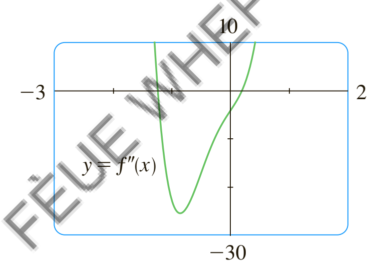


FIGURE 5

From Figure 2 it appears that there is an absolute minimum value of about -15.33 when $x \approx -1.62$ (by using the cursor) and f is decreasing on $(-\infty, -1.62)$ and increasing on $(-1.62, \infty)$. Also there appears to be a horizontal tangent at the origin and inflection points when $x = 0$ and when x is somewhere between -2 and -1.

Now let's try to confirm these impressions using calculus. We differentiate and get

$$f'(x) = 12x^5 + 15x^4 + 9x^2 - 4x$$

$$f''(x) = 60x^4 + 60x^3 + 18x - 4$$

When we graph f' in Figure 3 we see that $f'(x)$ changes from negative to positive when $x \approx -1.62$; this confirms (by the First Derivative Test) the minimum value that we found earlier. But, perhaps to our surprise, we also notice that $f'(x)$ changes from positive to negative when $x = 0$ and from negative to positive when $x \approx 0.35$. This means that f has a local maximum at 0 and a local minimum when $x \approx 0.35$, but these were hidden in Figure 2. Indeed, if we now zoom in toward the origin in Figure 4, we see what we missed before: a local maximum value of 0 when $x = 0$ and a local minimum value of about -0.1 when $x \approx 0.35$.

What about concavity and inflection points? From Figures 2 and 4 there appear to be inflection points when x is a little to the left of -1 and when x is a little to the right of 0. But it's difficult to determine inflection points from the graph of f, so we graph the second derivative f'' in Figure 5. We see that f'' changes from positive to negative when $x \approx -1.23$ and from negative to positive when $x \approx 0.19$. So, correct to two decimal places, f is concave upward on $(-\infty, -1.23)$ and $(0.19, \infty)$ and concave downward on $(-1.23, 0.19)$. The inflection points are $(-1.23, -10.18)$ and $(0.19, -0.05)$.

We have discovered that no single graph reveals all the important features of this polynomial. But Figures 2 and 4, when taken together, do provide an accurate picture. ■

EXAMPLE 2 Draw the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 + 7x + 3}{x^2}$$

in a viewing rectangle that contains all the important features of the function. Estimate the maximum and minimum values and the intervals of concavity. Then use calculus to find these quantities exactly.

SOLUTION Figure 6, produced by a computer with automatic scaling, is a disaster. Some graphing calculators use $[-10, 10]$ by $[-10, 10]$ as the default viewing rectangle, so let's try it. We get the graph shown in Figure 7; it's a major improvement.

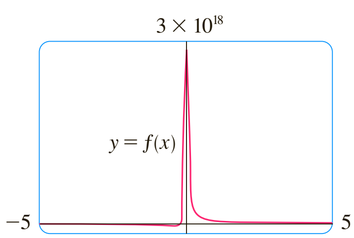


FIGURE 6

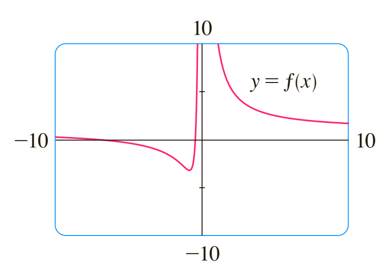


FIGURE 7

The y-axis appears to be a vertical asymptote and indeed it is because

$$\lim_{x \to 0} \frac{x^2 + 7x + 3}{x^2} = \infty$$

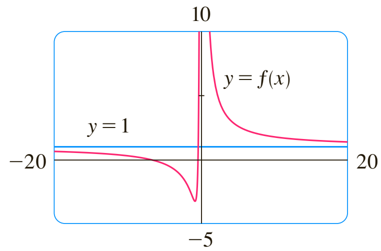


FIGURE 8

Figure 7 also allows us to estimate the x-intercepts: about -0.5 and -6.5. The exact values are obtained by using the quadratic formula to solve the equation $x^2 + 7x + 3 = 0$; we get $x = \left(-7 \pm \sqrt{37}\right)/2$.

To get a better look at horizontal asymptotes, we change to the viewing rectangle $[-20, 20]$ by $[-5, 10]$ in Figure 8. It appears that $y = 1$ is the horizontal asymptote and this is easily confirmed:

$$\lim_{x \to \pm\infty} \frac{x^2 + 7x + 3}{x^2} = \lim_{x \to \pm\infty} \left(1 + \frac{7}{x} + \frac{3}{x^2}\right) = 1$$

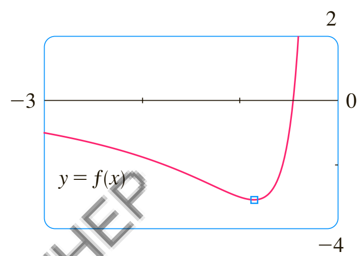


FIGURE 9

To estimate the minimum value we zoom in to the viewing rectangle $[-3, 0]$ by $[-4, 2]$ in Figure 9. The cursor indicates that the absolute minimum value is about -3.1 when $x \approx -0.9$, and we see that the function decreases on $(-\infty, -0.9)$ and $(0, \infty)$ and increases on $(-0.9, 0)$. The exact values are obtained by differentiating:

$$f'(x) = -\frac{7}{x^2} - \frac{6}{x^3} = -\frac{7x + 6}{x^3}$$

This shows that $f'(x) > 0$ when $-\frac{6}{7} < x < 0$ and $f'(x) < 0$ when $x < -\frac{6}{7}$ and when $x > 0$. The exact minimum value is $f\left(-\frac{6}{7}\right) = -\frac{37}{12} \approx -3.08$.

Figure 9 also shows that an inflection point occurs somewhere between $x = -1$ and $x = -2$. We could estimate it much more accurately using the graph of the second derivative, but in this case it's just as easy to find exact values. Since

$$f''(x) = \frac{14}{x^3} + \frac{18}{x^4} = \frac{2(7x + 9)}{x^4}$$

we see that $f''(x) > 0$ when $x > -\frac{9}{7}$ $(x \neq 0)$. So f is concave upward on $\left(-\frac{9}{7}, 0\right)$ and $(0, \infty)$ and concave downward on $\left(-\infty, -\frac{9}{7}\right)$. The inflection point is $\left(-\frac{9}{7}, -\frac{71}{27}\right)$.

The analysis using the first two derivatives shows that Figure 8 displays all the major aspects of the curve. ■

EXAMPLE 3 Graph the function $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2(x + 1)^3}{(x - 2)^2(x - 4)^4}$.

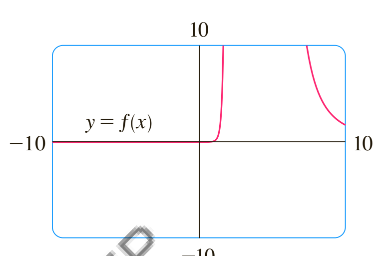


FIGURE 10

SOLUTION Drawing on our experience with a rational function in Example 2, let's start by graphing f in the viewing rectangle $[-10, 10]$ by $[-10, 10]$. From Figure 10 we have the feeling that we are going to have to zoom in to see some finer detail and also zoom out to see the larger picture. But, as a guide to intelligent zooming, let's first take a close look at the expression for $f(x)$. Because of the factors $(x - 2)^2$ and $(x - 4)^4$ in the denominator, we expect $x = 2$ and $x = 4$ to be the vertical asymptotes. Indeed

$$\lim_{x \to 2} \frac{x^2(x + 1)^3}{(x - 2)^2(x - 4)^4} = \infty \qquad \text{and} \qquad \lim_{x \to 4} \frac{x^2(x + 1)^3}{(x - 2)^2(x - 4)^4} = \infty$$

To find the horizontal asymptotes, we divide numerator and denominator by x^6:

$$\frac{x^2(x+1)^3}{(x-2)^2(x-4)^4} = \frac{\dfrac{x^2}{x^3}\cdot\dfrac{(x+1)^3}{x^3}}{\dfrac{(x-2)^2}{x^2}\cdot\dfrac{(x-4)^4}{x^4}} = \frac{\dfrac{1}{x}\left(1+\dfrac{1}{x}\right)^3}{\left(1-\dfrac{2}{x}\right)^2\left(1-\dfrac{4}{x}\right)^4}$$

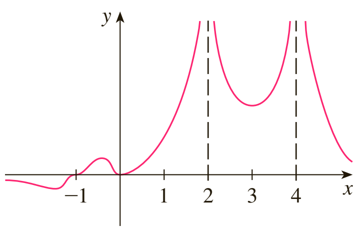


FIGURE 11

This shows that $f(x) \to 0$ as $x \to \pm\infty$, so the x-axis is a horizontal asymptote.

It is also very useful to consider the behavior of the graph near the x-intercepts using an analysis like that in Example 3.4.11. Since x^2 is positive, $f(x)$ does not change sign at 0 and so its graph doesn't cross the x-axis at 0. But, because of the factor $(x+1)^3$, the graph does cross the x-axis at -1 and has a horizontal tangent there. Putting all this information together, but without using derivatives, we see that the curve has to look something like the one in Figure 11.

Now that we know what to look for, we zoom in (several times) to produce the graphs in Figures 12 and 13 and zoom out (several times) to get Figure 14.

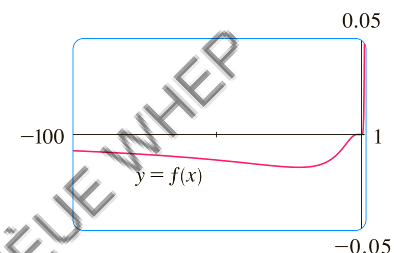


FIGURE 12

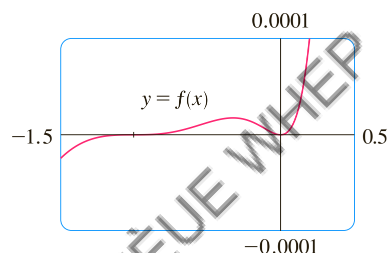


FIGURE 13

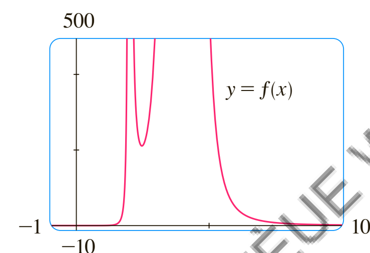


FIGURE 14

We can read from these graphs that the absolute minimum is about -0.02 and occurs when $x \approx -20$. There is also a local maximum ≈ 0.00002 when $x \approx -0.3$ and a local minimum ≈ 211 when $x \approx 2.5$. These graphs also show three inflection points near -35, -5, and -1 and two between -1 and 0. To estimate the inflection points closely we would need to graph f'', but to compute f'' by hand is an unreasonable chore. If you have a computer algebra system, then it's easy to do (see Exercise 13).

We have seen that, for this particular function, *three* graphs (Figures 12, 13, and 14) are necessary to convey all the useful information. The only way to display all these features of the function on a single graph is to draw it by hand. Despite the exaggerations and distortions, Figure 11 does manage to summarize the essential nature of the function. ■

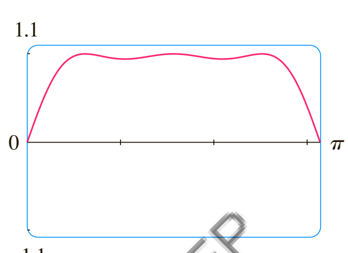


FIGURE 15

EXAMPLE 4 Graph the function $f(x) = \sin(x + \sin 2x)$. For $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$, estimate all maximum and minimum values, intervals of increase and decrease, and inflection points.

SOLUTION We first note that f is periodic with period 2π. Also, f is odd and $|f(x)| \leqslant 1$ for all x. So the choice of a viewing rectangle is not a problem for this function: We start with $[0, \pi]$ by $[-1.1, 1.1]$. (See Figure 15.) It appears that there are three local maximum values and two local minimum values in that window. To confirm

The family of functions

$$f(x) = \sin(x + \sin cx)$$

where c is a constant, occurs in applications to frequency modulation (FM) synthesis. A sine wave is modulated by a wave with a different frequency $(\sin cx)$. The case where $c = 2$ is studied in Example 4. Exercise 19 explores another special case.

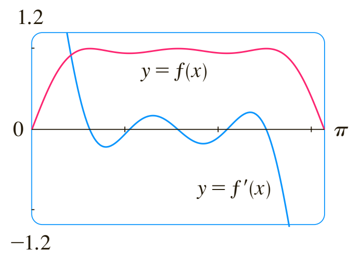


FIGURE 16

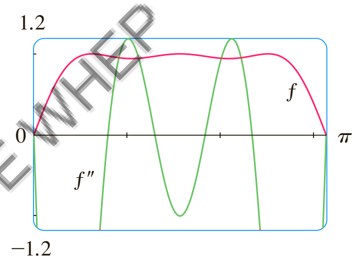


FIGURE 17

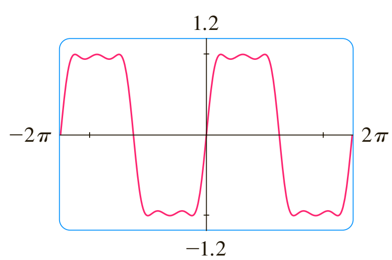


FIGURE 18

this and locate them more accurately, we calculate that

$$f'(x) = \cos(x + \sin 2x) \cdot (1 + 2\cos 2x)$$

and graph both f and f' in Figure 16.

Using zoom-in and the First Derivative Test, we find the following approximate values:

Intervals of increase: $(0, 0.6),\ (1.0, 1.6),\ (2.1, 2.5)$

Intervals of decrease: $(0.6, 1.0),\ (1.6, 2.1),\ (2.5, \pi)$

Local maximum values: $f(0.6) \approx 1,\ f(1.6) \approx 1,\ f(2.5) \approx 1$

Local minimum values: $f(1.0) \approx 0.94,\ f(2.1) \approx 0.94$

The second derivative is

$$f''(x) = -(1 + 2\cos 2x)^2 \sin(x + \sin 2x) - 4\sin 2x\cos(x + \sin 2x)$$

Graphing both f and f'' in Figure 17, we obtain the following approximate values:

Concave upward on: $(0.8, 1.3),\ (1.8, 2.3)$

Concave downward on: $(0, 0.8),\ (1.3, 1.8),\ (2.3, \pi)$

Inflection points: $(0, 0),\ (0.8, 0.97),\ (1.3, 0.97),\ (1.8, 0.97),\ (2.3, 0.97)$

Having checked that Figure 15 does indeed represent f accurately for $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$, we can state that the extended graph in Figure 18 represents f accurately for $-2\pi \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$. ■

Our final example is concerned with *families* of functions. This means that the functions in the family are related to each other by a formula that contains one or more arbitrary constants. Each value of the constant gives rise to a member of the family and the idea is to see how the graph of the function changes as the constant changes.

EXAMPLE 5 How does the graph of $f(x) = 1/(x^2 + 2x + c)$ vary as c varies?

SOLUTION The graphs in Figures 19 and 20 (the special cases $c = 2$ and $c = -2$) show two very different-looking curves.

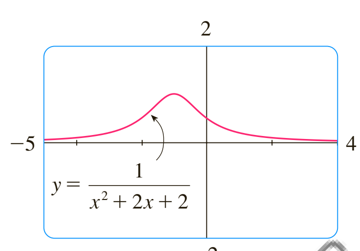


FIGURE 19
$c = 2$

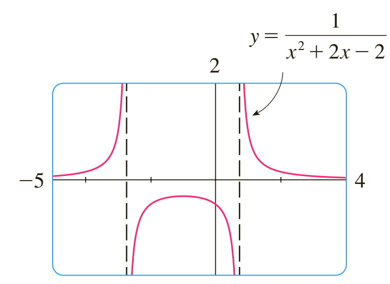


FIGURE 20
$c = -2$

Before drawing any more graphs, let's see what members of this family have in common. Since

$$\lim_{x \to \pm\infty} \frac{1}{x^2 + 2x + c} = 0$$

for any value of c, they all have the x-axis as a horizontal asymptote. A vertical asymptote will occur when $x^2 + 2x + c = 0$. Solving this quadratic equation, we get $x = -1 \pm \sqrt{1 - c}$. When $c > 1$, there is no vertical asymptote (as in Figure 19). When $c = 1$, the graph has a single vertical asymptote $x = -1$ because

$$\lim_{x \to -1} \frac{1}{x^2 + 2x + 1} = \lim_{x \to -1} \frac{1}{(x + 1)^2} = \infty$$

When $c < 1$, there are two vertical asymptotes: $x = -1 \pm \sqrt{1 - c}$ (as in Figure 20).

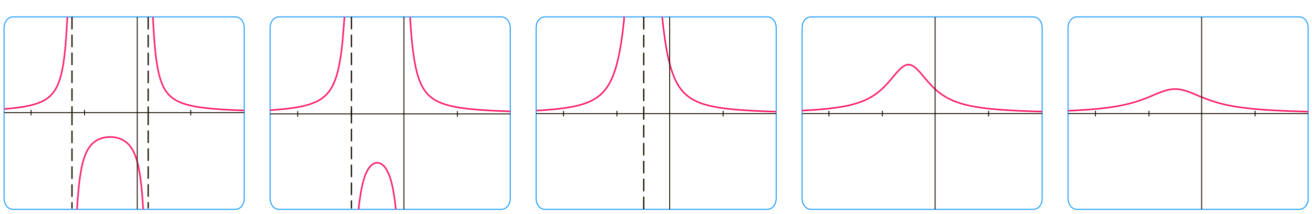
Now we compute the derivative:

$$f'(x) = -\frac{2x + 2}{(x^2 + 2x + c)^2}$$

This shows that $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = -1$ (if $c \neq 1$), $f'(x) > 0$ when $x < -1$, and $f'(x) < 0$ when $x > -1$. For $c \geqslant 1$, this means that f increases on $(-\infty, -1)$ and decreases on $(-1, \infty)$. For $c > 1$, there is an absolute maximum value $f(-1) = 1/(c - 1)$. For $c < 1$, $f(-1) = 1/(c - 1)$ is a local maximum value and the intervals of increase and decrease are interrupted at the vertical asymptotes.

Figure 21 is a "slide show" displaying five members of the family, all graphed in the viewing rectangle $[-5, 4]$ by $[-2, 2]$. As predicted, a transition takes place from two vertical asymptotes to one at $c = 1$, and then to none for $c > 1$. As c increases from 1, we see that the maximum point becomes lower; this is explained by the fact that $1/(c - 1) \to 0$ as $c \to \infty$. As c decreases from 1, the vertical asymptotes become more widely separated because the distance between them is $2\sqrt{1 - c}$, which becomes large as $c \to -\infty$. Again, the maximum point approaches the x-axis because $1/(c - 1) \to 0$ as $c \to -\infty$.

TEC See an animation of Figure 21 in Visual 3.6.



$c = -1$ $\quad$ $c = 0$ $\quad$ $c = 1$ $\quad$ $c = 2$ $\quad$ $c = 3$

FIGURE 21
The family of functions $f(x) = 1/(x^2 + 2x + c)$

There is clearly no inflection point when $c \leqslant 1$. For $c > 1$ we calculate that

$$f''(x) = \frac{2(3x^2 + 6x + 4 - c)}{(x^2 + 2x + c)^3}$$

and deduce that inflection points occur when $x = -1 \pm \sqrt{3(c - 1)}/3$. So the inflection points become more spread out as c increases and this seems plausible from the last two parts of Figure 21. ■

3.6 EXERCISES

1–8 Produce graphs of f that reveal all the important aspects of the curve. In particular, you should use graphs of f' and f'' to estimate the intervals of increase and decrease, extreme values, intervals of concavity, and inflection points.

1. $f(x) = x^5 - 5x^4 - x^3 + 28x^2 - 2x$

2. $f(x) = -2x^6 + 5x^5 + 140x^3 - 110x^2$

3. $f(x) = x^6 - 5x^5 + 25x^3 - 6x^2 - 48x$

4. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4 - x^3 - 8}{x^2 - x - 6}$

5. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^3 + x^2 + 1}$

6. $f(x) = 6\sin x - x^2, \quad -5 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$

7. $f(x) = 6\sin x + \cot x, \quad -\pi \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$

8. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{x}, \quad -2\pi \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$

9–10 Produce graphs of f that reveal all the important aspects of the curve. Estimate the intervals of increase and decrease and intervals of concavity, and use calculus to find these intervals exactly.

9. $f(x) = 1 + \dfrac{1}{x} + \dfrac{8}{x^2} + \dfrac{1}{x^3}$

10. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^8} - \dfrac{2 \times 10^8}{x^4}$

11–12 Sketch the graph by hand using asymptotes and intercepts, but not derivatives. Then use your sketch as a guide to producing graphs (with a graphing device) that display the major features of the curve. Use these graphs to estimate the maximum and minimum values.

11. $f(x) = \dfrac{(x+4)(x-3)^2}{x^4(x-1)}$

12. $f(x) = \dfrac{(2x+3)^2(x-2)^5}{x^3(x-5)^2}$

CAS **13.** If f is the function considered in Example 3, use a computer algebra system to calculate f' and then graph it to confirm that all the maximum and minimum values are as given in the example. Calculate f'' and use it to estimate the intervals of concavity and inflection points.

CAS **14.** If f is the function of Exercise 12, find f' and f'' and use their graphs to estimate the intervals of increase and decrease and concavity of f.

CAS **15–18** Use a computer algebra system to graph f and to find f' and f''. Use graphs of these derivatives to estimate the intervals of increase and decrease, extreme values, intervals of concavity, and inflection points of f.

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^3 + 5x^2 + 1}{x^4 + x^3 - x^2 + 2}$

16. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^{2/3}}{1 + x + x^4}$

17. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 5\sin x}, \quad x \leqslant 20$

18. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x - 1}{\sqrt[4]{x^4 + x + 1}}$

19. In Example 4 we considered a member of the family of functions $f(x) = \sin(x + \sin cx)$ that occur in FM synthesis. Here we investigate the function with $c = 3$. Start by graphing f in the viewing rectangle $[0, \pi]$ by $[-1.2, 1.2]$. How many local maximum points do you see? The graph has more than are visible to the naked eye. To discover the hidden maximum and minimum points you will need to examine the graph of f' very carefully. In fact, it helps to look at the graph of f'' at the same time. Find all the maximum and minimum values and inflection points. Then graph f in the viewing rectangle $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$ by $[-1.2, 1.2]$ and comment on symmetry.

20–25 Describe how the graph of f varies as c varies. Graph several members of the family to illustrate the trends that you discover. In particular, you should investigate how maximum and minimum points and inflection points move when c changes. You should also identify any transitional values of c at which the basic shape of the curve changes.

20. $f(x) = x^3 + cx$

21. $f(x) = x^2 + 6x + c/x$ (Trident of Newton)

22. $f(x) = x\sqrt{c^2 - x^2}$

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{cx}{1 + c^2x^2}$

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{c + \cos x}$

25. $f(x) = cx + \sin x$

26. Investigate the family of curves given by the equation $f(x) = x^4 + cx^2 + x$. Start by determining the transitional value of c at which the number of inflection points changes. Then graph several members of the family to see what shapes are possible. There is another transitional value of c at which the number of critical numbers changes. Try to discover it graphically. Then prove what you have discovered.

27. (a) Investigate the family of polynomials given by the equation $f(x) = cx^4 - 2x^2 + 1$. For what values of c does the curve have minimum points?
(b) Show that the minimum and maximum points of every curve in the family lie on the parabola $y = 1 - x^2$. Illustrate by graphing this parabola and several members of the family.

28. (a) Investigate the family of polynomials given by the equation $f(x) = 2x^3 + cx^2 + 2x$. For what values of c does the curve have maximum and minimum points?
(b) Show that the minimum and maximum points of every curve in the family lie on the curve $y = x - x^3$. Illustrate by graphing this curve and several members of the family.

3.7 Optimization Problems

The methods we have learned in this chapter for finding extreme values have practical applications in many areas of life. A businessperson wants to minimize costs and maximize profits. A traveler wants to minimize transportation time. Fermat's Principle in optics states that light follows the path that takes the least time. In this section we solve such problems as maximizing areas, volumes, and profits and minimizing distances, times, and costs.

In solving such practical problems the greatest challenge is often to convert the word problem into a mathematical optimization problem by setting up the function that is to be maximized or minimized. Let's recall the problem-solving principles discussed on page 98 and adapt them to this situation:

PS

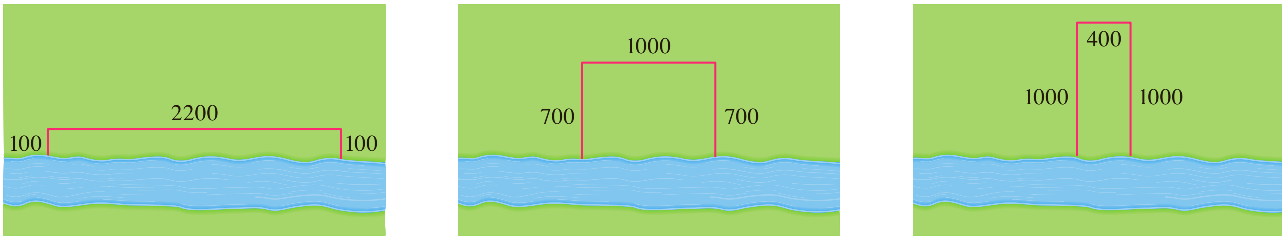
Steps In Solving Optimization Problems

1. **Understand the Problem** The first step is to read the problem carefully until it is clearly understood. Ask yourself: What is the unknown? What are the given quantities? What are the given conditions?
2. **Draw a Diagram** In most problems it is useful to draw a diagram and identify the given and required quantities on the diagram.
3. **Introduce Notation** Assign a symbol to the quantity that is to be maximized or minimized (let's call it Q for now). Also select symbols ($a, b, c, \ldots, x, y$) for other unknown quantities and label the diagram with these symbols. It may help to use initials as suggestive symbols—for example, A for area, h for height, t for time.
4. Express Q in terms of some of the other symbols from Step 3.
5. If Q has been expressed as a function of more than one variable in Step 4, use the given information to find relationships (in the form of equations) among these variables. Then use these equations to eliminate all but one of the variables in the expression for Q. Thus Q will be expressed as a function of *one* variable x, say, $Q = f(x)$. Write the domain of this function in the given context.
6. Use the methods of Sections 3.1 and 3.3 to find the *absolute* maximum or minimum value of f. In particular, if the domain of f is a closed interval, then the Closed Interval Method in Section 3.1 can be used.

EXAMPLE 1 A farmer has 2400 ft of fencing and wants to fence off a rectangular field that borders a straight river. He needs no fence along the river. What are the dimensions of the field that has the largest area?

PS Understand the problem
PS Analogy: Try special cases
PS Draw diagrams

SOLUTION In order to get a feeling for what is happening in this problem, let's experiment with some specific cases. Figure 1 (not to scale) shows three possible ways of laying out the 2400 ft of fencing.



Area $= 100 \cdot 2200 = 220{,}000$ ft^2 Area $= 700 \cdot 1000 = 700{,}000$ ft^2 Area $= 1000 \cdot 400 = 400{,}000$ ft^2

FIGURE 1

We see that when we try shallow, wide fields or deep, narrow fields, we get relatively small areas. It seems plausible that there is some intermediate configuration that produces the largest area.

PS Introduce notation

Figure 2 illustrates the general case. We wish to maximize the area A of the rectangle. Let x and y be the depth and width of the rectangle (in feet). Then we express A in terms of x and y:

$$A = xy$$

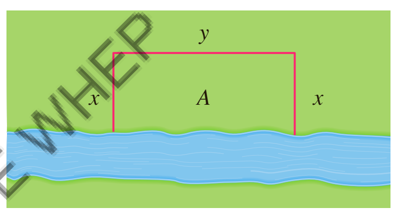


FIGURE 2

We want to express A as a function of just one variable, so we eliminate y by expressing it in terms of x. To do this we use the given information that the total length of the fencing is 2400 ft. Thus

$$2x + y = 2400$$

From this equation we have $y = 2400 - 2x$, which gives

$$A = xy = x(2400 - 2x) = 2400x - 2x^2$$

Note that the largest x can be is 1200 (this uses all the fence for the depth and none for the width) and x can't be negative, so the function that we wish to maximize is

$$A(x) = 2400x - 2x^2 \qquad 0 \leqslant x \leqslant 1200$$

The derivative is $A'(x) = 2400 - 4x$, so to find the critical numbers we solve the equation

$$2400 - 4x = 0$$

which gives $x = 600$. The maximum value of A must occur either at this critical number or at an endpoint of the interval. Since $A(0) = 0$, $A(600) = 720{,}000$, and $A(1200) = 0$, the Closed Interval Method gives the maximum value as $A(600) = 720{,}000$.

[Alternatively, we could have observed that $A''(x) = -4 < 0$ for all x, so A is always concave downward and the local maximum at $x = 600$ must be an absolute maximum.]

The corresponding y-value is $y = 2400 - 2(600) = 1200$, so the rectangular field should be 600 ft deep and 1200 ft wide. ■

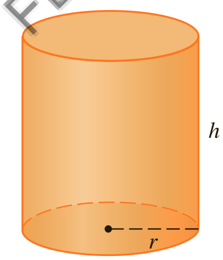


FIGURE 3

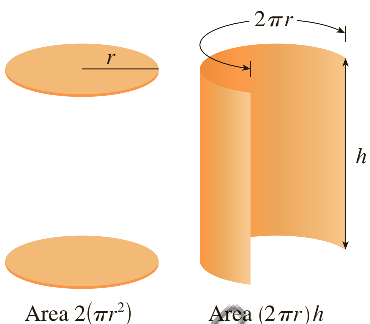


FIGURE 4

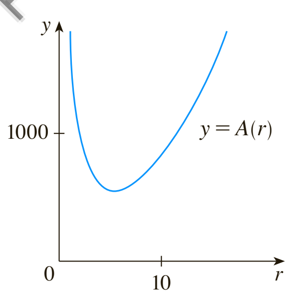


FIGURE 5

In the Applied Project on page 270 we investigate the most economical shape for a can by taking into account other manufacturing costs.

EXAMPLE 2 A cylindrical can is to be made to hold 1 L of oil. Find the dimensions that will minimize the cost of the metal to manufacture the can.

SOLUTION Draw the diagram as in Figure 3, where r is the radius and h the height (both in centimeters). In order to minimize the cost of the metal, we minimize the total surface area of the cylinder (top, bottom, and sides). From Figure 4 we see that the sides are made from a rectangular sheet with dimensions $2\pi r$ and h. So the surface area is

$$A = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$$

We would like to express A in terms of one variable, r. To eliminate h we use the fact that the volume is given as 1 L, which is equivalent to 1000 cm³. Thus

$$\pi r^2 h = 1000$$

which gives $h = 1000/(\pi r^2)$. Substitution of this into the expression for A gives

$$A = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi r\left(\frac{1000}{\pi r^2}\right) = 2\pi r^2 + \frac{2000}{r}$$

We know r must be positive, and there are no limitations on how large r can be. Therefore the function that we want to minimize is

$$A(r) = 2\pi r^2 + \frac{2000}{r} \qquad r > 0$$

To find the critical numbers, we differentiate:

$$A'(r) = 4\pi r - \frac{2000}{r^2} = \frac{4(\pi r^3 - 500)}{r^2}$$

Then $A'(r) = 0$ when $\pi r^3 = 500$, so the only critical number is $r = \sqrt[3]{500/\pi}$.

Since the domain of A is $(0, \infty)$, we can't use the argument of Example 1 concerning endpoints. But we can observe that $A'(r) < 0$ for $r < \sqrt[3]{500/\pi}$ and $A'(r) > 0$ for $r > \sqrt[3]{500/\pi}$, so A is decreasing for *all* r to the left of the critical number and increasing for *all* r to the right. Thus $r = \sqrt[3]{500/\pi}$ must give rise to an *absolute* minimum.

[Alternatively, we could argue that $A(r) \to \infty$ as $r \to 0^+$ and $A(r) \to \infty$ as $r \to \infty$, so there must be a minimum value of $A(r)$, which must occur at the critical number. See Figure 5.]

The value of h corresponding to $r = \sqrt[3]{500/\pi}$ is

$$h = \frac{1000}{\pi r^2} = \frac{1000}{\pi(500/\pi)^{2/3}} = 2\sqrt[3]{\frac{500}{\pi}} = 2r$$

Thus, to minimize the cost of the can, the radius should be $\sqrt[3]{500/\pi}$ cm and the height should be equal to twice the radius, namely, the diameter. ■

NOTE 1 The argument used in Example 2 to justify the absolute minimum is a variant of the First Derivative Test (which applies only to *local* maximum or minimum values) and is stated here for future reference.

> **First Derivative Test for Absolute Extreme Values** Suppose that c is a critical number of a continuous function f defined on an interval.
>
> (a) If $f'(x) > 0$ for all $x < c$ and $f'(x) < 0$ for all $x > c$, then $f(c)$ is the absolute maximum value of f.
>
> (b) If $f'(x) < 0$ for all $x < c$ and $f'(x) > 0$ for all $x > c$, then $f(c)$ is the absolute minimum value of f.

TEC Module 3.7 takes you through six additional optimization problems, including animations of the physical situations.

NOTE 2 An alternative method for solving optimization problems is to use implicit differentiation. Let's look at Example 2 again to illustrate the method. We work with the same equations

$$A = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh \qquad \pi r^2 h = 1000$$

but instead of eliminating h, we differentiate both equations implicitly with respect to r:

$$A' = 4\pi r + 2\pi rh' + 2\pi h \qquad \pi r^2 h' + 2\pi rh = 0$$

The minimum occurs at a critical number, so we set $A' = 0$, simplify, and arrive at the equations

$$2r + rh' + h = 0 \qquad rh' + 2h = 0$$

Subtraction of these equations gives $2r - h = 0$, or $h = 2r$.

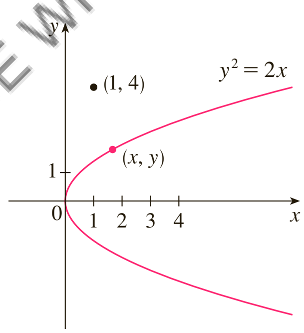


FIGURE 6

EXAMPLE 3 Find the point on the parabola $y^2 = 2x$ that is closest to the point $(1, 4)$.

SOLUTION The distance between the point $(1, 4)$ and the point (x, y) is

$$d = \sqrt{(x - 1)^2 + (y - 4)^2}$$

(See Figure 6.) But if (x, y) lies on the parabola, then $x = \frac{1}{2}y^2$, so the expression for d becomes

$$d = \sqrt{\left(\tfrac{1}{2}y^2 - 1\right)^2 + (y - 4)^2}$$

(Alternatively, we could have substituted $y = \sqrt{2x}$ to get d in terms of x alone.) Instead of minimizing d, we minimize its square:

$$d^2 = f(y) = \left(\tfrac{1}{2}y^2 - 1\right)^2 + (y - 4)^2$$

(You should convince yourself that the minimum of d occurs at the same point as the minimum of d^2, but d^2 is easier to work with.) Note that there are no restrictions on y, so the domain is all real numbers. Differentiating, we obtain

$$f'(y) = 2\left(\tfrac{1}{2}y^2 - 1\right)y + 2(y - 4) = y^3 - 8$$

so $f'(y) = 0$ when $y = 2$. Observe that $f'(y) < 0$ when $y < 2$ and $f'(y) > 0$ when $y > 2$, so by the First Derivative Test for Absolute Extreme Values, the absolute minimum occurs when $y = 2$. (Or we could simply say that because of the geometric nature of the problem, it's obvious that there is a closest point but not a farthest point.) The corresponding value of x is $x = \frac{1}{2}y^2 = 2$. Thus the point on $y^2 = 2x$ closest to $(1, 4)$ is $(2, 2)$. [The distance between the points is $d = \sqrt{f(2)} = \sqrt{5}$.] ■

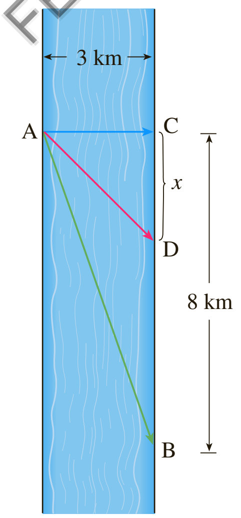


FIGURE 7

EXAMPLE 4 A man launches his boat from point A on a bank of a straight river, 3 km wide, and wants to reach point B, 8 km downstream on the opposite bank, as quickly as possible (see Figure 7). He could row his boat directly across the river to point C and then run to B, or he could row directly to B, or he could row to some point D between C and B and then run to B. If he can row 6 km/h and run 8 km/h, where should he land to reach B as soon as possible? (We assume that the speed of the water is negligible compared with the speed at which the man rows.)

SOLUTION If we let x be the distance from C to D, then the running distance is $|DB| = 8 - x$ and the Pythagorean Theorem gives the rowing distance as $|AD| = \sqrt{x^2 + 9}$. We use the equation

$$\text{time} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{rate}}$$

Then the rowing time is $\sqrt{x^2 + 9}/6$ and the running time is $(8 - x)/8$, so the total time T as a function of x is

$$T(x) = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + 9}}{6} + \frac{8 - x}{8}$$

The domain of this function T is $[0, 8]$. Notice that if $x = 0$, he rows to C and if $x = 8$, he rows directly to B. The derivative of T is

$$T'(x) = \frac{x}{6\sqrt{x^2 + 9}} - \frac{1}{8}$$

Thus, using the fact that $x \geqslant 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T'(x) = 0 \quad &\iff \quad \frac{x}{6\sqrt{x^2 + 9}} = \frac{1}{8} \quad \iff \quad 4x = 3\sqrt{x^2 + 9} \\ &\iff \quad 16x^2 = 9(x^2 + 9) \quad \iff \quad 7x^2 = 81 \\ &\iff \quad x = \frac{9}{\sqrt{7}} \end{aligned}$$

The only critical number is $x = 9/\sqrt{7}$. To see whether the minimum occurs at this critical number or at an endpoint of the domain $[0, 8]$, we follow the Closed Interval Method by evaluating T at all three points:

$$T(0) = 1.5 \qquad T\left(\frac{9}{\sqrt{7}}\right) = 1 + \frac{\sqrt{7}}{8} \approx 1.33 \qquad T(8) = \frac{\sqrt{73}}{6} \approx 1.42$$

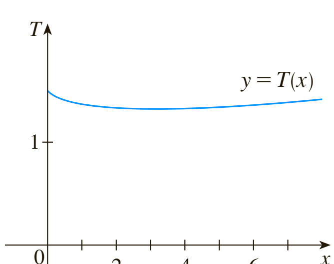


FIGURE 8

Since the smallest of these values of T occurs when $x = 9/\sqrt{7}$, the absolute minimum value of T must occur there. Figure 8 illustrates this calculation by showing the graph of T.

Thus the man should land the boat at a point $9/\sqrt{7}$ km ($\approx$3.4 km) downstream from his starting point. ■

EXAMPLE 5 Find the area of the largest rectangle that can be inscribed in a semicircle of radius r.

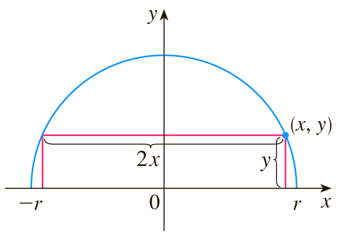


FIGURE 9

SOLUTION 1 Let's take the semicircle to be the upper half of the circle $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ with center the origin. Then the word *inscribed* means that the rectangle has two vertices on the semicircle and two vertices on the x-axis as shown in Figure 9.

Let (x, y) be the vertex that lies in the first quadrant. Then the rectangle has sides of lengths $2x$ and y, so its area is

$$A = 2xy$$

To eliminate y we use the fact that (x, y) lies on the circle $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ and so $y = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2}$. Thus

$$A = 2x\sqrt{r^2 - x^2}$$

The domain of this function is $0 \leqslant x \leqslant r$. Its derivative is

$$A' = 2\sqrt{r^2 - x^2} - \frac{2x^2}{\sqrt{r^2 - x^2}} = \frac{2(r^2 - 2x^2)}{\sqrt{r^2 - x^2}}$$

which is 0 when $2x^2 = r^2$, that is, $x = r/\sqrt{2}$ (since $x \geqslant 0$). This value of x gives a maximum value of A since $A(0) = 0$ and $A(r) = 0$. Therefore the area of the largest inscribed rectangle is

$$A\left(\frac{r}{\sqrt{2}}\right) = 2\,\frac{r}{\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{r^2 - \frac{r^2}{2}} = r^2$$

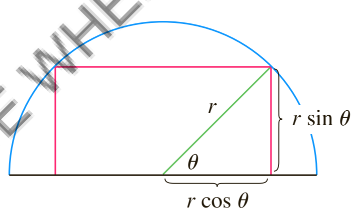


FIGURE 10

SOLUTION 2 A simpler solution is possible if we think of using an angle as a variable. Let θ be the angle shown in Figure 10. Then the area of the rectangle is

$$A(\theta) = (2r\cos\theta)(r\sin\theta) = r^2(2\sin\theta\cos\theta) = r^2\sin 2\theta$$

We know that $\sin 2\theta$ has a maximum value of 1 and it occurs when $2\theta = \pi/2$. So $A(\theta)$ has a maximum value of r^2 and it occurs when $\theta = \pi/4$.

Notice that this trigonometric solution doesn't involve differentiation. In fact, we didn't need to use calculus at all. ■

Applications to Business and Economics

In Section 2.7 we introduced the idea of marginal cost. Recall that if $C(x)$, the **cost function**, is the cost of producing x units of a certain product, then the **marginal cost** is the rate of change of C with respect to x. In other words, the marginal cost function is the derivative, $C'(x)$, of the cost function.

Now let's consider marketing. Let $p(x)$ be the price per unit that the company can charge if it sells x units. Then p is called the **demand function** (or **price function**) and we would expect it to be a decreasing function of x. (More units sold corresponds to a lower price.) If x units are sold and the price per unit is $p(x)$, then the total revenue is

$$R(x) = \text{quantity} \times \text{price} = xp(x)$$

and R is called the **revenue function**. The derivative R' of the revenue function is called the **marginal revenue function** and is the rate of change of revenue with respect to the number of units sold.

If x units are sold, then the total profit is

$$P(x) = R(x) - C(x)$$

and P is called the **profit function**. The **marginal profit function** is P', the derivative of the profit function. In Exercises 59–63 you are asked to use the marginal cost, revenue, and profit functions to minimize costs and maximize revenues and profits.

EXAMPLE 6 A store has been selling 200 flat-screen TVs a week at \$350 each. A market survey indicates that for each \$10 rebate offered to buyers, the number of TVs sold will increase by 20 a week. Find the demand function and the revenue function. How large a rebate should the store offer to maximize its revenue?

SOLUTION If x is the number of TVs sold per week, then the weekly increase in sales is $x - 200$. For each increase of 20 units sold, the price is decreased by \$10. So for each additional unit sold, the decrease in price will be $\frac{1}{20} \times 10$ and the demand function is

$$p(x) = 350 - \tfrac{10}{20}(x - 200) = 450 - \tfrac{1}{2}x$$

The revenue function is

$$R(x) = xp(x) = 450x - \tfrac{1}{2}x^2$$

Since $R'(x) = 450 - x$, we see that $R'(x) = 0$ when $x = 450$. This value of x gives an absolute maximum by the First Derivative Test (or simply by observing that the graph of R is a parabola that opens downward). The corresponding price is

$$p(450) = 450 - \tfrac{1}{2}(450) = 225$$

and the rebate is $350 - 225 = 125$. Therefore, to maximize revenue, the store should offer a rebate of \$125. ■

3.7 EXERCISES

1. Consider the following problem: Find two numbers whose sum is 23 and whose product is a maximum.
(a) Make a table of values, like the one below, so that the sum of the numbers in the first two columns is always 23. On the basis of the evidence in your table, estimate the answer to the problem.
(b) Use calculus to solve the problem and compare with your answer to part (a).

First number	Second number	Product
1	22	22
2	21	42
3	20	60
⋮	⋮	⋮

2. Find two numbers whose difference is 100 and whose product is a minimum.

3. Find two positive numbers whose product is 100 and whose sum is a minimum.

4. The sum of two positive numbers is 16. What is the smallest possible value of the sum of their squares?

5. What is the maximum vertical distance between the line $y = x + 2$ and the parabola $y = x^2$ for $-1 \leqslant x \leqslant 2$?

6. What is the minimum vertical distance between the parabolas $y = x^2 + 1$ and $y = x - x^2$?

7. Find the dimensions of a rectangle with perimeter 100 m whose area is as large as possible.

8. Find the dimensions of a rectangle with area 1000 m^2 whose perimeter is as small as possible.

9. A model used for the yield Y of an agricultural crop as a function of the nitrogen level N in the soil (measured in appropriate units) is

$$Y = \frac{kN}{1 + N^2}$$

where k is a positive constant. What nitrogen level gives the best yield?

10. The rate (in mg carbon/m^3/h) at which photosynthesis takes place for a species of phytoplankton is modeled by the function

$$P = \frac{100I}{I^2 + I + 4}$$

where I is the light intensity (measured in thousands of footcandles). For what light intensity is P a maximum?

11. Consider the following problem: A farmer with 750 ft of fencing wants to enclose a rectangular area and then divide

it into four pens with fencing parallel to one side of the rectangle. What is the largest possible total area of the four pens?
(a) Draw several diagrams illustrating the situation, some with shallow, wide pens and some with deep, narrow pens. Find the total areas of these configurations. Does it appear that there is a maximum area? If so, estimate it.
(b) Draw a diagram illustrating the general situation. Introduce notation and label the diagram with your symbols.
(c) Write an expression for the total area.
(d) Use the given information to write an equation that relates the variables.
(e) Use part (d) to write the total area as a function of one variable.
(f) Finish solving the problem and compare the answer with your estimate in part (a).

12. Consider the following problem: A box with an open top is to be constructed from a square piece of cardboard, 3 ft wide, by cutting out a square from each of the four corners and bending up the sides. Find the largest volume that such a box can have.
(a) Draw several diagrams to illustrate the situation, some short boxes with large bases and some tall boxes with small bases. Find the volumes of several such boxes. Does it appear that there is a maximum volume? If so, estimate it.
(b) Draw a diagram illustrating the general situation. Introduce notation and label the diagram with your symbols.
(c) Write an expression for the volume.
(d) Use the given information to write an equation that relates the variables.
(e) Use part (d) to write the volume as a function of one variable.
(f) Finish solving the problem and compare the answer with your estimate in part (a).

13. A farmer wants to fence in an area of 1.5 million square feet in a rectangular field and then divide it in half with a fence parallel to one of the sides of the rectangle. How can he do this so as to minimize the cost of the fence?

14. A box with a square base and open top must have a volume of 32,000 cm^3. Find the dimensions of the box that minimize the amount of material used.

15. If 1200 cm^2 of material is available to make a box with a square base and an open top, find the largest possible volume of the box.

16. A rectangular storage container with an open top is to have a volume of 10 m^3. The length of its base is twice the width. Material for the base costs \$10 per square meter. Material for the sides costs \$6 per square meter. Find the cost of materials for the cheapest such container.

17. Do Exercise 16 assuming the container has a lid that is made from the same material as the sides.

18. A farmer wants to fence in a rectangular plot of land adjacent to the north wall of his barn. No fencing is needed along the barn, and the fencing along the west side of the plot is shared with a neighbor who will split the cost of that portion of the fence. If the fencing costs \$20 per linear foot to install and the farmer is not willing to spend more than \$5000, find the dimensions for the plot that would enclose the most area.

19. If the farmer in Exercise 18 wants to enclose 8000 square feet of land, what dimensions will minimize the cost of the fence?

20. (a) Show that of all the rectangles with a given area, the one with smallest perimeter is a square.
(b) Show that of all the rectangles with a given perimeter, the one with greatest area is a square.

21. Find the point on the line $y = 2x + 3$ that is closest to the origin.

22. Find the point on the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$ that is closest to the point $(3, 0)$.

23. Find the points on the ellipse $4x^2 + y^2 = 4$ that are farthest away from the point $(1, 0)$.

24. Find, correct to two decimal places, the coordinates of the point on the curve $y = \sin x$ that is closest to the point $(4, 2)$.

25. Find the dimensions of the rectangle of largest area that can be inscribed in a circle of radius r.

26. Find the area of the largest rectangle that can be inscribed in the ellipse $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$.

27. Find the dimensions of the rectangle of largest area that can be inscribed in an equilateral triangle of side L if one side of the rectangle lies on the base of the triangle.

28. Find the area of the largest trapezoid that can be inscribed in a circle of radius 1 and whose base is a diameter of the circle.

29. Find the dimensions of the isosceles triangle of largest area that can be inscribed in a circle of radius r.

30. If the two equal sides of an isosceles triangle have length a, find the length of the third side that maximizes the area of the triangle.

31. A right circular cylinder is inscribed in a sphere of radius r. Find the largest possible volume of such a cylinder.

32. A right circular cylinder is inscribed in a cone with height h and base radius r. Find the largest possible volume of such a cylinder.

33. A right circular cylinder is inscribed in a sphere of radius r. Find the largest possible surface area of such a cylinder.

34. A Norman window has the shape of a rectangle surmounted by a semicircle. (Thus the diameter of the semicircle is equal to the width of the rectangle. See Exercise 1.1.62.) If the perimeter of the window is 30 ft, find the dimensions of the window so that the greatest possible amount of light is admitted.

35. The top and bottom margins of a poster are each 6 cm and the side margins are each 4 cm. If the area of printed material on the poster is fixed at 384 cm^2, find the dimensions of the poster with the smallest area.

36. A poster is to have an area of 180 in^2 with 1-inch margins at the bottom and sides and a 2-inch margin at the top. What dimensions will give the largest printed area?

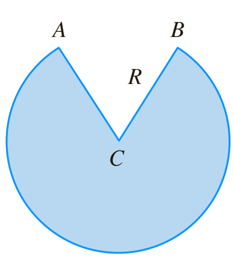
37. A piece of wire 10 m long is cut into two pieces. One piece is bent into a square and the other is bent into an equilateral triangle. How should the wire be cut so that the total area enclosed is (a) a maximum? (b) A minimum?

38. Solve Exercise 37 if one piece is bent into a square and the other into a circle.

39. If you are offered one slice from a round pizza (in other words, a sector of a circle) and the slice must have a perimeter of 32 inches, what diameter pizza will reward you with the largest slice?

40. A fence 8 ft tall runs parallel to a tall building at a distance of 4 ft from the building. What is the length of the shortest ladder that will reach from the ground over the fence to the wall of the building?

41. A cone-shaped drinking cup is made from a circular piece of paper of radius R by cutting out a sector and joining the edges CA and CB. Find the maximum capacity of such a cup.



42. A cone-shaped paper drinking cup is to be made to hold 27 cm^3 of water. Find the height and radius of the cup that will use the smallest amount of paper.

43. A cone with height h is inscribed in a larger cone with height H so that its vertex is at the center of the base of the larger cone. Show that the inner cone has maximum volume when $h = \frac{1}{3}H$.

44. An object with weight W is dragged along a horizontal plane by a force acting along a rope attached to the object. If the rope makes an angle θ with a plane, then the magnitude of the force is

$$F = \frac{\mu W}{\mu \sin\theta + \cos\theta}$$

where μ is a constant called the coefficient of friction. For what value of θ is F smallest?

45. If a resistor of R ohms is connected across a battery of E volts with internal resistance r ohms, then the power (in watts) in the external resistor is

$$P = \frac{E^2 R}{(R + r)^2}$$

If E and r are fixed but R varies, what is the maximum value of the power?

46. For a fish swimming at a speed v relative to the water, the energy expenditure per unit time is proportional to v^3. It is believed that migrating fish try to minimize the total energy required to swim a fixed distance. If the fish are swimming against a current u ($u < v$), then the time required to swim a distance L is $L/(v - u)$ and the total energy E required to swim the distance is given by

$$E(v) = av^3 \cdot \frac{L}{v - u}$$

where a is the proportionality constant.

(a) Determine the value of v that minimizes E.

(b) Sketch the graph of E.

Note: This result has been verified experimentally; migrating fish swim against a current at a speed 50% greater than the current speed.

47. In a beehive, each cell is a regular hexagonal prism, open at one end with a trihedral angle at the other end as in the figure. It is believed that bees form their cells in such a way as to minimize the surface area for a given side length and height, thus using the least amount of wax in cell construction. Examination of these cells has shown that the measure of the apex angle θ is amazingly consistent. Based on the geometry of the cell, it can be shown that the surface area S is given by

$$S = 6sh - \tfrac{3}{2}s^2 \cot\theta + \left(3s^2\sqrt{3}/2\right) \csc\theta$$

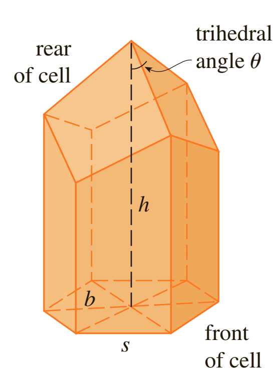
where s, the length of the sides of the hexagon, and h, the height, are constants.

(a) Calculate $dS/d\theta$.

(b) What angle should the bees prefer?

(c) Determine the minimum surface area of the cell (in terms of s and h).

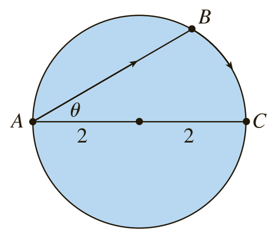
Note: Actual measurements of the angle θ in beehives have been made, and the measures of these angles seldom differ from the calculated value by more than 2°.



48. A boat leaves a dock at 2:00 PM and travels due south at a speed of 20 km/h. Another boat has been heading due east at 15 km/h and reaches the same dock at 3:00 PM. At what time were the two boats closest together?

49. Solve the problem in Example 4 if the river is 5 km wide and point B is only 5 km downstream from A.

50. A woman at a point A on the shore of a circular lake with radius 2 mi wants to arrive at the point C diametrically opposite A on the other side of the lake in the shortest possible time (see the figure). She can walk at the rate of 4 mi/h and row a boat at 2 mi/h. How should she proceed?



51. An oil refinery is located on the north bank of a straight river that is 2 km wide. A pipeline is to be constructed from the refinery to storage tanks located on the south bank of the river 6 km east of the refinery. The cost of laying pipe is $400,000/km over land to a point P on the north bank and $800,000/km under the river to the tanks. To minimize the cost of the pipeline, where should P be located?

52. Suppose the refinery in Exercise 51 is located 1 km north of the river. Where should P be located?

53. The illumination of an object by a light source is directly proportional to the strength of the source and inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source. If two light sources, one three times as strong as the other, are placed 10 ft apart, where should an object be placed on the line between the sources so as to receive the least illumination?

54. Find an equation of the line through the point (3, 5) that cuts off the least area from the first quadrant.

55. Let a and b be positive numbers. Find the length of the shortest line segment that is cut off by the first quadrant and passes through the point (a, b).

56. At which points on the curve $y = 1 + 40x^3 - 3x^5$ does the tangent line have the largest slope?

57. What is the shortest possible length of the line segment that is cut off by the first quadrant and is tangent to the curve $y = 3/x$ at some point?

58. What is the smallest possible area of the triangle that is cut off by the first quadrant and whose hypotenuse is tangent to the parabola $y = 4 - x^2$ at some point?

59. (a) If $C(x)$ is the cost of producing x units of a commodity, then the **average cost** per unit is $c(x) = C(x)/x$. Show that if the average cost is a minimum, then the marginal cost equals the average cost.
(b) If $C(x) = 16{,}000 + 200x + 4x^{3/2}$, in dollars, find (i) the cost, average cost, and marginal cost at a production level of 1000 units; (ii) the production level that will minimize the average cost; and (iii) the minimum average cost.

60. (a) Show that if the profit $P(x)$ is a maximum, then the marginal revenue equals the marginal cost.
(b) If $C(x) = 16{,}000 + 500x - 1.6x^2 + 0.004x^3$ is the cost function and $p(x) = 1700 - 7x$ is the demand function, find the production level that will maximize profit.

61. A baseball team plays in a stadium that holds 55,000 spectators. With ticket prices at $10, the average attendance had been 27,000. When ticket prices were lowered to $8, the average attendance rose to 33,000.
(a) Find the demand function, assuming that it is linear.
(b) How should ticket prices be set to maximize revenue?

62. During the summer months Terry makes and sells necklaces on the beach. Last summer he sold the necklaces for $10 each and his sales averaged 20 per day. When he increased the price by $1, he found that the average decreased by two sales per day.
(a) Find the demand function, assuming that it is linear.
(b) If the material for each necklace costs Terry $6, what should the selling price be to maximize his profit?

63. A retailer has been selling 1200 tablet computers a week at $350 each. The marketing department estimates that an additional 80 tablets will sell each week for every $10 that the price is lowered.
(a) Find the demand function.
(b) What should the price be set at in order to maximize revenue?
(c) If the retailer's weekly cost function is

$$C(x) = 35{,}000 + 120x$$

what price should it choose in order to maximize its profit?

64. A company operates 16 oil wells in a designated area. Each pump, on average, extracts 240 barrels of oil daily. The company can add more wells but every added well reduces the average daily ouput of each of the wells by 8 barrels. How many wells should the company add in order to maximize daily production?

65. Show that of all the isosceles triangles with a given perimeter, the one with the greatest area is equilateral.

66. Consider the situation in Exercise 51 if the cost of laying pipe under the river is considerably higher than the cost of laying pipe over land ($400,000/km). You may suspect that in some instances, the minimum distance possible under the river should be used, and P should be located 6 km from the refinery, directly across from the storage tanks. Show that this is *never* the case, no matter what the "under river" cost is.

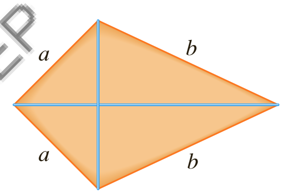
67. Consider the tangent line to the ellipse $\dfrac{x^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ at a point (p, q) in the first quadrant.

(a) Show that the tangent line has x-intercept a^2/p and y-intercept b^2/q.

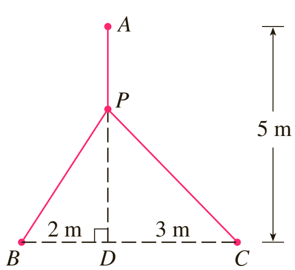
(b) Show that the portion of the tangent line cut off by the coordinate axes has minimum length $a + b$.

(c) Show that the triangle formed by the tangent line and the coordinate axes has minimum area ab.

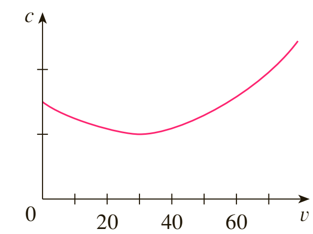
CAS **68.** The frame for a kite is to be made from six pieces of wood. The four exterior pieces have been cut with the lengths indicated in the figure. To maximize the area of the kite, how long should the diagonal pieces be?



69. A point P needs to be located somewhere on the line AD so that the total length L of cables linking P to the points A, B. and C is minimized (see the figure). Express L as a function of $x = |AP|$ and use the graphs of L and dL/dx to estimate the minimum value of L.



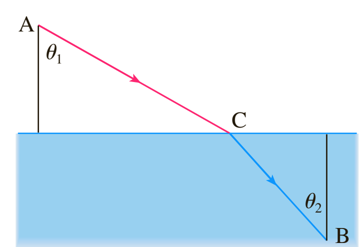
70. The graph shows the fuel consumption c of a car (measured in gallons per hour) as a function of the speed v of the car. At very low speeds the engine runs inefficiently, so initially c decreases as the speed increases. But at high speeds the fuel consumption increases. You can see that $c(v)$ is minimized for this car when $v \approx 30$ mi/h. However, for fuel efficiency, what must be minimized is not the consumption in gallons per hour but rather the fuel consumption in gallons *per mile*. Let's call this consumption G. Using the graph, estimate the speed at which G has its minimum value.



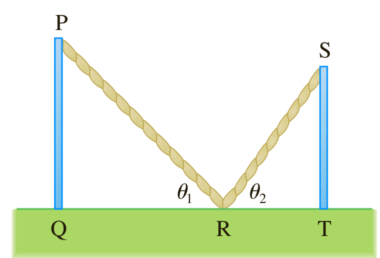
71. Let v_1 be the velocity of light in air and v_2 the velocity of light in water. According to Fermat's Principle, a ray of light will travel from a point A in the air to a point B in the water by a path ACB that minimizes the time taken. Show that

$$\frac{\sin \theta_1}{\sin \theta_2} = \frac{v_1}{v_2}$$

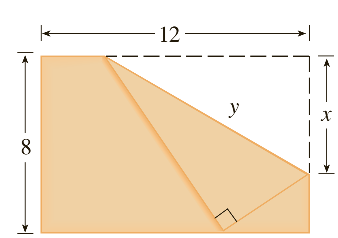
where θ_1 (the angle of incidence) and θ_2 (the angle of refraction) are as shown. This equation is known as Snell's Law.



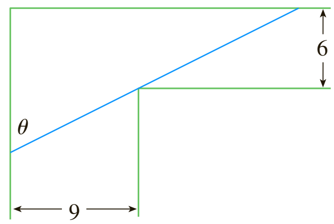
72. Two vertical poles PQ and ST are secured by a rope PRS going from the top of the first pole to a point R on the ground between the poles and then to the top of the second pole as in the figure. Show that the shortest length of such a rope occurs when $\theta_1 = \theta_2$.



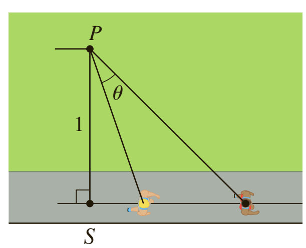
73. The upper right-hand corner of a piece of paper, 12 in. by 8 in., as in the figure, is folded over to the bottom edge. How would you fold it so as to minimize the length of the fold? In other words, how would you choose x to minimize y?



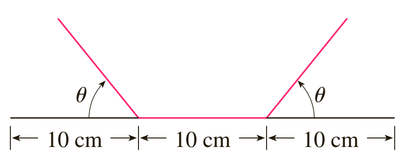
74. A steel pipe is being carried down a hallway 9 ft wide. At the end of the hall there is a right-angled turn into a narrower hallway 6 ft wide. What is the length of the longest pipe that can be carried horizontally around the corner?



75. An observer stands at a point P, one unit away from a track. Two runners start at the point S in the figure and run along the track. One runner runs three times as fast as the other. Find the maximum value of the observer's angle of sight θ between the runners. [*Hint:* Maximize $\tan\theta$.]



76. A rain gutter is to be constructed from a metal sheet of width 30 cm by bending up one-third of the sheet on each side through an angle θ. How should θ be chosen so that the gutter will carry the maximum amount of water?

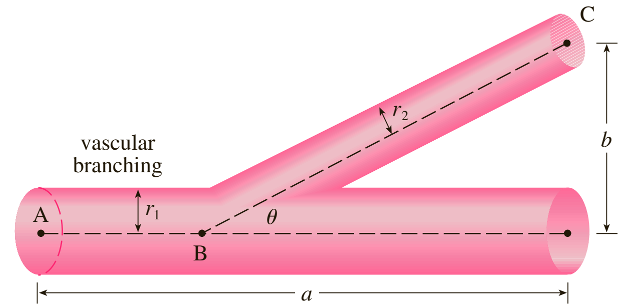


77. Find the maximum area of a rectangle that can be circumscribed about a given rectangle with length L and width W. [*Hint:* Express the area as a function of an angle θ.]

78. The blood vascular system consists of blood vessels (arteries, arterioles, capillaries, and veins) that convey blood from the heart to the organs and back to the heart. This system should work so as to minimize the energy expended by the heart in pumping the blood. In particular, this energy is reduced when the resistance of the blood is lowered. One of Poiseuille's Laws gives the resistance R of the blood as

$$R = C\frac{L}{r^4}$$

where L is the length of the blood vessel, r is the radius, and C is a positive constant determined by the viscosity of the blood. (Poiseuille established this law experimentally, but it also follows from Equation 8.4.2.) The figure shows a main blood vessel with radius r_1 branching at an angle θ into a smaller vessel with radius r_2.



(a) Use Poiseuille's Law to show that the total resistance of the blood along the path ABC is

$$R = C\left(\frac{a - b\cot\theta}{r_1^4} + \frac{b\csc\theta}{r_2^4}\right)$$

where a and b are the distances shown in the figure.

(b) Prove that this resistance is minimized when

$$\cos\theta = \frac{r_2^4}{r_1^4}$$

(c) Find the optimal branching angle (correct to the nearest degree) when the radius of the smaller blood vessel is two-thirds the radius of the larger vessel.

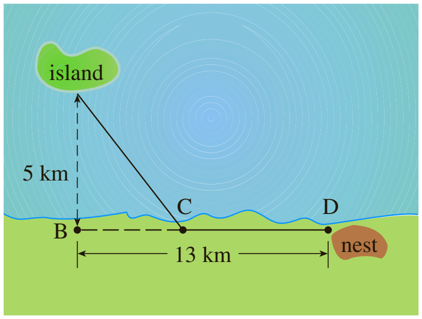
79. Ornithologists have determined that some species of birds tend to avoid flights over large bodies of water during daylight hours. It is believed that more energy is required to fly over water than over land because air generally rises over land and falls over water during the day. A bird with these tendencies is released from an island that is 5 km from the nearest point B on a straight shoreline, flies to a point C on the shoreline, and then flies along the shoreline to its nesting area D. Assume that the bird instinctively chooses a path that will minimize its energy expenditure. Points B and D are 13 km apart.

(a) In general, if it takes 1.4 times as much energy to fly over water as it does over land, to what point C should the bird fly in order to minimize the total energy expended in returning to its nesting area?

(b) Let W and L denote the energy (in joules) per kilometer flown over water and land, respectively. What would a large value of the ratio W/L mean in terms of the bird's flight? What would a small value mean? Determine the ratio W/L corresponding to the minimum expenditure of energy.

(c) What should the value of W/L be in order for the bird to fly directly to its nesting area D? What should the value of W/L be for the bird to fly to B and then along the shore to D?

(d) If the ornithologists observe that birds of a certain species reach the shore at a point 4 km from B, how many times more energy does it take a bird to fly over water than over land?



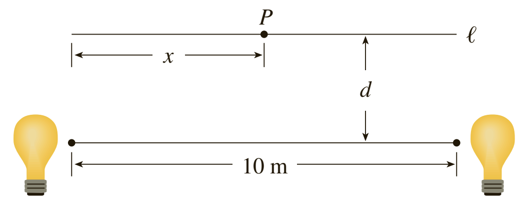
80. Two light sources of identical strength are placed 10 m apart. An object is to be placed at a point P on a line ℓ, parallel to the line joining the light sources and at a distance d meters from it (see the figure). We want to locate P on ℓ so that the intensity of illumination is minimized. We need to use the fact that the intensity of illumination for a single source is directly proportional to the strength of the source and inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source.

(a) Find an expression for the intensity $I(x)$ at the point P.

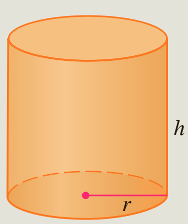
(b) If $d = 5$ m, use graphs of $I(x)$ and $I'(x)$ to show that the intensity is minimized when $x = 5$ m, that is, when P is at the midpoint of ℓ.

(c) If $d = 10$ m, show that the intensity (perhaps surprisingly) is *not* minimized at the midpoint.

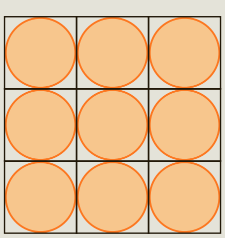
(d) Somewhere between $d = 5$ m and $d = 10$ m there is a transitional value of d at which the point of minimal illumination abruptly changes. Estimate this value of d by graphical methods. Then find the exact value of d.

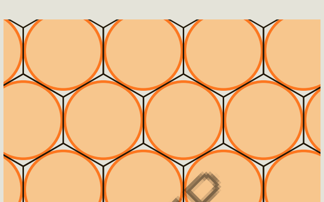


APPLIED PROJECT THE SHAPE OF A CAN



In this project we investigate the most economical shape for a can. We first interpret this to mean that the volume V of a cylindrical can is given and we need to find the height h and radius r that minimize the cost of the metal to make the can (see the figure). If we disregard any waste metal in the manufacturing process, then the problem is to minimize the surface area of the cylinder. We solved this problem in Example 3.7.2 and we found that $h = 2r$; that is, the height should be the same as the diameter. But if you go to your cupboard or your supermarket with a ruler, you will discover that the height is usually greater than the diameter and the ratio h/r varies from 2 up to about 3.8. Let's see if we can explain this phenomenon.


Discs cut from squares


Discs cut from hexagons

1. The material for the cans is cut from sheets of metal. The cylindrical sides are formed by bending rectangles; these rectangles are cut from the sheet with little or no waste. But if the top and bottom discs are cut from squares of side $2r$ (as in the second figure), this leaves considerable waste metal, which may be recycled but has little or no value to the can makers. If this is the case, show that the amount of metal used is minimized when

$$\frac{h}{r} = \frac{8}{\pi} \approx 2.55$$

2. A more efficient packing of the discs is obtained by dividing the metal sheet into hexagons and cutting the circular lids and bases from the hexagons (see the last figure). Show that if this strategy is adopted, then

$$\frac{h}{r} = \frac{4\sqrt{3}}{\pi} \approx 2.21$$

3. The values of h/r that we found in Problems 1 and 2 are a little closer to the ones that actually occur on supermarket shelves, but they still don't account for everything. If we look more closely at some real cans, we see that the lid and the base are formed from discs with radius larger than r that are bent over the ends of the can. If we allow for this we would increase h/r. More significantly, in addition to the cost of the metal we need to incorporate the manufacturing of the can into the cost. Let's assume that most of the expense is incurred in joining the sides to the rims of the cans. If we cut the discs from hexagons as in Problem 2, then the total cost is proportional to

$$4\sqrt{3}\,r^2 + 2\pi rh + k(4\pi r + h)$$

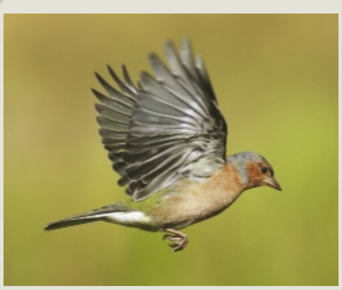
where k is the reciprocal of the length that can be joined for the cost of one unit area of metal. Show that this expression is minimized when

$$\frac{\sqrt[3]{V}}{k} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{\pi h}{r}} \cdot \frac{2\pi - h/r}{\pi h/r - 4\sqrt{3}}$$

4. Plot $\sqrt[3]{V}/k$ as a function of $x = h/r$ and use your graph to argue that when a can is large or joining is cheap, we should make h/r approximately 2.21 (as in Problem 2). But when the can is small or joining is costly, h/r should be substantially larger.

5. Our analysis shows that large cans should be almost square but small cans should be tall and thin. Take a look at the relative shapes of the cans in a supermarket. Is our conclusion usually true in practice? Are there exceptions? Can you suggest reasons why small cans are not always tall and thin?

APPLIED PROJECT — PLANES AND BIRDS: MINIMIZING ENERGY



© Targn Pleiades / Shutterstock.com

Small birds like finches alternate between flapping their wings and keeping them folded while gliding (see Figure 1). In this project we analyze this phenomenon and try to determine how frequently a bird should flap its wings. Some of the principles are the same as for fixed-wing aircraft and so we begin by considering how required power and energy depend on the speed of airplanes.[1]

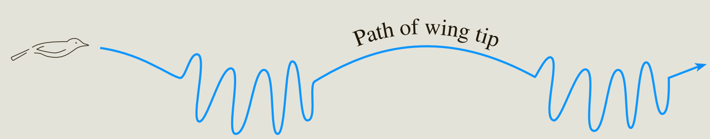


FIGURE 1

1. The power needed to propel an airplane forward at velocity v is

$$P = Av^3 + \frac{BL^2}{v}$$

where A and B are positive constants specific to the particular aircraft and L is the lift, the upward force supporting the weight of the plane. Find the speed that minimizes the required power.

2. The speed found in Problem 1 minimizes power but a faster speed might use less fuel. The energy needed to propel the airplane a unit distance is $E = P/v$. At what speed is energy minimized?

1. Adapted from R. McNeill Alexander, *Optima for Animals* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.)

3. Hows much faster is the speed for minimum energy than the speed for minimum power?

4. In applying the equation of Problem 1 to bird flight we split the term Av^3 into two parts: $A_b v^3$ for the bird's body and $A_w v^3$ for its wings. Let x be the fraction of flying time spent in flapping mode. If m is the bird's mass and all the lift occurs during flapping, then the lift is mg/x and so the power needed during flapping is

$$P_{\text{flap}} = (A_b + A_w)v^3 + \frac{B(mg/x)^2}{v}$$

The power while wings are folded is $P_{\text{fold}} = A_b v^3$. Show that the average power over an entire flight cycle is

$$\overline{P} = xP_{\text{flap}} + (1 - x)P_{\text{fold}} = A_b v^3 + xA_w v^3 + \frac{Bm^2g^2}{xv}$$

5. For what value of x is the average power a minimum? What can you conclude if the bird flies slowly? What can you conclude if the bird flies faster and faster?

6. The average energy over a cycle is $\overline{E} = \overline{P}/v$. What value of x minimizes $\overline{E}$?

3.8 Newton's Method

Suppose that a car dealer offers to sell you a car for \$18,000 or for payments of \$375 per month for five years. You would like to know what monthly interest rate the dealer is, in effect, charging you. To find the answer, you have to solve the equation

$$\boxed{1} \qquad 48x(1 + x)^{60} - (1 + x)^{60} + 1 = 0$$

(The details are explained in Exercise 39.) How would you solve such an equation?

For a quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ there is a well-known formula for the solutions. For third- and fourth-degree equations there are also formulas for the solutions, but they are extremely complicated. If f is a polynomial of degree 5 or higher, there is no such formula (see the note on page 164). Likewise, there is no formula that will enable us to find the exact roots of a transcendental equation such as $\cos x = x$.

We can find an *approximate* solution to Equation 1 by plotting the left side of the equation. Using a graphing device, and after experimenting with viewing rectangles, we produce the graph in Figure 1.

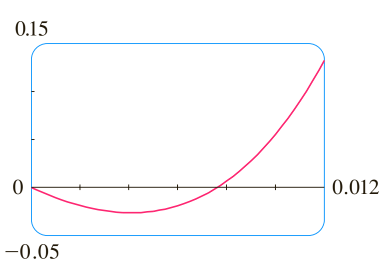


FIGURE 1

Try to solve Equation 1 numerically using your calculator or computer. Some machines are not able to solve it. Others are successful but require you to specify a starting point for the search.

We see that in addition to the solution $x = 0$, which doesn't interest us, there is a solution between 0.007 and 0.008. Zooming in shows that the root is approximately 0.0076. If we need more accuracy we could zoom in repeatedly, but that becomes tiresome. A faster alternative is to use a calculator or computer algebra system to solve the equation numerically. If we do so, we find that the root, correct to nine decimal places, is 0.007628603.

How do these devices solve equations? They use a variety of methods, but most of them make some use of **Newton's method**, also called the **Newton-Raphson method**. We will explain how this method works, partly to show what happens inside a calculator or computer, and partly as an application of the idea of linear approximation.

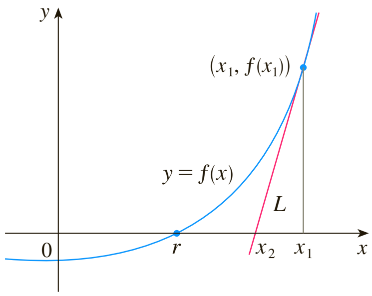


FIGURE 2

The geometry behind Newton's method is shown in Figure 2. We wish to solve an equation of the form $f(x) = 0$, so the roots of the equation correspond to the x-intercepts of the graph of f. The root that we are trying to find is labeled r in the figure. We start with a first approximation x_1, which is obtained by guessing, or from a rough sketch of the graph of f, or from a computer-generated graph of f. Consider the tangent line L to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $(x_1, f(x_1))$ and look at the x-intercept of L, labeled x_2. The idea behind Newton's method is that the tangent line is close to the curve and so its x-intercept, x_2, is close to the x-intercept of the curve (namely, the root r that we are seeking). Because the tangent is a line, we can easily find its x-intercept.

To find a formula for x_2 in terms of x_1 we use the fact that the slope of L is $f'(x_1)$, so its equation is

$$y - f(x_1) = f'(x_1)(x - x_1)$$

Since the x-intercept of L is x_2, we know that the point $(x_2, 0)$ is on the line, and so

$$0 - f(x_1) = f'(x_1)(x_2 - x_1)$$

If $f'(x_1) \neq 0$, we can solve this equation for x_2:

$$x_2 = x_1 - \frac{f(x_1)}{f'(x_1)}$$

We use x_2 as a second approximation to r.

Next we repeat this procedure with x_1 replaced by the second approximation x_2, using the tangent line at $(x_2, f(x_2))$. This gives a third approximation:

$$x_3 = x_2 - \frac{f(x_2)}{f'(x_2)}$$

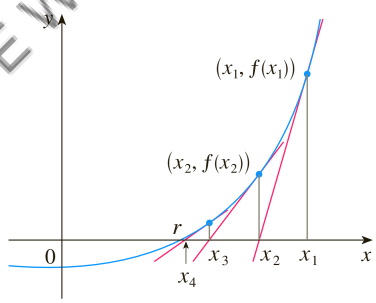


FIGURE 3

If we keep repeating this process, we obtain a sequence of approximations $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, \ldots$ as shown in Figure 3. In general, if the nth approximation is x_n and $f'(x_n) \neq 0$, then the next approximation is given by

2 $$\boxed{x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}}$$

Sequences were briefly introduced in *A Preview of Calculus* on page 5. A more thorough discussion starts in Section 11.1.

If the numbers x_n become closer and closer to r as n becomes large, then we say that the sequence *converges* to r and we write

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} x_n = r$$

Although the sequence of successive approximations converges to the desired root for functions of the type illustrated in Figure 3, in certain circumstances the sequence may not converge. For example, consider the situation shown in Figure 4. You can see that x_2 is a worse approximation than x_1. This is likely to be the case when $f'(x_1)$ is close to 0. It might even happen that an approximation (such as x_3 in Figure 4) falls outside the domain of f. Then Newton's method fails and a better initial approximation x_1 should be chosen. See Exercises 29–32 for specific examples in which Newton's method works very slowly or does not work at all.

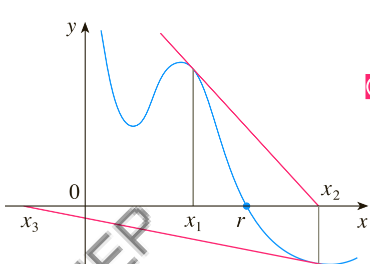


FIGURE 4

EXAMPLE 1 Starting with $x_1 = 2$, find the third approximation x_3 to the root of the equation $x^3 - 2x - 5 = 0$.

TEC In Module 3.8 you can investigate how Newton's method works for several functions and what happens when you change x_1.

SOLUTION We apply Newton's method with

$$f(x) = x^3 - 2x - 5 \qquad \text{and} \qquad f'(x) = 3x^2 - 2$$

Newton himself used this equation to illustrate his method and he chose $x_1 = 2$ after some experimentation because $f(1) = -6$, $f(2) = -1$, and $f(3) = 16$. Equation 2 becomes

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)} = x_n - \frac{x_n^3 - 2x_n - 5}{3x_n^2 - 2}$$

With $n = 1$ we have

$$x_2 = x_1 - \frac{f(x_1)}{f'(x_1)} = x_1 - \frac{x_1^3 - 2x_1 - 5}{3x_1^2 - 2}$$

$$= 2 - \frac{2^3 - 2(2) - 5}{3(2)^2 - 2} = 2.1$$

Figure 5 shows the geometry behind the first step in Newton's method in Example 1. Since $f'(2) = 10$, the tangent line to $y = x^3 - 2x - 5$ at $(2, -1)$ has equation $y = 10x - 21$ so its x-intercept is $x_2 = 2.1$.

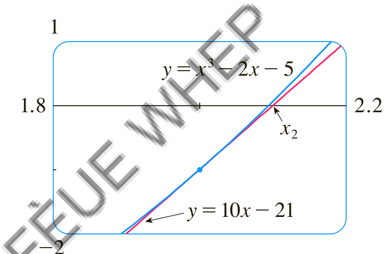


FIGURE 5

Then with $n = 2$ we obtain

$$x_3 = x_2 - \frac{x_2^3 - 2x_2 - 5}{3x_2^2 - 2} = 2.1 - \frac{(2.1)^3 - 2(2.1) - 5}{3(2.1)^2 - 2} \approx 2.0946$$

It turns out that this third approximation $x_3 \approx 2.0946$ is accurate to four decimal places. ■

Suppose that we want to achieve a given accuracy, say to eight decimal places, using Newton's method. How do we know when to stop? The rule of thumb that is generally used is that we can stop when successive approximations x_n and x_{n+1} agree to eight decimal places. (A precise statement concerning accuracy in Newton's method will be given in Exercise 11.11.39.)

Notice that the procedure in going from n to $n + 1$ is the same for all values of n. (It is called an *iterative* process.) This means that Newton's method is particularly convenient for use with a programmable calculator or a computer.

EXAMPLE 2 Use Newton's method to find $\sqrt[6]{2}$ correct to eight decimal places.

SOLUTION First we observe that finding $\sqrt[6]{2}$ is equivalent to finding the positive root of the equation

$$x^6 - 2 = 0$$

so we take $f(x) = x^6 - 2$. Then $f'(x) = 6x^5$ and Formula 2 (Newton's method) becomes

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)} = x_n - \frac{x_n^6 - 2}{6x_n^5}$$

If we choose $x_1 = 1$ as the initial approximation, then we obtain

$$x_2 \approx 1.16666667$$
$$x_3 \approx 1.12644368$$
$$x_4 \approx 1.12249707$$
$$x_5 \approx 1.12246205$$
$$x_6 \approx 1.12246205$$

Since x_5 and x_6 agree to eight decimal places, we conclude that

$$\sqrt[6]{2} \approx 1.12246205$$

to eight decimal places. ■

EXAMPLE 3 Find, correct to six decimal places, the root of the equation $\cos x = x$.

SOLUTION We first rewrite the equation in standard form:

$$\cos x - x = 0$$

Therefore we let $f(x) = \cos x - x$. Then $f'(x) = -\sin x - 1$, so Formula 2 becomes

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{\cos x_n - x_n}{-\sin x_n - 1} = x_n + \frac{\cos x_n - x_n}{\sin x_n + 1}$$

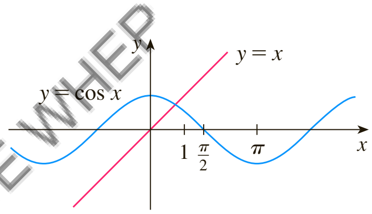


FIGURE 6

In order to guess a suitable value for x_1 we sketch the graphs of $y = \cos x$ and $y = x$ in Figure 6. It appears that they intersect at a point whose x-coordinate is somewhat less than 1, so let's take $x_1 = 1$ as a convenient first approximation. Then, remembering to put our calculator in radian mode, we get

$$x_2 \approx 0.75036387$$
$$x_3 \approx 0.73911289$$
$$x_4 \approx 0.73908513$$
$$x_5 \approx 0.73908513$$

Since x_4 and x_5 agree to six decimal places (eight, in fact), we conclude that the root of the equation, correct to six decimal places, is 0.739085. ■

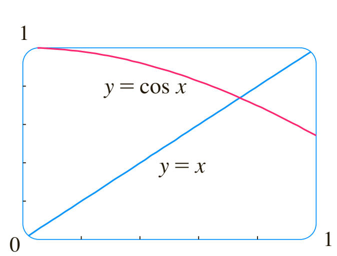


FIGURE 7

Instead of using the rough sketch in Figure 6 to get a starting approximation for Newton's method in Example 3, we could have used the more accurate graph that a calculator or computer provides. Figure 7 suggests that we use $x_1 = 0.75$ as the initial approximation. Then Newton's method gives

$$x_2 \approx 0.73911114$$
$$x_3 \approx 0.73908513$$
$$x_4 \approx 0.73908513$$

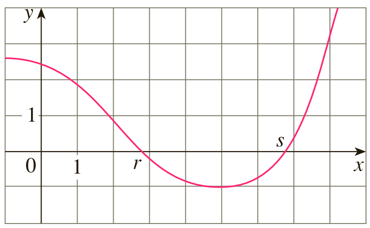
and so we obtain the same answer as before, but with one fewer step.

3.8 EXERCISES

1. The figure shows the graph of a function f. Suppose that Newton's method is used to approximate the root s of the equation $f(x) = 0$ with initial approximation $x_1 = 6$.

(a) Draw the tangent lines that are used to find x_2 and x_3, and estimate the numerical values of x_2 and x_3.

(b) Would $x_1 = 8$ be a better first approximation? Explain.

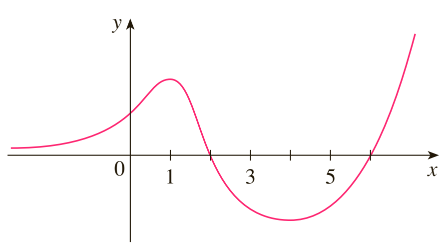


2. Follow the instructions for Exercise 1(a) but use $x_1 = 1$ as the starting approximation for finding the root r.

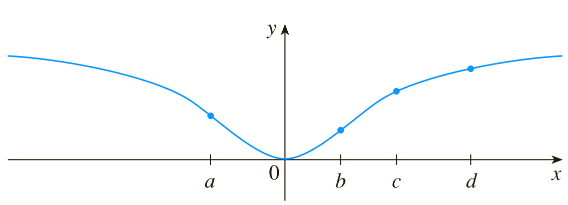
3. Suppose the tangent line to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $(2, 5)$ has the equation $y = 9 - 2x$. If Newton's method is used to locate a root of the equation $f(x) = 0$ and the initial approximation is $x_1 = 2$, find the second approximation x_2.

4. For each initial approximation, determine graphically what happens if Newton's method is used for the function whose graph is shown.

(a) $x_1 = 0$ (b) $x_1 = 1$ (c) $x_1 = 3$
(d) $x_1 = 4$ (e) $x_1 = 5$



5. For which of the initial approximations $x_1 = a, b, c$, and d do you think Newton's method will work and lead to the root of the equation $f(x) = 0$?



6–8 Use Newton's method with the specified initial approximation x_1 to find x_3, the third approximation to the root of the given equation. (Give your answer to four decimal places.)

6. $2x^3 - 3x^2 + 2 = 0, \quad x_1 = -1$

7. $\dfrac{2}{x} - x^2 + 1 = 0, \quad x_1 = 2$

8. $x^7 + 4 = 0, \quad x_1 = -1$

9. Use Newton's method with initial approximation $x_1 = -1$ to find x_2, the second approximation to the root of the equation $x^3 + x + 3 = 0$. Explain how the method works by first graphing the function and its tangent line at $(-1, 1)$.

10. Use Newton's method with initial approximation $x_1 = 1$ to find x_2, the second approximation to the root of the equation $x^4 - x - 1 = 0$. Explain how the method works by first graphing the function and its tangent line at $(1, -1)$.

11–12 Use Newton's method to approximate the given number correct to eight decimal places.

11. $\sqrt[4]{75}$

12. $\sqrt[8]{500}$

13–14 (a) Explain how we know that the given equation must have a root in the given interval. (b) Use Newton's method to approximate the root correct to six decimal places.

13. $3x^4 - 8x^3 + 2 = 0, \quad [2, 3]$

14. $-2x^5 + 9x^4 - 7x^3 - 11x = 0, \quad [3, 4]$

15–16 Use Newton's method to approximate the indicated root of the equation correct to six decimal places.

15. The positive root of $\sin x = x^2$

16. The positive root of $3 \sin x = x$

17–22 Use Newton's method to find all solutions of the equation correct to six decimal places.

17. $3 \cos x = x + 1$

18. $\sqrt{x + 1} = x^2 - x$

19. $\dfrac{1}{x} = \sqrt[3]{x} - 1$

20. $(x - 1)^2 = \sqrt{x}$

21. $x^3 = \cos x$

22. $\sin x = x^2 - 2$

23–26 Use Newton's method to find all the solutions of the equation correct to eight decimal places. Start by drawing a graph to find initial approximations.

23. $-2x^7 - 5x^4 + 9x^3 + 5 = 0$

24. $x^5 - 3x^4 + x^3 - x^2 - x + 6 = 0$

25. $\dfrac{x}{x^2 + 1} = \sqrt{1 - x}$

26. $\cos(x^2 - x) = x^4$

27. (a) Apply Newton's method to the equation $x^2 - a = 0$ to derive the following square-root algorithm (used by the ancient Babylonians to compute $\sqrt{a}$):

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{1}{2}\left(x_n + \frac{a}{x_n}\right)$$

(b) Use part (a) to compute $\sqrt{1000}$ correct to six decimal places.

28. (a) Apply Newton's method to the equation $1/x - a = 0$ to derive the following reciprocal algorithm:

$$x_{n+1} = 2x_n - ax_n^2$$

(This algorithm enables a computer to find reciprocals without actually dividing.)

(b) Use part (a) to compute $1/1.6984$ correct to six decimal places.

29. Explain why Newton's method doesn't work for finding the root of the equation

$$x^3 - 3x + 6 = 0$$

if the initial approximation is chosen to be $x_1 = 1$.

30. (a) Use Newton's method with $x_1 = 1$ to find the root of the equation $x^3 - x = 1$ correct to six decimal places.

(b) Solve the equation in part (a) using $x_1 = 0.6$ as the initial approximation.

(c) Solve the equation in part (a) using $x_1 = 0.57$. (You definitely need a programmable calculator for this part.)

(d) Graph $f(x) = x^3 - x - 1$ and its tangent lines at $x_1 = 1$, 0.6, and 0.57 to explain why Newton's method is so sensitive to the value of the initial approximation.

31. Explain why Newton's method fails when applied to the equation $\sqrt[3]{x} = 0$ with any initial approximation $x_1 \neq 0$. Illustrate your explanation with a sketch.

32. If

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{x} & \text{if } x \geqslant 0 \\ -\sqrt{-x} & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

then the root of the equation $f(x) = 0$ is $x = 0$. Explain why Newton's method fails to find the root no matter which initial approximation $x_1 \neq 0$ is used. Illustrate your explanation with a sketch.

33. (a) Use Newton's method to find the critical numbers of the function

$$f(x) = x^6 - x^4 + 3x^3 - 2x$$

correct to six decimal places.

(b) Find the absolute minimum value of f correct to four decimal places.

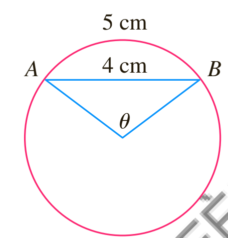
34. Use Newton's method to find the absolute maximum value of the function $f(x) = x\cos x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$, correct to six decimal places.

35. Use Newton's method to find the coordinates of the inflection point of the curve $y = x^2 \sin x$, $0 \leqslant x \leqslant \pi$, correct to six decimal places.

36. Of the infinitely many lines that are tangent to the curve $y = -\sin x$ and pass through the origin, there is one that has the largest slope. Use Newton's method to find the slope of that line correct to six decimal places.

37. Use Newton's method to find the coordinates, correct to six decimal places, of the point on the parabola $y = (x - 1)^2$ that is closest to the origin.

38. In the figure, the length of the chord AB is 4 cm and the length of the arc AB is 5 cm. Find the central angle θ, in radians, correct to four decimal places. Then give the answer to the nearest degree.



39. A car dealer sells a new car for \$18,000. He also offers to sell the same car for payments of \$375 per month for five years. What monthly interest rate is this dealer charging?

To solve this problem you will need to use the formula for the present value A of an annuity consisting of n equal payments of size R with interest rate i per time period:

$$A = \frac{R}{i}\left[1 - (1 + i)^{-n}\right]$$

Replacing i by x, show that

$$48x(1 + x)^{60} - (1 + x)^{60} + 1 = 0$$

Use Newton's method to solve this equation.

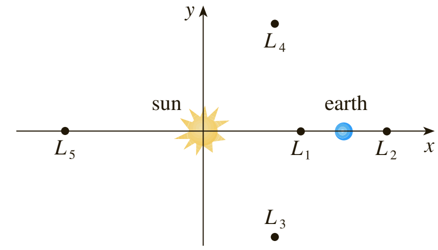
40. The figure shows the sun located at the origin and the earth at the point $(1, 0)$. (The unit here is the distance between the centers of the earth and the sun, called an *astronomical unit:* 1 AU $\approx 1.496 \times 10^8$ km.) There are five locations L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, and L_5 in this plane of rotation of the earth about the sun where a satellite remains motionless with respect to the earth because the forces acting on the satellite (including the gravitational attractions of the earth and the sun) balance each other. These locations are called *libration points*. (A solar research satellite has been placed at one of these libration points.) If m_1 is the mass of the sun, m_2 is the mass of the earth, and $r = m_2/(m_1 + m_2)$, it turns out that the x-coordinate of L_1 is the unique root of the fifth-degree equation

$$p(x) = x^5 - (2 + r)x^4 + (1 + 2r)x^3 - (1 - r)x^2 + 2(1 - r)x + r - 1 = 0$$

and the x-coordinate of L_2 is the root of the equation

$$p(x) - 2rx^2 = 0$$

Using the value $r \approx 3.04042 \times 10^{-6}$, find the locations of the libration points (a) L_1 and (b) L_2.



3.9 Antiderivatives

A physicist who knows the velocity of a particle might wish to know its position at a given time. An engineer who can measure the variable rate at which water is leaking from a tank wants to know the amount leaked over a certain time period. A biologist who knows the rate at which a bacteria population is increasing might want to deduce what the size of the population will be at some future time. In each case, the problem is to find a function F whose derivative is a known function f. If such a function F exists, it is called an *antiderivative* of f.

Definition A function F is called an **antiderivative** of f on an interval I if $F'(x) = f(x)$ for all x in I.

For instance, let $f(x) = x^2$. It isn't difficult to discover an antiderivative of f if we keep the Power Rule in mind. In fact, if $F(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3$, then $F'(x) = x^2 = f(x)$. But the function $G(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + 100$ also satisfies $G'(x) = x^2$. Therefore both F and G are antiderivatives of f. Indeed, any function of the form $H(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + C$, where C is a constant, is an antiderivative of f. The question arises: are there any others?

To answer this question, recall that in Section 3.2 we used the Mean Value Theorem to prove that if two functions have identical derivatives on an interval, then they must differ by a constant (Corollary 3.2.7). Thus if F and G are any two antiderivatives of f, then

$$F'(x) = f(x) = G'(x)$$

so $G(x) - F(x) = C$, where C is a constant. We can write this as $G(x) = F(x) + C$, so we have the following result.

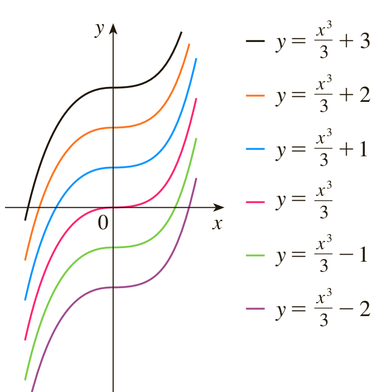


FIGURE 1
Members of the family of antiderivatives of $f(x) = x^2$

1 Theorem If F is an antiderivative of f on an interval I, then the most general antiderivative of f on I is

$$F(x) + C$$

where C is an arbitrary constant.

Going back to the function $f(x) = x^2$, we see that the general antiderivative of f is $\frac{1}{3}x^3 + C$. By assigning specific values to the constant C, we obtain a family of functions whose graphs are vertical translates of one another (see Figure 1). This makes sense because each curve must have the same slope at any given value of x.

EXAMPLE 1 Find the most general antiderivative of each of the following functions.
(a) $f(x) = \sin x$ (b) $f(x) = x^n, \quad n \geqslant 0$ (c) $f(x) = x^{-3}$

SOLUTION
(a) If $F(x) = -\cos x$, then $F'(x) = \sin x$, so an antiderivative of $\sin x$ is $-\cos x$. By Theorem 1, the most general antiderivative is $G(x) = -\cos x + C$.

(b) We use the Power Rule to discover an antiderivative of x^n:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}\right) = \frac{(n+1)x^n}{n+1} = x^n$$

Therefore the general antiderivative of $f(x) = x^n$ is

$$F(x) = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C$$

This is valid for $n \geqslant 0$ because then $f(x) = x^n$ is defined on an interval.

(c) If we put $n = -3$ in the antiderivative formula from part (b), we get the particular antiderivative $F(x) = x^{-2}/(-2)$. But notice that $f(x) = x^{-3}$ is not defined at $x = 0$. Thus Theorem 1 tells us only that the general antiderivative of f is $x^{-2}/(-2) + C$ on any interval that does not contain 0. So the general antiderivative of $f(x) = 1/x^3$ is

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} -\dfrac{1}{2x^2} + C_1 & \text{if } x > 0 \\[2ex] -\dfrac{1}{2x^2} + C_2 & \text{if } x < 0 \end{cases}$$ ■

As in Example 1, every differentiation formula, when read from right to left, gives rise to an antidifferentiation formula. In Table 2 we list some particular antiderivatives. Each formula in the table is true because the derivative of the function in the right column appears in the left column. In particular, the first formula says that the antiderivative of a constant times a function is the constant times the antiderivative of the function. The second formula says that the antiderivative of a sum is the sum of the antiderivatives. (We use the notation $F' = f$, $G' = g$.)

2 Table of Antidifferentiation Formulas

Function	Particular antiderivative	Function	Particular antiderivative
$cf(x)$	$cF(x)$	$\cos x$	$\sin x$
$f(x) + g(x)$	$F(x) + G(x)$	$\sin x$	$-\cos x$
$x^n \ (n \neq -1)$	$\dfrac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}$	$\sec^2 x$	$\tan x$
		$\sec x \tan x$	$\sec x$

To obtain the most general antiderivative from the particular ones in Table 2, we have to add a constant (or constants), as in Example 1.

EXAMPLE 2 Find all functions g such that

$$g'(x) = 4\sin x + \frac{2x^5 - \sqrt{x}}{x}$$

SOLUTION We first rewrite the given function as follows:

$$g'(x) = 4\sin x + \frac{2x^5}{x} - \frac{\sqrt{x}}{x} = 4\sin x + 2x^4 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$$

Thus we want to find an antiderivative of

$$g'(x) = 4 \sin x + 2x^4 - x^{-1/2}$$

Using the formulas in Table 2 together with Theorem 1, we obtain

We often use a capital letter F to represent an antiderivative of a function f. If we begin with derivative notation, f', an antiderivative is f, of course.

$$g(x) = 4(-\cos x) + 2\frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^{1/2}}{\frac{1}{2}} + C$$

$$= -4 \cos x + \tfrac{2}{5}x^5 - 2\sqrt{x} + C$$ ■

In applications of calculus it is very common to have a situation as in Example 2, where it is required to find a function, given knowledge about its derivatives. An equation that involves the derivatives of a function is called a **differential equation**. These will be studied in some detail in Chapter 9, but for the present we can solve some elementary differential equations. The general solution of a differential equation involves an arbitrary constant (or constants) as in Example 2. However, there may be some extra conditions given that will determine the constants and therefore uniquely specify the solution.

EXAMPLE 3 Find f if $f'(x) = x\sqrt{x}$ and $f(1) = 2$.

SOLUTION The general antiderivative of

$$f'(x) = x\sqrt{x} = x^{3/2}$$

is

$$f(x) = \frac{x^{5/2}}{\frac{5}{2}} + C = \tfrac{2}{5}x^{5/2} + C$$

To determine C we use the fact that $f(1) = 2$:

$$f(1) = \tfrac{2}{5} + C = 2$$

Solving for C, we get $C = 2 - \frac{2}{5} = \frac{8}{5}$, so the particular solution is

$$f(x) = \frac{2x^{5/2} + 8}{5}$$ ■

EXAMPLE 4 Find f if $f''(x) = 12x^2 + 6x - 4$, $f(0) = 4$, and $f(1) = 1$.

SOLUTION The general antiderivative of $f''(x) = 12x^2 + 6x - 4$ is

$$f'(x) = 12\frac{x^3}{3} + 6\frac{x^2}{2} - 4x + C = 4x^3 + 3x^2 - 4x + C$$

Using the antidifferentiation rules once more, we find that

$$f(x) = 4\frac{x^4}{4} + 3\frac{x^3}{3} - 4\frac{x^2}{2} + Cx + D = x^4 + x^3 - 2x^2 + Cx + D$$

To determine C and D we use the given conditions that $f(0) = 4$ and $f(1) = 1$. Since $f(0) = 0 + D = 4$, we have $D = 4$. Since

$$f(1) = 1 + 1 - 2 + C + 4 = 1$$

we have $C = -3$. Therefore the required function is

$$f(x) = x^4 + x^3 - 2x^2 - 3x + 4$$ ■

If we are given the graph of a function f, it seems reasonable that we should be able to sketch the graph of an antiderivative F. Suppose, for instance, that we are given that $F(0) = 1$. Then we have a place to start, the point $(0, 1)$, and the direction in which we move our pencil is given at each stage by the derivative $F'(x) = f(x)$. In the next example we use the principles of this chapter to show how to graph F even when we don't have a formula for f. This would be the case, for instance, when $f(x)$ is determined by experimental data.

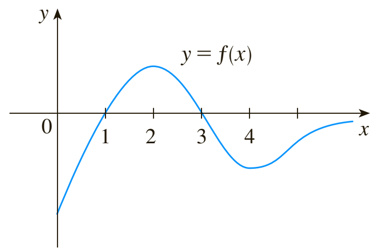


FIGURE 2

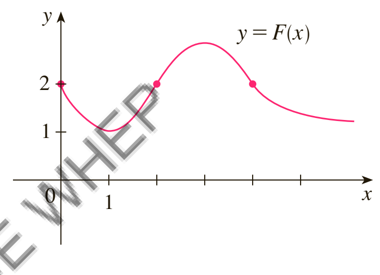


FIGURE 3

EXAMPLE 5 The graph of a function f is given in Figure 2. Make a rough sketch of an antiderivative F, given that $F(0) = 2$.

SOLUTION We are guided by the fact that the slope of $y = F(x)$ is $f(x)$. We start at the point $(0, 2)$ and draw F as an initially decreasing function since $f(x)$ is negative when $0 < x < 1$. Notice that $f(1) = f(3) = 0$, so F has horizontal tangents when $x = 1$ and $x = 3$. For $1 < x < 3$, $f(x)$ is positive and so F is increasing. We see that F has a local minimum when $x = 1$ and a local maximum when $x = 3$. For $x > 3$, $f(x)$ is negative and so F is decreasing on $(3, \infty)$. Since $f(x) \to 0$ as $x \to \infty$, the graph of F becomes flatter as $x \to \infty$. Also notice that $F''(x) = f'(x)$ changes from positive to negative at $x = 2$ and from negative to positive at $x = 4$, so F has inflection points when $x = 2$ and $x = 4$. We use this information to sketch the graph of the antiderivative in Figure 3. ■

Rectilinear Motion

Antidifferentiation is particularly useful in analyzing the motion of an object moving in a straight line. Recall that if the object has position function $s = f(t)$, then the velocity function is $v(t) = s'(t)$. This means that the position function is an antiderivative of the velocity function. Likewise, the acceleration function is $a(t) = v'(t)$, so the velocity function is an antiderivative of the acceleration. If the acceleration and the initial values $s(0)$ and $v(0)$ are known, then the position function can be found by antidifferentiating twice.

EXAMPLE 6 A particle moves in a straight line and has acceleration given by $a(t) = 6t + 4$. Its initial velocity is $v(0) = -6$ cm/s and its initial displacement is $s(0) = 9$ cm. Find its position function $s(t)$.

SOLUTION Since $v'(t) = a(t) = 6t + 4$, antidifferentiation gives

$$v(t) = 6\frac{t^2}{2} + 4t + C = 3t^2 + 4t + C$$

Note that $v(0) = C$. But we are given that $v(0) = -6$, so $C = -6$ and

$$v(t) = 3t^2 + 4t - 6$$

Since $v(t) = s'(t)$, s is the antiderivative of v:

$$s(t) = 3\frac{t^3}{3} + 4\frac{t^2}{2} - 6t + D = t^3 + 2t^2 - 6t + D$$

This gives $s(0) = D$. We are given that $s(0) = 9$, so $D = 9$ and the required position function is

$$s(t) = t^3 + 2t^2 - 6t + 9$$ ■

An object near the surface of the earth is subject to a gravitational force that produces a downward acceleration denoted by g. For motion close to the ground we may assume that g is constant, its value being about 9.8 m/s^2 (or 32 ft/s^2).

EXAMPLE 7 A ball is thrown upward with a speed of 48 ft/s from the edge of a cliff 432 ft above the ground. Find its height above the ground t seconds later. When does it reach its maximum height? When does it hit the ground?

SOLUTION The motion is vertical and we choose the positive direction to be upward. At time t the distance above the ground is $s(t)$ and the velocity $v(t)$ is decreasing. Therefore the acceleration must be negative and we have

$$a(t) = \frac{dv}{dt} = -32$$

Taking antiderivatives, we have

$$v(t) = -32t + C$$

To determine C we use the given information that $v(0) = 48$. This gives $48 = 0 + C$, so

$$v(t) = -32t + 48$$

The maximum height is reached when $v(t) = 0$, that is, after 1.5 seconds. Since $s'(t) = v(t)$, we antidifferentiate again and obtain

$$s(t) = -16t^2 + 48t + D$$

Figure 4 shows the position function of the ball in Example 7. The graph corroborates the conclusions we reached: The ball reaches its maximum height after 1.5 seconds and hits the ground after about 6.9 seconds.

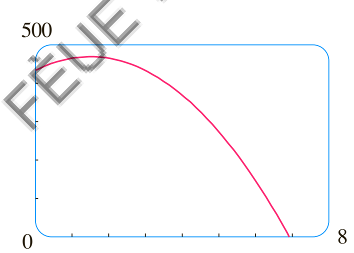


FIGURE 4

Using the fact that $s(0) = 432$, we have $432 = 0 + D$ and so

$$s(t) = -16t^2 + 48t + 432$$

The expression for $s(t)$ is valid until the ball hits the ground. This happens when $s(t) = 0$, that is, when

$$-16t^2 + 48t + 432 = 0$$

or, equivalently,

$$t^2 - 3t - 27 = 0$$

Using the quadratic formula to solve this equation, we get

$$t = \frac{3 \pm 3\sqrt{13}}{2}$$

We reject the solution with the minus sign since it gives a negative value for t. Therefore the ball hits the ground after $3(1 + \sqrt{13})/2 \approx 6.9$ seconds. ■

3.9 EXERCISES

1–20 Find the most general antiderivative of the function. (Check your answer by differentiation.)

1. $f(x) = 4x + 7$

2. $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 2$

3. $f(x) = 2x^3 - \frac{2}{3}x^2 + 5x$

4. $f(x) = 6x^5 - 8x^4 - 9x^2$

5. $f(x) = x(12x + 8)$

6. $f(x) = (x - 5)^2$

7. $f(x) = 7x^{2/5} + 8x^{-4/5}$

8. $f(x) = x^{3.4} - 2x^{\sqrt{2}-1}$

9. $f(x) = \sqrt{2}$

10. $f(x) = \pi^2$

11. $f(x) = 3\sqrt{x} - 2\sqrt[3]{x}$

12. $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x^2} + x\sqrt{x}$

13. $f(x) = \dfrac{10}{x^9}$

14. $g(x) = \dfrac{5 - 4x^3 + 2x^6}{x^6}$

15. $g(t) = \dfrac{1 + t + t^2}{\sqrt{t}}$

16. $f(t) = 3\cos t - 4\sin t$

17. $h(\theta) = 2\sin\theta - \sec^2\theta$

18. $g(v) = 5 + 3\sec^2 v$

19. $f(t) = 8\sqrt{t} - \sec t \tan t$

20. $f(x) = 1 + 2\sin x + 3/\sqrt{x}$

21–22 Find the antiderivative F of f that satisfies the given condition. Check your answer by comparing the graphs of f and F.

21. $f(x) = 5x^4 - 2x^5, \quad F(0) = 4$

22. $f(x) = x + 2 \sin x, \quad F(0) = -6$

23–42 Find f.

23. $f''(x) = 20x^3 - 12x^2 + 6x$

24. $f''(x) = x^6 - 4x^4 + x + 1$

25. $f''(x) = 4 - \sqrt[3]{x}$

26. $f''(x) = x^{2/3} + x^{-2/3}$

27. $f'''(t) = 12 + \sin t$

28. $f'''(t) = \sqrt{t} - 2 \cos t$

29. $f'(x) = 1 + 3\sqrt{x}, \quad f(4) = 25$

30. $f'(x) = 5x^4 - 3x^2 + 4, \quad f(-1) = 2$

31. $f'(x) = \sqrt{x}\,(6 + 5x), \quad f(1) = 10$

32. $f'(t) = t + 1/t^3, \quad t > 0, \quad f(1) = 6$

33. $f'(t) = \sec t\,(\sec t + \tan t), \quad -\pi/2 < t < \pi/2,$ $f(\pi/4) = -1$

34. $f'(x) = (x + 1)/\sqrt{x}, \quad f(1) = 5$

35. $f''(x) = -2 + 12x - 12x^2, \quad f(0) = 4, \quad f'(0) = 12$

36. $f''(x) = 8x^3 + 5, \quad f(1) = 0, \quad f'(1) = 8$

37. $f''(\theta) = \sin\theta + \cos\theta, \quad f(0) = 3, \quad f'(0) = 4$

38. $f''(t) = 4 - 6/t^4, \quad f(1) = 6, \quad f'(2) = 9, \quad t > 0$

39. $f''(x) = 4 + 6x + 24x^2, \quad f(0) = 3, \quad f(1) = 10$

40. $f''(x) = 20x^3 + 12x^2 + 4, \quad f(0) = 8, \quad f(1) = 5$

41. $f''(t) = \sqrt[3]{t} - \cos t, \quad f(0) = 2, \quad f(1) = 2$

42. $f'''(x) = \cos x, \quad f(0) = 1, \quad f'(0) = 2, \quad f''(0) = 3$

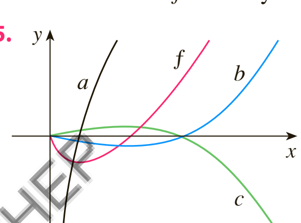
---

43. Given that the graph of f passes through the point $(2, 5)$ and that the slope of its tangent line at $(x, f(x))$ is $3 - 4x$, find $f(1)$.

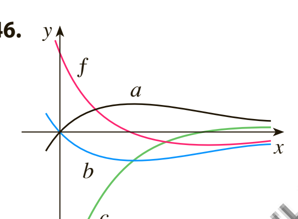
44. Find a function f such that $f'(x) = x^3$ and the line $x + y = 0$ is tangent to the graph of f.

45–46 The graph of a function f is shown. Which graph is an antiderivative of f and why?

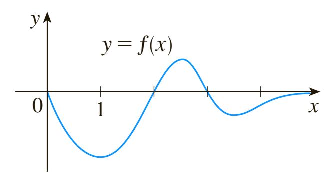
45.



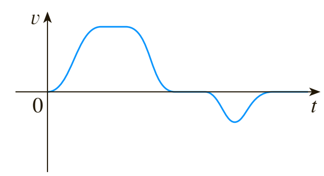
46.



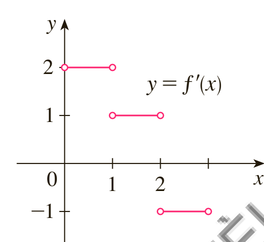
47. The graph of a function is shown in the figure. Make a rough sketch of an antiderivative F, given that $F(0) = 1$.



48. The graph of the velocity function of a particle is shown in the figure. Sketch the graph of a position function.



49. The graph of f' is shown in the figure. Sketch the graph of f if f is continuous on $[0, 3]$ and $f(0) = -1$.



50. (a) Use a graphing device to graph $f(x) = 2x - 3\sqrt{x}$.
(b) Starting with the graph in part (a), sketch a rough graph of the antiderivative F that satisfies $F(0) = 1$.
(c) Use the rules of this section to find an expression for $F(x)$.
(d) Graph F using the expression in part (c). Compare with your sketch in part (b).

51–52 Draw a graph of f and use it to make a rough sketch of the antiderivative that passes through the origin.

51. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{1 + x^2}, \quad -2\pi \leqslant x \leqslant 2\pi$

52. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^4 - 2x^2 + 2} - 2, \quad -3 \leqslant x \leqslant 3$

53–58 A particle is moving with the given data. Find the position of the particle.

53. $v(t) = \sin t - \cos t, \quad s(0) = 0$

54. $v(t) = t^2 - 3\sqrt{t}, \quad s(4) = 8$

55. $a(t) = 2t + 1, \quad s(0) = 3, \quad v(0) = -2$

56. $a(t) = 3 \cos t - 2 \sin t, \quad s(0) = 0, \quad v(0) = 4$

57. $a(t) = 10 \sin t + 3 \cos t, \quad s(0) = 0, \quad s(2\pi) = 12$

58. $a(t) = t^2 - 4t + 6, \quad s(0) = 0, \quad s(1) = 20$

---

59. A stone is dropped from the upper observation deck (the Space Deck) of the CN Tower, 450 m above the ground.
(a) Find the distance of the stone above ground level at time t.
(b) How long does it take the stone to reach the ground?
(c) With what velocity does it strike the ground?
(d) If the stone is thrown downward with a speed of 5 m/s, how long does it take to reach the ground?

60. Show that for motion in a straight line with constant acceleration a, initial velocity v_0, and initial displacement s_0, the displacement after time t is

$$s = \tfrac{1}{2}at^2 + v_0 t + s_0$$

61. An object is projected upward with initial velocity v_0 meters per second from a point s_0 meters above the ground. Show that

$$[v(t)]^2 = v_0^2 - 19.6[s(t) - s_0]$$

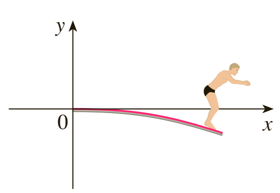
62. Two balls are thrown upward from the edge of the cliff in Example 7. The first is thrown with a speed of 48 ft/s and the other is thrown a second later with a speed of 24 ft/s. Do the balls ever pass each other?

63. A stone was dropped off a cliff and hit the ground with a speed of 120 ft/s. What is the height of the cliff?

64. If a diver of mass m stands at the end of a diving board with length L and linear density ρ, then the board takes on the shape of a curve $y = f(x)$, where

$$EIy'' = mg(L - x) + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho g(L - x)^2$$

E and I are positive constants that depend on the material of the board and g (< 0) is the acceleration due to gravity.
(a) Find an expression for the shape of the curve.
(b) Use $f(L)$ to estimate the distance below the horizontal at the end of the board.



65. A company estimates that the marginal cost (in dollars per item) of producing x items is $1.92 - 0.002x$. If the cost of producing one item is \$562, find the cost of producing 100 items.

66. The linear density of a rod of length 1 m is given by $\rho(x) = 1/\sqrt{x}$, in grams per centimeter, where x is measured in centimeters from one end of the rod. Find the mass of the rod.

67. Since raindrops grow as they fall, their surface area increases and therefore the resistance to their falling increases. A raindrop has an initial downward velocity of 10 m/s and its downward acceleration is

$$a = \begin{cases} 9 - 0.9t & \text{if } 0 \leqslant t \leqslant 10 \\ 0 & \text{if } t > 10 \end{cases}$$

If the raindrop is initially 500 m above the ground, how long does it take to fall?

68. A car is traveling at 50 mi/h when the brakes are fully applied, producing a constant deceleration of 22 ft/s^2. What is the distance traveled before the car comes to a stop?

69. What constant acceleration is required to increase the speed of a car from 30 mi/h to 50 mi/h in 5 seconds?

70. A car braked with a constant deceleration of 16 ft/s^2, producing skid marks measuring 200 ft before coming to a stop. How fast was the car traveling when the brakes were first applied?

71. A car is traveling at 100 km/h when the driver sees an accident 80 m ahead and slams on the brakes. What constant deceleration is required to stop the car in time to avoid a pileup?

72. A model rocket is fired vertically upward from rest. Its acceleration for the first three seconds is $a(t) = 60t$, at which time the fuel is exhausted and it becomes a freely "falling" body. Fourteen seconds later, the rocket's parachute opens, and the (downward) velocity slows linearly to -18 ft/s in 5 seconds. The rocket then "floats" to the ground at that rate.
(a) Determine the position function s and the velocity function v (for all times t). Sketch the graphs of s and v.
(b) At what time does the rocket reach its maximum height, and what is that height?
(c) At what time does the rocket land?

73. A high-speed bullet train accelerates and decelerates at the rate of 4 ft/s^2. Its maximum cruising speed is 90 mi/h.
(a) What is the maximum distance the train can travel if it accelerates from rest until it reaches its cruising speed and then runs at that speed for 15 minutes?
(b) Suppose that the train starts from rest and must come to a complete stop in 15 minutes. What is the maximum distance it can travel under these conditions?
(c) Find the minimum time that the train takes to travel between two consecutive stations that are 45 miles apart.
(d) The trip from one station to the next takes 37.5 minutes. How far apart are the stations?

3 REVIEW

CONCEPT CHECK

Answers to the Concept Check can be found on the back endpapers.

1. Explain the difference between an absolute maximum and a local maximum. Illustrate with a sketch.

2. What does the Extreme Value Theorem say?

3. (a) State Fermat's Theorem.
(b) Define a critical number of f.

4. Explain how the Closed Interval Method works.

5. (a) State Rolle's Theorem.
(b) State the Mean Value Theorem and give a geometric interpretation.

6. (a) State the Increasing/Decreasing Test.
(b) What does it mean to say that f is concave upward on an interval I?
(c) State the Concavity Test.
(d) What are inflection points? How do you find them?

7. (a) State the First Derivative Test.
(b) State the Second Derivative Test.
(c) What are the relative advantages and disadvantages of these tests?

8. Explain the meaning of each of the following statements.
(a) $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = L$ (b) $\lim_{x \to -\infty} f(x) = L$ (c) $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x) = \infty$
(d) The curve $y = f(x)$ has the horizontal asymptote $y = L$.

9. If you have a graphing calculator or computer, why do you need calculus to graph a function?

10. (a) Given an initial approximation x_1 to a root of the equation $f(x) = 0$, explain geometrically, with a diagram, how the second approximation x_2 in Newton's method is obtained.
(b) Write an expression for x_2 in terms of x_1, $f(x_1)$, and $f'(x_1)$.
(c) Write an expression for x_{n+1} in terms of x_n, $f(x_n)$, and $f'(x_n)$.
(d) Under what circumstances is Newton's method likely to fail or to work very slowly?

11. (a) What is an antiderivative of a function f?
(b) Suppose F_1 and F_2 are both antiderivatives of f on an interval I. How are F_1 and F_2 related?

TRUE-FALSE QUIZ

Determine whether the statement is true or false. If it is true, explain why. If it is false, explain why or give an example that disproves the statement.

1. If $f'(c) = 0$, then f has a local maximum or minimum at c.

2. If f has an absolute minimum value at c, then $f'(c) = 0$.

3. If f is continuous on (a, b), then f attains an absolute maximum value $f(c)$ and an absolute minimum value $f(d)$ at some numbers c and d in (a, b).

4. If f is differentiable and $f(-1) = f(1)$, then there is a number c such that $|c| < 1$ and $f'(c) = 0$.

5. If $f'(x) < 0$ for $1 < x < 6$, then f is decreasing on $(1, 6)$.

6. If $f''(2) = 0$, then $(2, f(2))$ is an inflection point of the curve $y = f(x)$.

7. If $f'(x) = g'(x)$ for $0 < x < 1$, then $f(x) = g(x)$ for $0 < x < 1$.

8. There exists a function f such that $f(1) = -2$, $f(3) = 0$, and $f'(x) > 1$ for all x.

9. There exists a function f such that $f(x) > 0$, $f'(x) < 0$, and $f''(x) > 0$ for all x.

10. There exists a function f such that $f(x) < 0$, $f'(x) < 0$, and $f''(x) > 0$ for all x.

11. If f and g are increasing on an interval I, then $f + g$ is increasing on I.

12. If f and g are increasing on an interval I, then $f - g$ is increasing on I.

13. If f and g are increasing on an interval I, then fg is increasing on I.

14. If f and g are positive increasing functions on an interval I, then fg is increasing on I.

15. If f is increasing and $f(x) > 0$ on I, then $g(x) = 1/f(x)$ is decreasing on I.

16. If f is even, then f' is even.

17. If f is periodic, then f' is periodic.

18. The most general antiderivative of $f(x) = x^{-2}$ is

$$F(x) = -\frac{1}{x} + C$$

19. If $f'(x)$ exists and is nonzero for all x, then $f(1) \neq f(0)$.